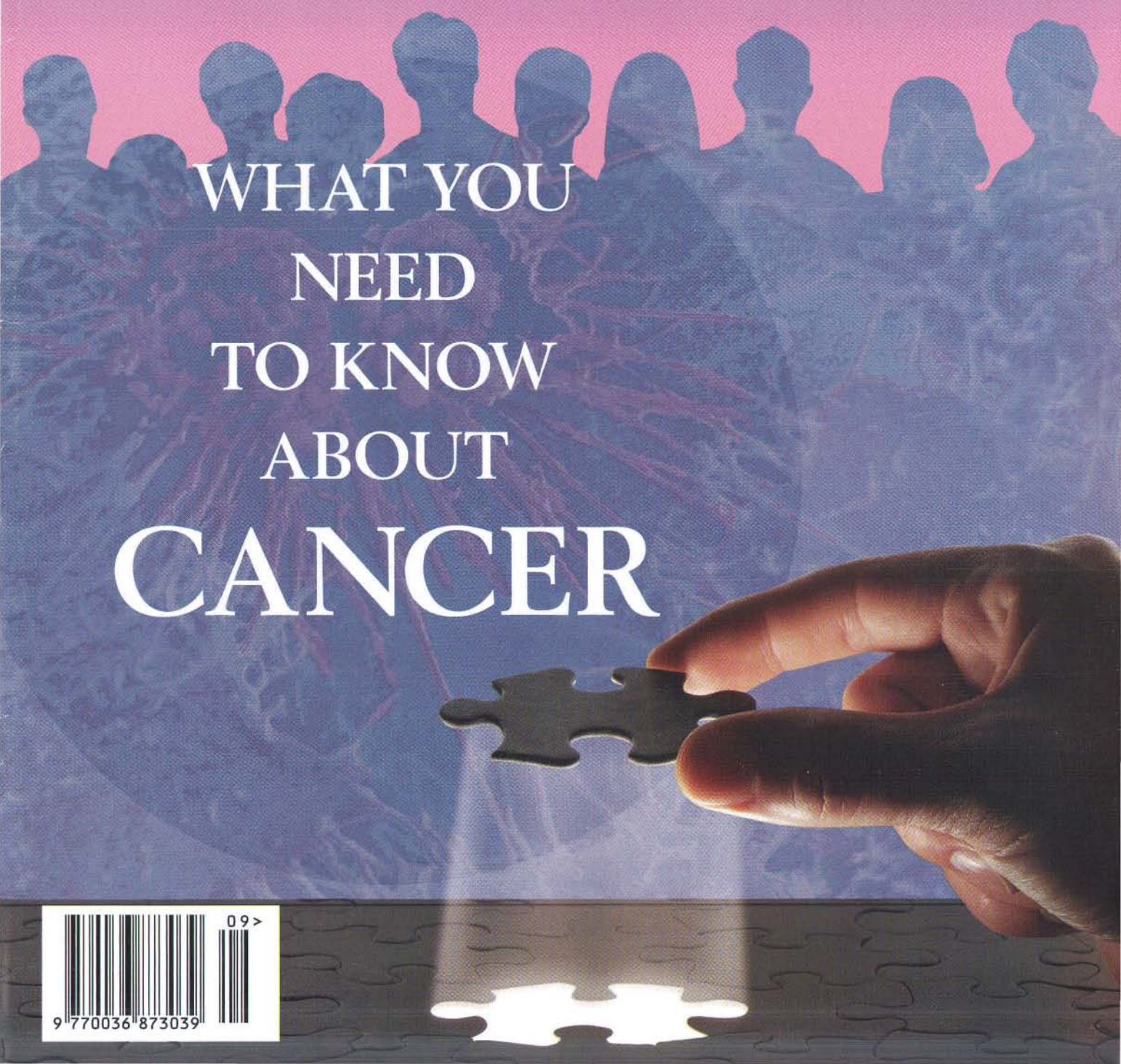
PREVENTION • DETECTION • NEW THERAPIES • LIVING WITH CANCER

SEPTEMBER 1996 $4.95 U.K. £3.00

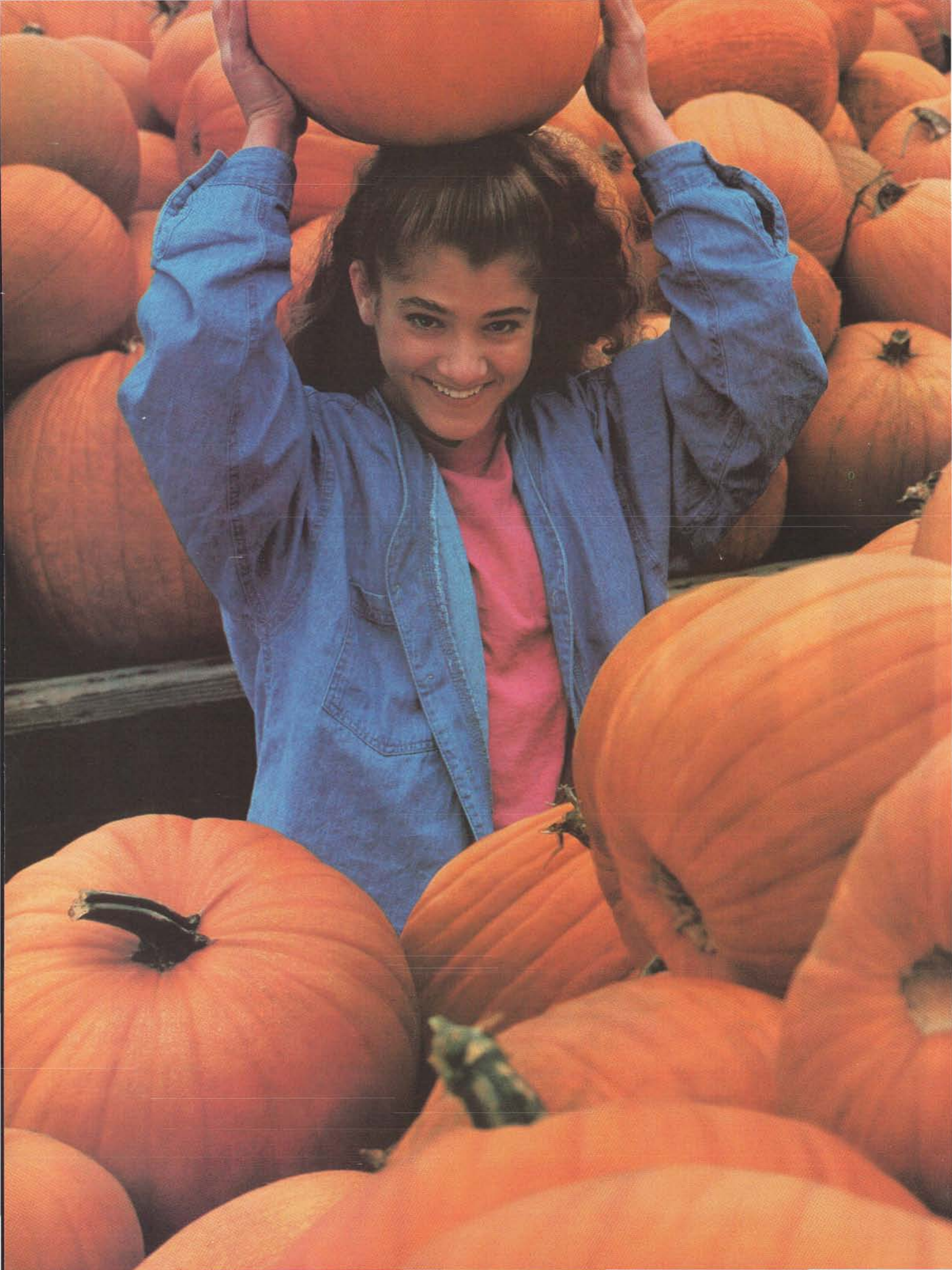
SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

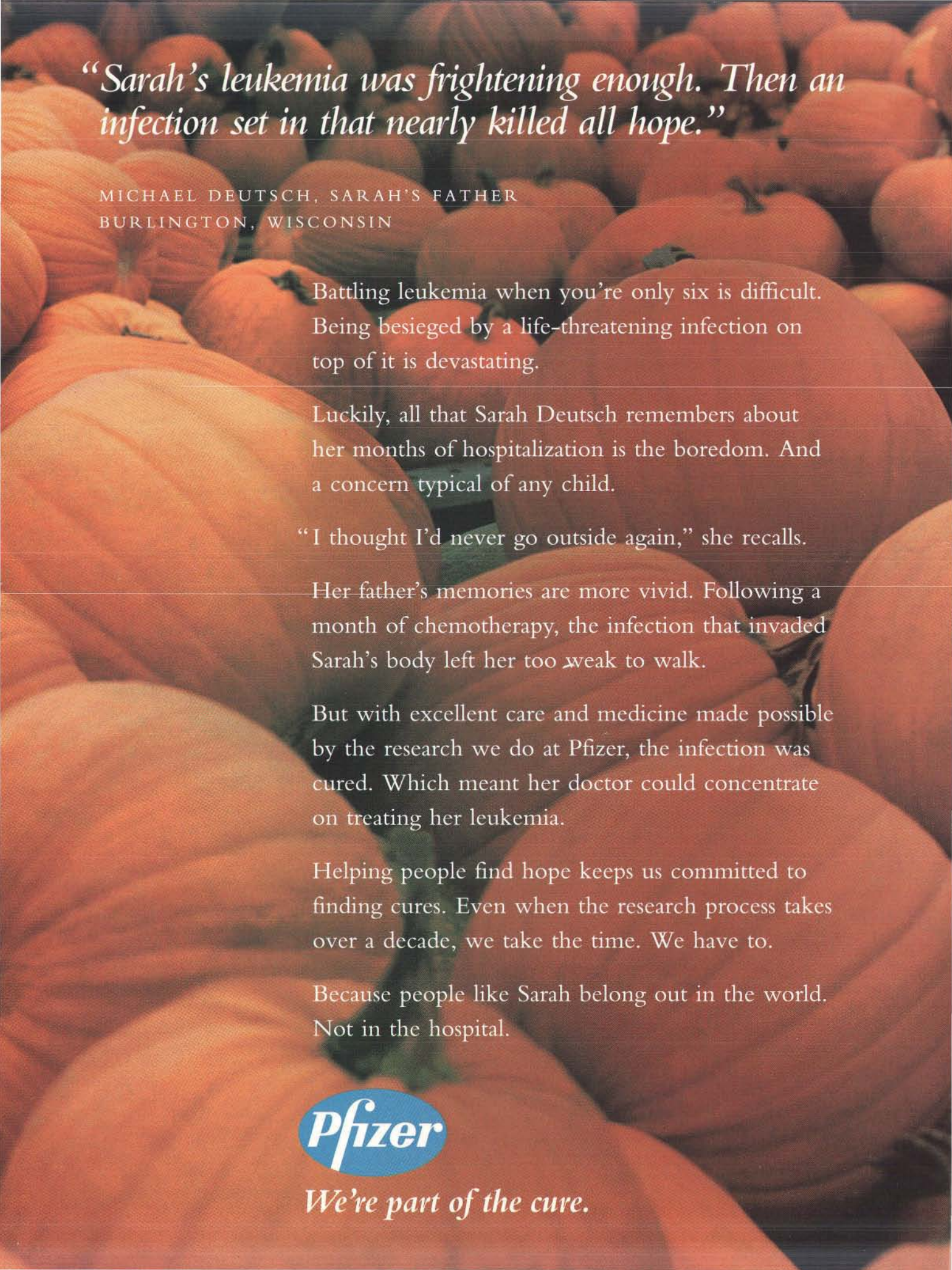
SPECIAL ISSUE



WHAT YOU NEED TO KNOW ABOUT CANCER

09>
9 770036 873039





"Sarah's leukemia was frightening enough. Then an infection set in that nearly killed all hope."

MICHAEL DEUTSCH, SARAH'S FATHER
BURLINGTON, WISCONSIN

Battling leukemia when you're only six is difficult. Being besieged by a life-threatening infection on top of it is devastating.

Luckily, all that Sarah Deutsch remembers about her months of hospitalization is the boredom. And a concern typical of any child.

"I thought I'd never go outside again," she recalls.

Her father's memories are more vivid. Following a month of chemotherapy, the infection that invaded Sarah's body left her too weak to walk.

But with excellent care and medicine made possible by the research we do at Pfizer, the infection was cured. Which meant her doctor could concentrate on treating her leukemia.

Helping people find hope keeps us committed to finding cures. Even when the research process takes over a decade, we take the time. We have to.

Because people like Sarah belong out in the world. Not in the hospital.

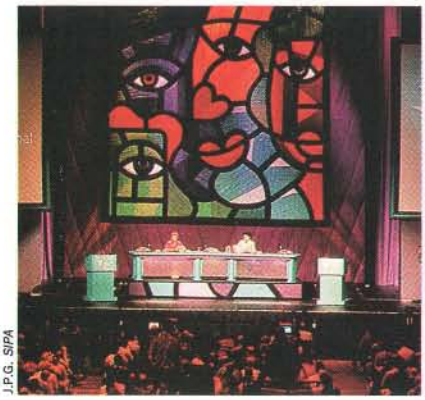
Pfizer

We're part of the cure.

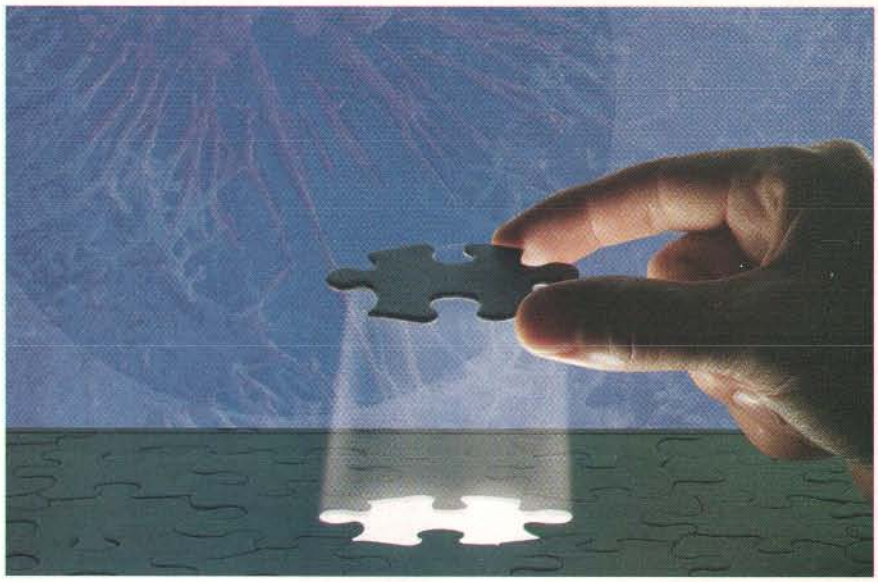
SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

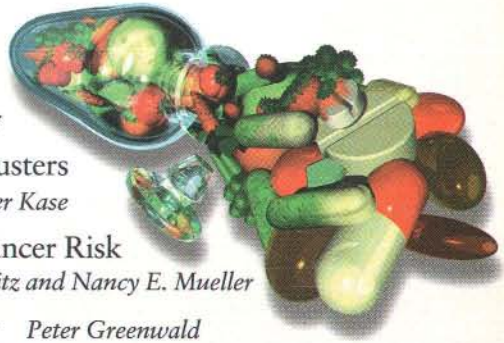
September 1996 Volume 275 Number 3

NEWS AND ANALYSIS



J.P.G. SIPA





Scientific American (ISSN 0036-8733), published monthly by Scientific American, Inc., 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017-1111.

Second-class postage paid at New York, N.Y., and at additional mailing offices. Canada Post International Publications Mail (Canadian Distribution) Sales Agreement No. 242764. Canadian GST No. R 127387652; QST No. Q1015332537. Subscription rates: one year $36 (outside U.S. and possessions add $11 per year for postage). Postmaster: Send address changes to Scientific American, Box 3187, Harlan, Iowa 51537. Reprints available: write Reprint Department, Scientific American, Inc., 415 Madison Avenue, New York, N.Y. 10017-1111; fax: (212) 355-0408 or send e-mail to SCAinquiry@aol.com Visit our World Wide Web site at http://www.sciam.com/ **Subscription inquiries: U.S. and Canada (800) 333-1199; other (515) 247-7631.**

About the Cover
Photomontage by Patricia McDermond and Laurie Grace. Background photographs courtesy of Photo Researchers, Inc. Foreground photograph by Dan Wagner.

FROM THE EDITORS

Reasons for Hope

This may be the first special issue of *Scientific American* that, for everyone on the staff, also qualifies as a personal issue. Several of us have had brushes with cancer, or at least its specter. We have seen family members, friends and co-workers sick with it. Some of them have recovered, some have not. Early this morning I learned that an acquaintance who has struggled with cancer on and off for five years is back in the hospital. The growth began in her breast; tumors later appeared in her liver and ovary; this week she discovered that cells had traveled into her brain as well.

Coincidentally, later, another friend gave me the good news that her mother's cancer was caught in time. Doctors removed a malignant polyp from her colon before tumor cells could invade the surrounding tissues, which means that she has every reason to consider herself cancer-free. Experiences like these have never been far from our minds while planning this issue.

ALFRED T. KAMAJIAN

EVERYONE IS A SOLDIER in the ongoing war against cancer.

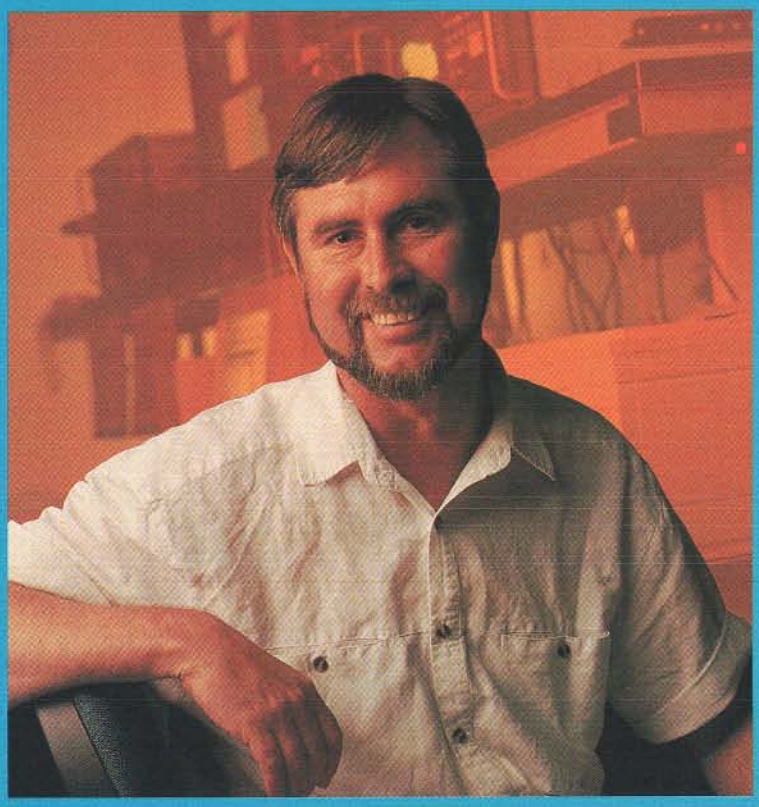
The title, "What You Need to Know about Cancer," makes a daring claim. What exactly do you need to know? First, that many cancers are highly preventable. Second, that the ability of medicine to detect and treat cancer, though still far from ideal, has progressed enough for patients to face their illness with greater optimism. Further dramatic improvements may lie not far ahead. Also, as frightening as cancer can be, people should know that its pain can be subdued and the misery it brings can be comforted.

Some facts presented in the articles that follow may be surprising. Readers may be shocked to discover how trivial the cancer risks from pollutants and radiation are, compared with dietary factors. That smoking causes cancer is common knowledge, but I hope that seeing how heavily its damage weighs down the statistics will drive the point home more forcefully. The new drugs and other treatments in development inspire wonderful excitement. Most of all, I hope that readers will come away from this issue with a greater sense that, armed with knowledge and courage, they can fight back against this disease.

My thanks go to all the esteemed physicians and researchers who contributed to this project, but most especially to Lloyd Old, Robert Weinberg and Samuel Hellman, whose generosity with time, ideas and patience was so helpful. I also cannot praise or thank enough our tireless associate editor Ricki Rusting, whose dedication shaped this issue from the start.

JOHN RENNIE, *Editor in Chief*
editors@sciam.com

Designing new products is all about pre-empting questions.



Let's make things better

George Ellis, Video Application Engineer.
Sunnyvale, USA.

How do I know what people want before they ask for it? That's easy. It's my job.

I'm George Ellis and I work in the Product Concept and Application Laboratory at Philips Semiconductors, California. My team and I design application boards, used as a model for how the products will work.

Customers who use our application boards are themselves designers and engineers who often adapt the product to their own needs.

With our Technical Support Centre, we can listen to those needs. We keep the technical needs of each customer on a database. Then, we use this information to refine products, or even invent new ones.

It's like a continual conversation. They ask questions, we reply. And like many conversations, you don't always need to wait for a sentence to end before you make your reply.

PHILIPS

PHILIPS

LETTERS TO THE EDITORS

THE NUCLEAR LEGACY

As Yuri M. Shcherbak chronicles in the first part of your series "Confronting the Nuclear Legacy," the accident at Chornobyl was certainly a regional disaster ["Ten Years of the Chornobyl Era," April]. My observation, both as a recent resident of that region and as a nuclear engineer, is that Ukraine has suffered much greater disasters. The collapse of the economy after decades of mismanagement, the lost heritage during the communist regime and the tens of millions of victims of Stalin's purges nearly destroyed the region. And, as Shcherbak notes, the number of people affected by the nuclear fallout is much smaller than the doomsayers have reported. The current troubles of Ukraine are largely unrelated to nuclear technology, but in today's climate, nuclear technology is popular to blame.

KEVAN CRAWFORD
Salt Lake City, Utah

I appreciated the article "Can Nuclear Waste Be Stored Safely at Yucca Mountain?" by Chris G. Whipple, in the June issue. But given that the "age of scientific inquiry" began only about 400 years ago, why do our government advisers select 10,000 or more years as the period for which we must design storage now? Even as short as a 400-year storage goal would seem a reasonable design plan, possibly cheaper and, dare I say, more pragmatic?

JOHN SORFLATEN
Fairfield, Iowa

We were dismayed to read in the May issue, as part of your nuclear legacy series, the article "Hanford's Nuclear Wasteland," by Glenn Zorpette. It focused only on the problems of the distant past and all but ignored the overwhelming progress we are making at Hanford. In 1995 alone we saved $300 million through our aggressive reengineering effort and are contributing toward a $20-billion life-cycle cost savings in Hanford's cleanup. During the past two years, we have, among other accomplishments, resolved urgent safety issues associated with the storage of highly radioactive waste, improved protection of the Columbia River by accelerating the removal of spent nuclear fuel from aging storage basins—at a savings of $350 million—and achieved 97 percent of cleanup schedule on time while downsizing by 32 percent. Perhaps your next story will incorporate the Hanford of today rather than focus on its past.

W. C. MOFFITT
Executive Vice President
Westinghouse Hanford Company

R. E. TILLER
President and General Manager
ICF Kaiser Hanford

Zorpette responds:

The morass at Hanford is impossible to understand without at least some historical context, which, in any case, was limited to about one quarter of the article. As I noted in the piece, the Department of Energy itself says that cleanup projects started between 1989 and 1994 were 30 to 50 percent more expensive than their equivalents in the private sector. So the alleged savings of $300 million in a 1995 budget of $1.576 billion means nothing more than gross inefficiencies were reined in somewhat. And the figure of $350 million in presumed savings would be a possible result of taking care of the spent-fuel problem in the relatively near future rather than letting it languish unconscionably for a decade or more. Only at Hanford, perhaps, would such a plan be considered a fine example of thrift (or anything other than common sense).

RELATIVELY CONFUSING

It is highly unlikely that Einstein ever wrote the equation "$EL = mc^2$" and then crossed out the "L" ["Relatively Expensive," by Charles Seife, News and Analysis, May]. Instead a plausible scenario is that he first wrote "$L = mc^2$," with the "L" denoting "Leistung," which means "a piece of work." He then changed his mind, substituting the "L" with an "E."

JOSEPH SUCHER
University of Maryland

In quickly browsing the May issue, my eyes landed on a rather familiar equation. After reading the brief item about the sale of Einstein's manuscript, I was somewhat taken aback. Do they not know what the "L" stands for? Although Einstein derived the Lorentz term independently of Hendrik Antoon Lorentz, he did honor the Dutch physicist by using the initial "L."

HAROLD E. BLAKE
Tupper Lake, N.Y.

I was intrigued by Seife's remark that the "L" in Einstein's manuscript should be a "superfluous constant." I suspect that it stood for the Lagrange operator, which Einstein presumably used in his calculations. For the famous end result, he then replaced the abstract operator with the physical quantity "E," for energy. If my hunch is off the mark, it would be really interesting to know what the "L" stands for.

SIMON AEGERTER
Winterthur, Switzerland

Letters may be edited for length and clarity. Please include an address and telephone number with all letters. Because of the considerable volume of mail received, we cannot answer all correspondence.

CLARIFICATION

The Society of the Plastics Industry reports that it is unaware of any scientific or technical documentation supporting the claim made by Devra Lee Davis and H. Leon Bradlow ["Can Environmental Estrogens Cause Breast Cancer?" October 1995] that men in the plastics industry developed breasts after inhaling Bisphenol-A. According to Davis, the statement was based on reports from meetings in the 1970s in which the need to reduce such exposures was discussed with the Environmental Protection Agency. At this time, however, no published confirmation of these reports can be found that suggests a connection between the compound Bisphenol-A and growth of breasts in male workers.

RENÉE 'T HART, Intellectual Property Support Officer, Ericsson Business Mobile Networks BV, The Netherlands.

"Being able to answer all my business calls right away gives me more spare time."

Think about how much time you waste on the telephone on an average working day. You call people. They aren't at their desks, so you leave a message. When they call back, you're away from *your* desk. And so on. At the end of the day, you find yourself working late just to catch up.

We need to respect each other's time more. To make everyone more available during the working day. Ericsson researches, develops and markets digital cordless applications for public and private networks that are making communication between people more efficient. Ericsson pioneered the world's first DECT-based, multi-cell, multi-user Business Cordless Telephone System: Freeset.

Ericsson's 85,000 employees are active in more than 100 countries. Their combined expertise in switching, radio and networking makes Ericsson a world leader in telecommunications.

It's about communication between people. The rest is technology.

Telefonaktiebolaget LM Ericsson, S-126 25 Stockholm, SWEDEN.

ERICSSON

50, 100 AND 150 YEARS AGO

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN

SEPTEMBER 1946

Eyes that see the warmth of a man's body in the dark, that locate ships at night, and find the chimneys of factories by their heat radiation were recently demonstrated as potentially valuable to industry. These devices use reflectors to focus the 'black light' radiation of a target onto tiny elements called thermistors, substances which have such unusual electrical sensitivity to heat that they can detect temperature variations as small as one-millionth of a degree. Thermistors stem from a group of materials known as semi-conductors, which are interesting because their electrical reaction to temperature is the reverse of that in normal conductors. As their temperature increases, their resistance drops rapidly."

SEPTEMBER 1896

William J. Eddy, of Bayonne, N.J., has succeeded in making several distinct photographic views of Boston from a great height, by means of a camera supported from kites. The kites were of the tailless type used at the Blue Hill Observatory, and were six and seven feet in diameter. Four to eight of these kites were required to support the camera, depending upon the strength of the wind. Distinct views were obtained of the Common and Beacon Street, and Mr. Eddy estimates that in one of the views the camera was, at the moment of exposure, 1,500 feet above the pavement."

"The United States Patent Office is ready to grant patents for medicines, although it is an open question in professional ethics whether a physician should patent a remedy. Synthetic medicines, prepared by chemical processes, often coal tar products, are now invading the field of Nature's simples, and it is possible that there may yet be a number of patentable medical compounds invented, to replace quinine and other vegetable alkaloids and extracts."

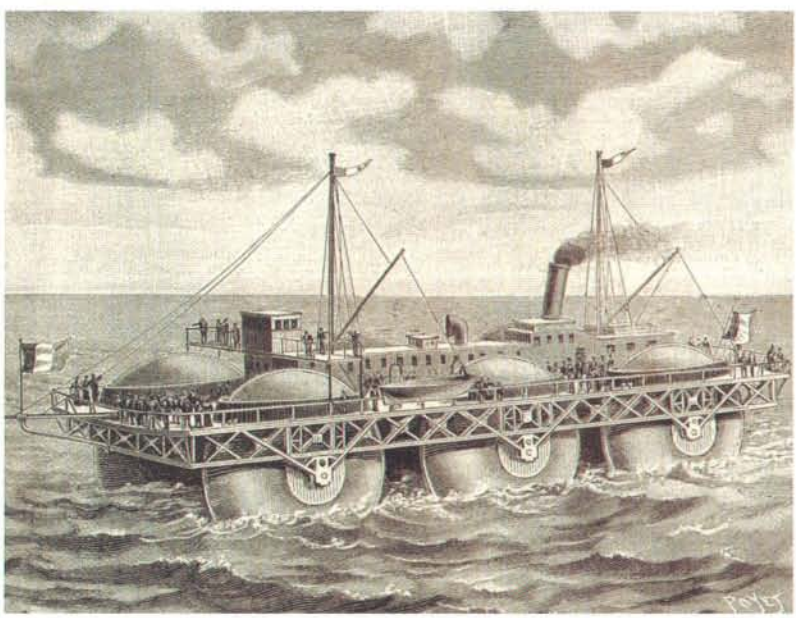
"The extraordinary vessel shown in our engraving was launched on the Seine in August. The Bazin roller steamer is a rectangular iron platform, 120 feet long, mounted on six hollow lenticular rollers, each some 39 feet in diameter. Only about one-third of each roller is submerged. A 550 horse power engine actuates the screw propeller, each pair of wheels being slowly revolved by a 50 horse power engine. It is hoped that by the use of the rollers the friction of the water will be reduced to the minimum, it being the theory of the inventor that the boat should roll over the water without cutting through it. Experiments made with a small model, the rollers of which were moved by clockwork, showed that the speed of the boat was doubled by an extra expenditure of power of only one-quarter. The whole plan is so original that the results of the trial will be watched with the greatest interest."

SEPTEMBER 1846

France will soon possess 3,525 miles of railroad, forming, as her future Regent recently remarked, 'a noble girdle, whose links are destined to bind more closely the outposts of the capital, and to reflect new rays of glory and prosperity.' It is not easy to form even an idea of the gradual transformation which will be effected on the intellectual and moral condition of the people by this new species of communication."

" 'Explosive cotton—*gunpowder superseded.*' An article of the humbugguous class has commenced its newspaper rounds, purporting to have been copied from a Swiss paper. The statement is that a quantity of cotton has been presented to the Basle Society of Natural History, by Professor Schonbien, so prepared as to be more explosive than gunpowder. The article claims that, in one experiment, a 'drachm of cotton being placed in a gun barrel, a ball was thereby sent to a distance of 600 feet, where it penetrated a deal plank to the depth of three inches.' A thread spun from this chimerical cotton would probably split the largest rocks by being merely passed round or over it, and struck with a small hammer." [*Editors' note: The early variety of guncotton devised by Christian F. Schönbein, a German chemist, was developed into a stable form over the next two decades and did, in fact, supersede gunpowder.*]

"Greenlanders have discovered that the immense quantities of ice with which their country abounds, is a salable article in Europe. A cargo of 110 tons has been lately taken to London."

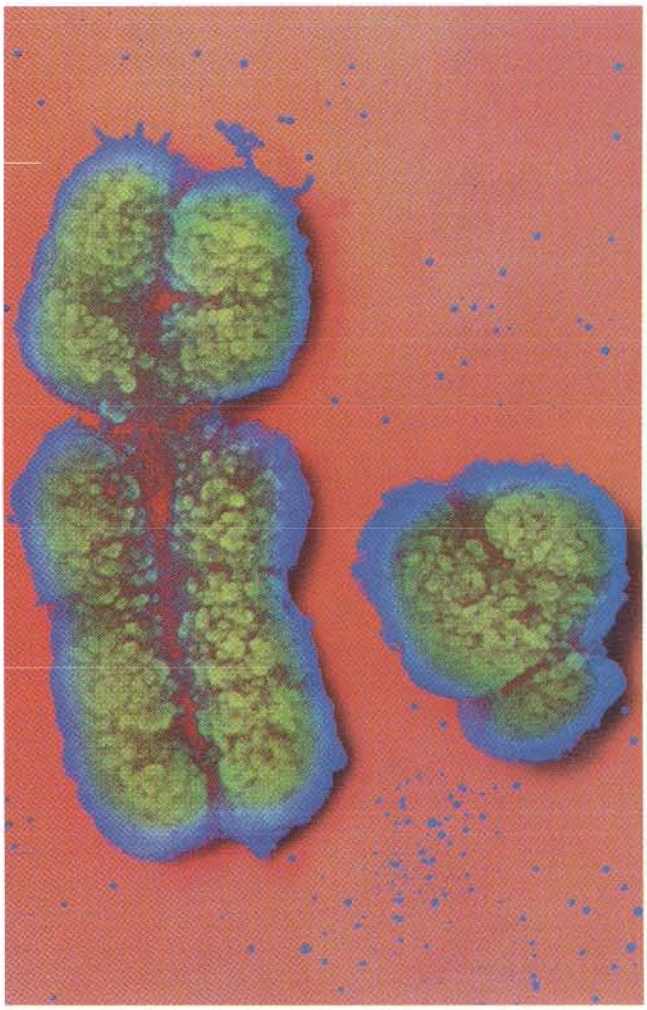


The Bazin roller steamship

Analyzing how genes work in health and illness has yielded profound insight into the origin and progression of disease. The burgeoning understanding of molecular pathology has created unprecedented opportunities to discover important drugs, vaccines, and diagnostic tests.

SmithKline Beecham is building on a strong heritage of innovation that has made us the industry leader in vaccines and antibiotics as well as a major contributor to research in neuroscience, cardiopulmonary medicine, oncology, inflammation, immunology and tissue repair. To that tradition we are adding powerful new tools to shape a new healthcare industry for the next century.

Mapping a healthier future ... one gene at a time.



Human X (left) and Y chromosomes.

Genomics — interpreting genes. We've supported the establishment of the world's biggest library of human gene sequences, data that reveal what proteins are at work in a healthy cell...and what goes wrong when disease strikes. Today, SB scientists are using genomics to uncover potential drugs and drug targets faster than ever before. Tomorrow, patients' genetic profiles may help physicians make earlier diagnoses and prescribe more effective treatments.

Combinatorial chemistry — creating chemical diversity. We've initiated development of new devices — like a business-card-size silicon wafer carrying a computer-controlled chemistry lab with the equivalent of 10,000 test tubes — to synthesize and screen hundreds of thousands of potential drugs a year, generating a wealth of molecular diversity to speed the process of drug discovery.

Molecular biology — discovering function. Biology is the key to making the link between the proteins revealed by genomics and the new molecules manufactured by combinatorial chemistry. It helps connect molecular form and physiological function, and allows us to establish fast, high-volume assays.

Bioinformatics — understanding life's underlying chemical codes. Powerful computers and innovative programs channel the incoming tidal wave of information — interpreting gene sequences, converting primary linear code into complex three-dimensional structures, managing automated screens and running combinatorial chemistry syntheses.

SB
SmithKline Beecham

Pharmaceuticals Research and Development

Pioneers in healthcare for the 21st Century.

http://www.sb.com

Hitachi is changing the way we see things.

The SuperH RISC engine: the Top-Shipping* RISC CPU

More than 800 products** are using one of the world's most popular RISC processors, resulting in shipping of 14 million SuperH RISC engines last year.

Harvesting the Future. Hitachi

Hitachi's SuperH microprocessor/controllers are being used in car navigation systems, automotive products, office automation and information products, consumer goods, entertainment products, PDAs···

What the SuperH can do.

The SuperH in a digital camera allows the image in front of the lens to be seen in realtime at the back of the camera. It digitally processes still data, which in turn can be transmitted to a PC. In the BIRDVIEW™ car navigation system, the SuperH provides an unprecedented quick-scroll function that puts it ahead of competitors.

The rapid 3-D graphics and processing speed of leading video games and photo and video CDs are made possible by the high-performance SuperH.

The story of this path-breaking chip began in 1990 when Hitachi began working on filling a major gap between high-end microprocessors that power workstations and PCs, and low-end microcontrollers that power consumer products and hundreds of other applications.

Birth of a super chip.

Hitachi's first decision was to base its new microcontroller on RISC architecture, opting for speed over complexity. By 1992, Hitachi had developed a chip, dubbed the SH-1, a microcontroller including ROM, RAM and peripheral functions on one chip. It had its own memory and a unique feature, a DSP function that handles digital signal data with blazing quickness. The SH-1 ripped through 20 MIPS, a 10-fold jump over existing microcontrollers. By the end of 1993, the SH-1 was installed in hundreds of products—from factory automation systems to CD-ROM drives, TV sets and electronic organizers—at one-fifth the cost of a microprocessor.

By the end of 1994, the new Hi Saturn video game had provided the impetus for the 32-bit SH-2, boasting a performance of 28 MIPS to ensure the high-resolution graphics demanded by the game's software.

The single-chip SH7042 based on the SH-2 was the next stage in the Hitachi SuperH story. Its realtime image compression and storage capability, its on-board ROM and RAM, and its A/D converter and serial interface transformed the digital camera from drawing board concept to camera store reality.

In March 1995 along came the SH-3 with up to 100 MIPS available to power the new wave of emerging applications: PDAs, high-performance home video game machines, set-top boxes for cable TV and DVDs.

Basically, microprocessors are Jacks of all trades and have to carry excess baggage. The SuperH microprocessor/controller is leaner, more focused and brings PC power and performance into the consumer arena, without the frills.

The SuperH creates markets.

What began with PDAs, car navigation systems and the like has evolved to a whole chain of products that has forged the multimedia revolution. By giving manufacturers a powerful tool to process tasks at a reasonable price, the SuperH lets them satisfy consumer needs with more flair and creativity.

Each generation of portable computers, wireless communications devices and other consumer products demands a big jump in throughput, yet power and cost have to stay low. Using the resources that make it one of the world's largest electrical and electronics manufacturers, Hitachi gives its customers superior semiconductor technology and the best 32-bit RISC architecture and devices.

The SuperH offers an unrivaled performance and low-power operation, enhanced application integration options and high code efficiency. With its performance capability of 100 MIPS, the SH-3 is fast enough to allow functions that once required a custom hardware solution to be handled in software. More and more companies are using the SuperH microprocessor/controller to exploit optimized RISC solutions to create a growing range of consumer products. Small wonder that Hitachi's SuperH is the best-shipping RISC CPU chip.

* ©Andrew Allison, *Inside the New Computer Industry*, April 1996.
** Including those under development.

HITACHI
A totally new vision

NEWS AND ANALYSIS

IN FOCUS

HIV'S ACHILLES' HEEL

Drugs and education are starting to slow the AIDS virus

J.P.G. *SIPA*

AT THE VANCOUVER AIDS CONFERENCE, researchers reported promising results from drug trials, but questions remain about long-term benefits and affordability.

The deadly spread of the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) offers the world a challenge to rival the rampages of any cinematic aliens. Twenty-two million people live with HIV today, and five new victims are infected every minute. At the Eleventh International Conference on AIDS in Vancouver in July, researchers, politicians and patient-activists traded progress reports.

Top billing went to new drug combinations that have beaten the virus down to virtually undetectable amounts in most patients for a year—in one patient, for two years. The amount of virus in a patient's plasma, as detected by viral RNA, indicates how many of the patient's cells are infected and thus the intensity of "the fire that burns up the immune system," in the words of David D. Ho of the Aaron Diamond AIDS Research Center in New York City.

The problem that has dogged anti-HIV drugs is resistant mutant forms that spread throughout patients within mere weeks. The mutants gain the upper hand because of the extremely high turnover of viruses. The latest numbers indicate that even in the early stages of HIV infection, a patient produces 10 billion particles a day, including millions of mutants. No single drug can defeat all of them. Combinations of drugs, however, can slow replication of the virus enough to delay resistance.

One key study is being conducted by Roy M. Gulick of New York University Medical Center and his colleagues. It employs a combination of three drugs: AZT, 3TC and indinavir. AZT and 3TC inhibit HIV's reverse transcriptase, the enzyme HIV uses when it first infects a cell. Indinavir's target is the HIV protease, which the virus needs later to assemble new particles. For almost a year the combination suppressed HIV enough to slow—though not prevent—the accumulation of mutations conferring resistance to the drugs.

Another triple combination that has shown long-lasting antiviral activity consists of three reverse transcriptase inhibitors: nevirapene, AZT and ddI. And even more promising

drugs are in development. Researchers now believe physicians should not treat patients with any single antiviral medicine, because it encourages the evolution of resistant mutants. "If you leave the door half open, the virus will push it open the rest of the way," says Emilio A. Emini of Merck.

Combination therapy has raised the tantalizing hope that HIV can be eliminated from patients. Ho calculates that if viral replication could be suppressed for one to three years, all significant pools of HIV in the body should become exhausted and the infection perhaps conquered. He and others are testing the idea by treating a group of patients with a protease inhibitor called ritonavir, together with AZT and 3TC.

The study focuses on newly infected patients, because they have had less time to accumulate mutations—and have healthier immune systems—than people with longer-established disease. If the patients have no signs of virus in their lymph nodes after a year, the therapy will be stopped. Even if the virus returns, studies suggest it may persist at a lower level than it would have without the early therapy.

Most researchers are wary of talk about eradicating HIV. They point out that even a small amount of virus lurking beyond the reach of drugs—perhaps in the central nervous system—could reseed an infection. No one can be sure for how long triple or quadruple drug therapies can suppress HIV. Moreover, some patients may be unable to tolerate the side effects.

Another compelling practical problem is the cost of such drugs. A triple therapy regimen costs more than $10,000 a year. ("Greed equals death" was the favorite slogan of demonstrators at Vancouver.) Yet 94 percent of HIV infections occur in the developing world, where such sums are completely beyond the reach of patients or governments. Although drug companies have given away other medicines—Janssen Pharmaceutica has donated antifungal medicines for AIDS patients in Africa, and Merck has given away a treatment for river blindness—antiviral agents are far more expensive.

PAUL SHIMA

HIV PATIENT DEBBIE GORDON of New York City has responded well to a multidrug regimen.

Noting that all antiviral drugs have limitations, Robert C. Gallo of the Institute of Human Virology in Baltimore, who first showed that HIV causes AIDS, urged researchers to pursue therapies based on how the body controls viruses. Such biological treatments might be less toxic than antiviral drugs, Gallo believes. He has identified some candidates: a class of chemicals known as beta chemokines that occur naturally in the body and inhibit HIV infection in the test tube. "I believe this has opened up new possibilities for control," Gallo states. He plans to investigate whether the compounds can prevent an HIV-related virus from infecting monkeys.

For a decade, Jay A. Levy of the University of California at San Francisco has been studying another biological factor, one secreted by killer *T* cells. Levy maintains that the factor suppresses HIV and is present in unusually large amounts in patients whose disease progresses slowly, but so far he has been unable to isolate and characterize it.

Other, well-studied immune system molecules are also demonstrating activity against HIV. Anthony S. Fauci, director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, says injections of the immune system protein interleukin-10 strikingly decrease plasma levels of HIV for a few hours. Interleukin-2 is already showing promise as a therapy.

Perhaps the biggest prize would be a vaccine that could prevent the spread of HIV infection. William E. Paul, head of the office of AIDS research at the National Institutes of Health, complains that current and past efforts to design vaccines do not adequately exploit all the recent advances in biotechnology or the approaches suggested by our greater understanding of the immune system. Pharmaceutical companies are shying away from the area, fearful of being held liable if a vaccine is ineffective or causes harm.

Yet a vaccine against HIV need not be high-tech. John Moore of the Aaron Diamond AIDS Research Center says an HIV vaccine that would probably be effective to some degree could be made now, simply by inactivating live HIV. Although the strategy is risky, some developing countries might see that as a risk worth taking, Moore says.

There was some good news for developing countries at Vancouver. According to some published studies, treatment with AZT alone has reduced the rate of transmission of HIV from mothers to their children by about 65 percent. Yvonne J. Bryson of the University of California at Los Angeles thinks more potent drugs could reduce the transmission rate to 2 percent. For example, nevirapene, which exerts its antiviral effect immediately, could become a short-term treatment for pregnant, HIV-positive women who do not seek medical care until they are ready to deliver. The rate of infection among pregnant women has fallen in Uganda in the past few years, presumably a result of educational campaigns. Similar encouraging signs have been noted in other African countries with high infection rates. One hope is that vaginal anti-HIV washes or ointments might be developed.

One third of HIV patients worldwide actually die of tuberculosis (TB), which takes advantage of weakened immune systems. Because TB spreads easily, HIV is indirectly spurring an epidemic of the disease in HIV-negative people. Yet TB in HIV-positive and HIV-negative individuals alike can be cured easily with drugs costing just $11, says Peter Piot of the Joint United Nations Program on HIV/AIDS.

Erik De Clercq of the Rega Institute in Belgium, who studies compounds showing anti-HIV potential, summarizes AIDS progress by paraphrasing Winston Churchill. We have not reached the end of the struggle against HIV, he notes, or even the beginning of the end. But we have, perhaps, reached the end of the beginning. —*Tim Beardsley in Vancouver, B.C.*

COSMOLOGY

COSMIC PUFFERY

Whither goest the big bang?

When the *Cosmic Background Explorer* (*COBE*) satellite produced its first detailed measurements of the cosmic microwave background—the so-called echo of creation—cosmologists cheered. It was a proud moment in the age-old effort to understand our origins, taken as confirmation of the prevailing model of the big bang. Four years later, however, the pages of the *Astrophysical Journal* look much as they did before, full of contentious debate over the age of the universe, the nature of "dark matter" and the ways that mysterious physical laws may have shaped the world around us. What happened?

For one, astronomers such as Wendy L. Freedman of the Carnegie Observatories in Pasadena, Calif., have continued to refine their measurements of the Hubble constant, the rate of cosmic expansion. The latest numbers indicate a universe roughly nine to 12 billion years old, just barely old enough to accommodate the most ancient stars. A number of recent observations, however, including work carried out by James S. Dunlop of the University of Edinburgh and his colleagues, reveal oddly mature-looking galaxies in the very early universe. This seeming inconsistency—objects that appear older than the inferred age of the universe—is commonly known as the age problem.

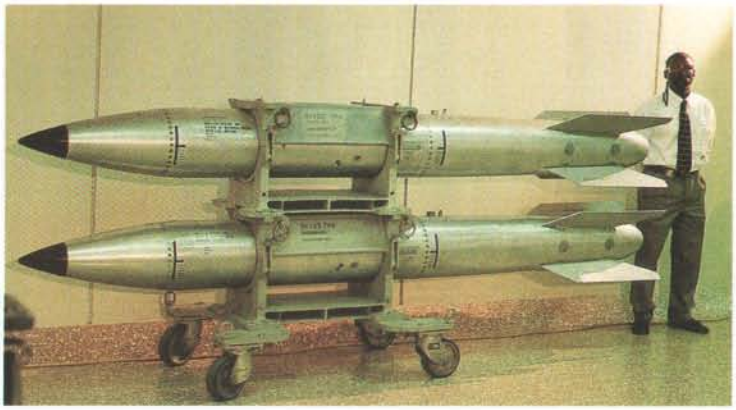
Things get worse for inflationary cosmology, a popular elaboration on the

FIELD NOTES

A Day at the Armageddon Factory

The sleep isn't quite out of my eyes when I am greeted by six beefy guards with guns on their thighs and boots on their feet. They hand me forms to fill out, scrutinize my credentials, affix a radiation dosimeter to the lapel of my jacket and search me with a metal detector. Another media day has dawned at the Pantex plant.

For 42 years, Pantex, which is overseen by the U.S. Department of Energy, was about as off-limits to journalists as it was to Soviet spies. Here on the hot, flat Texas Panhandle, tens of thousands of nuclear weapons were assembled during the cold war. On this sunny day in July, 14 members of the press, some in shorts and sandals, will traipse through the innermost recesses of what remains one of the most heavily guarded sites on the earth. Pantex is among the few places where the sight of people carrying assault weapons is reassuring.



GLENN ZORPETTE

Some 3,600 people work at Pantex, most of them for the site's main contractor, the Mason & Hanger–Silas Mason Company, which has run the site for the past 40 years. The U.S. government stopped making new nuclear weapons several years ago, and in 1996, roughly 85 percent of Pantex's $250-million annual operating budget will be spent on disassembly of weapons and also on evaluation of weapons from an "enduring" stockpile, the size of which is classified.

We begin our tour with a visit to Zone 4, where 8,500 plutonium "pits" are stored in metal barrels housed in an array of concrete bunkers. Surrounding the bunkers are three fences topped with razor ribbon or barbed wire; two of these fences are separated by a dusty no-man's-land of seismic, motion and infrared sensors. Many of the pits—hollow spheres of plutonium about the size of a bowling ball—will someday be disposed of, but some are held in "war reserve," in case the unthinkable happens after all.

Moving along to Zone 12, we are ushered through labyrinthine tunnels and past massive, conventional-explosion-proof doors into a "gravel gertie." Inside these cells, each buried underneath six meters of graded gravel, the plutonium pit and its outer shell of conventional high explosive are separated. An accidental detonation of the explosive could not realistically trigger a nuclear blast, but it could scatter the deadly plutonium. The purpose of the gravel at the top of the gerties is to lift in an explosion, dissipating the energy of the blast, and to adsorb plutonium and other contaminants.

The cells, built in the 1950s, were named after "Gravel Gertie," a character in the Dick Tracy comic strip. They are perfectly round rooms, 10.36 meters in diameter and 6.5 meters from floor to ceiling. The mechanical hiss of a powerful ventilation system adds to the ambiance. A red telephone on the wall lets technicians report their progress to a control center as they disassemble or move a weapon.

Technicians are now dismantling B-61 bombs, variants of which have yields between 100 and 500 kilotons, according to the authoritative *Nuclear Weapons Databook*. (A Pantex spokesperson will say only that the yield is "between one kiloton and 999 kilotons.") In comparison, Little Boy, which destroyed Hiroshima at the end of World War II, had a yield of 13 kilotons. Each B-61 has about 6,000 parts.

The tour ends with a question-and-answer session, during which someone asks the inevitable: When can all nuclear weapons in the world be eliminated? An executive of Mason & Hanger does his best with a question that has challenged some of the brightest minds of this century. The short version of his answer is: no time soon. —*Glenn Zorpette*

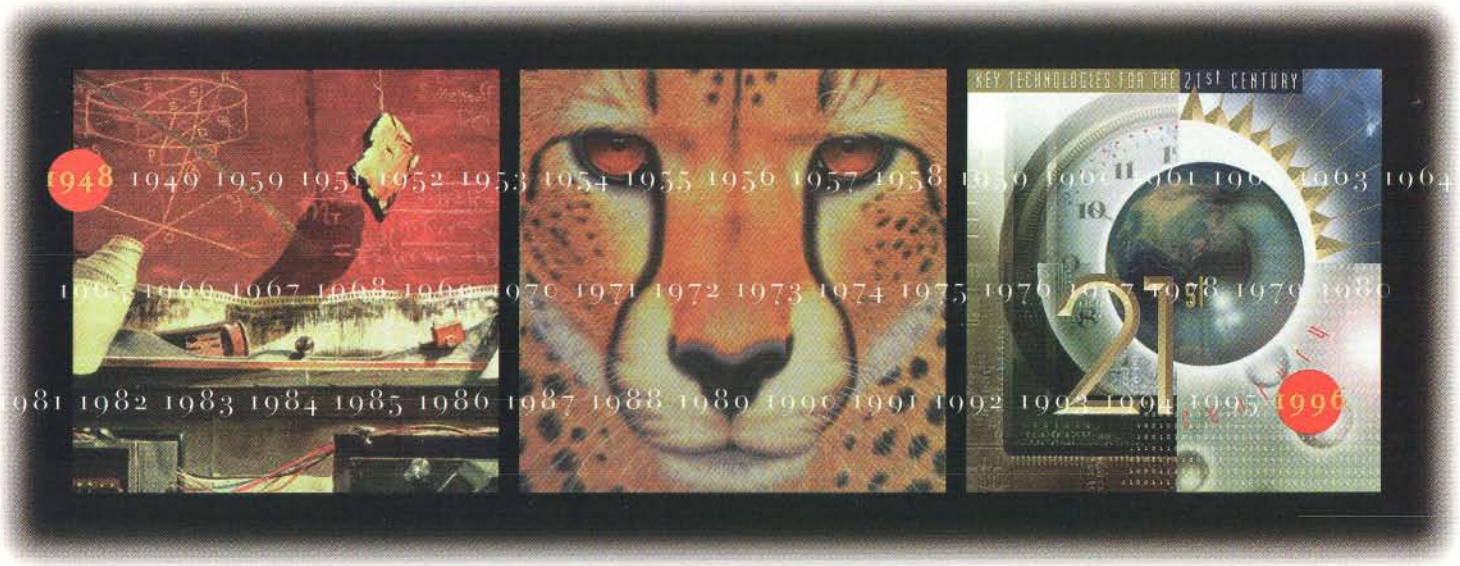
A N N O U N C I N G

SciDex® v.2.0

Special pre-publication price, $34.97 ($39.97 after 12/31/96)

The computerized index to Scientific American has just been updated and expanded.

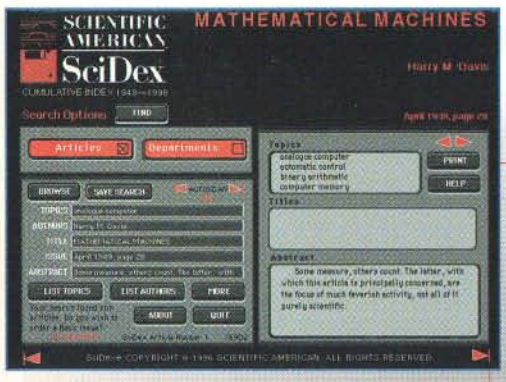
Find 48 years of science and technology information fast with the new CD-ROM or diskettes.



Turn your library of SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN into an exciting research tool with SCIDEX v.2.0, the new computerized index to SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN.

Quick and easy to use, SCIDEX v.2.0 is an intuitive, menu driven database with powerful search capabilities. Use the key word search to locate every relevant SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN article back to May 1948. Then check related topics and call up specific article summaries as you browse.

You'll put 48 years of scientific discovery, technological advances, and medical breakthroughs at your fingertips—and at a price almost 30% less than the original SCIDEX. Order today. Available, January 1997.



FEATURES INCLUDE:

- Index to all issues May 1948 to December 1996.
- Search by subject, author, title or issue date.
- Searches can be saved and printed.
- Over 43,000 topical references.
- Redesigned for speed and efficiency.
- Available on CD-ROM or 3.5" HD diskettes.
- Choice of Windows or Macintosh platform.

SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS: *All systems*–CD-ROM drive or a 3-1/2" high density disk drive; hard disk with at least 10MB of free disk space. *Windows*–An Intel compatible 486/33 PC running Windows 95, Windows NT 3.51, Windows 3.1 or later; 8 MB RAM (16MB recommended for Windows NT 3.51). *Macintosh*–Any Macintosh, Power Macintosh or compatible running System 7.0 or later (System 7.1 or later recommended); 4MB RAM (8MB required by Power Macintosh; 8MB recommended for 680X0 Macintosh).

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN SciDex®

For faster service, call 1-800-777-0444.

Yes! Please enter my order for SCIDEX v.2.0.

Name *(please print)* _____

Company _____

Address _____ Apt. _____

City _____

State/ Country _____ Zip/ Postal code _____

Reserve _____ copies of SCIDEX v.2.0 at $34.97 each ($39.97 after 12/31/96). $_____

Add $5 per copy S&H. Outside U.S. and Canada, $10 per copy. $_____

Add local sales tax. In CA, IA, IL, MA, MI, NY. $_____

TOTAL ORDER ENCLOSED $_____

Platform: ❒ Macintosh ❒ Windows

Format: ❒ CD-ROM ❒ 3.5" HD diskettes

Charge my: ❒ MasterCard ❒ VISA ❒ Access ❒ Eurocard ❒ American Express

Account number _____ Expiration _____

Signature _____

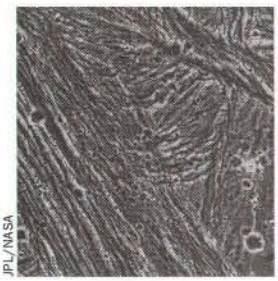
Please make check or money order payable to Scientific American. Send your order to: Scientific American; Dept. SCIDEX; 415 Madison Ave.; New York, NY 10017-1111; U.S.A. **SD96**

Delivery date, 1/97. Remit in U.S. funds drawn on a U.S. bank. Canadian residents add 7% G.S.T. G.S.T. #R127387652. Quebec residents add Q.S.T. Q.S.T. #Q1015332537. Photocopies of this order form are acceptable.

IN BRIEF

Galileo's *Travels*

Kicking off its tour of Jupiter's moons, the space probe *Galileo* sent the first close-up images of Ganymede to Earth in July. The pictures clearly reveal Ganymede's strange face, scarred with icy mountains and unusual craters. *Galileo*'s instruments also detected a magnetic field, suggesting that a molten core or a buried saltwater sea lies below the moon's surface. More images are available at http://www.jpl.nasa.gov/galileo/ganymede/g1images.html



JPL/NASA

Growing Pains

Emotional problems can stunt more than intellectual and social development. In a study of 716 children, girls diagnosed with anxiety disorders or depression at puberty were, on average, one to two inches shorter than less troubled youths. The link did not hold true for boys, perhaps because depression and anxiety are less common among them after childhood.

Free Bits

In a recent paper, renowned IBM computing expert Rolf Landauer asserts that energy need not be spent in sending data. The examples he gives are not practical. But they do demonstrate how, in certain scenarios, the energy and matter used to transmit information can be recycled. If he's right and no minimum energy expenditure for communications exists, creating smaller, faster circuits in the future will be all the more feasible.

First Drug for Stroke Approved

The Food and Drug Administration has at last approved Activase for treating acute ischemic stroke within three hours of symptom onset. In this variety of "brain attack," which accounts for 80 percent of all stroke cases, a clot cuts off the brain's blood supply. Clinical trials showed that patients given Activase, an anticlotting agent, were 33 percent more likely to survive having minimal or no disability than patients given a placebo.

Continued on page 16

big bang that explains several puzzling aspects of the universe. The *COBE* results are merely consistent with—not proof of—inflation, and inflation has an unfortunate corollary: it requires that the universe be denser than it appears. In the simplest interpretation, more matter means a younger universe, exacerbating the age problem. (Much of this extra material must consist of unseen dark matter of indeterminate nature, yet another uncomfortable unknown.)

Not everyone takes the seeming conflict very seriously. "It is not time to jump off the roof!" laughs Michael Turner of Fermilab in Batavia, Ill. He is reassured both by the latest estimates of the Hubble constant, which make the universe slightly older than before, and by some slight downward revisions in the estimated ages of the oldest stars. Turner, like a number of his colleagues, also thinks the various elements of the big bang model can be more readily reconciled by assuming a "cosmological constant," a kind of energy woven in the fabric of space. The cosmological constant, often known by the Greek symbol lambda, hides some of the cosmic mass as an intrinsic form of energy.

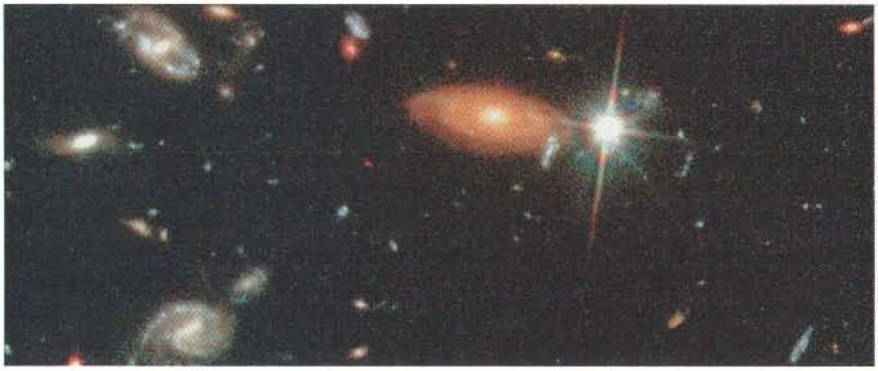
Yet the cosmological constant itself is the source of much puzzlement. Indeed, Christopher T. Hill of Fermilab calls it "the biggest problem in all of physics." Current big bang models propose that lambda is small or zero, and various observations support that assumption. Hill points out, however, that current particle physics theory predicts a cosmological constant much, much greater—by a factor of at least 10^{52}, large enough to have crunched the universe back down to nothing immediately after the big bang. "Something is happening to suppress this vacuum density," says Alan Guth of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, one of the co-developers of inflationary theory. Nobody knows, however, what that something is.

Paul Steinhardt of the University of Pennsylvania, who helped to refine the concept of inflation, anticipates that improved measurement of the cosmic microwave background will soon reveal whether lambda has a role in shaping the universe. "In the next five years we will know," he predicts. Guth hopes some unknown symmetry principle will show that lambda must equal zero. On the other hand, he admits, a small but nonzero lambda, though unaesthetic, "would fit things perfectly from an astrophysical point of view."

Such obliging flexibility engenders a disturbing sense that cosmological theory resembles an endlessly nested set of Matryoshka dolls. Each refinement of the big bang delves deeper into abstruse theory, which grows progressively harder to prove or disprove. So far inflation is mostly notable for explaining existing questions about the big bang, such as why the cosmic microwave background looks the same in all directions. It did predict *COBE*'s discovery that the background displays a noisy pattern—but such patterns are common in nature. And inflationary cosmology derives from the same kind of particle physics that yields a huge cosmological constant.

"Our prayer is that whatever makes lambda equal to zero somehow commutes with the other kinds of physics that we can think about," Hill reflects. This mixed message lies at the heart of the ongoing cosmological controversies: the excitement about exposing ever more intricate details of reality mingles with the fear that we will never get to see the tiniest and most essential doll at the center.

—Corey S. Powell and Madhusree Mukerjee



HUBBLE DEEP FIELD TEAM STScI and NASA

DISTANT GALAXIES
show remarkable complexity—a challenge for the explanatory powers of science.

DISEASE

MYSTERIOUS MALADIES

Separating real from imagined disorders presents frustrating challenges

As a physician in Tanzania in 1988, Robert Aronowitz struggled to isolate the cause of the arthritislike joint aches and pains he saw in dozens of his patients. Local doctors had also been stumped by the condition—they named it *hapa-hapa,* or "here and there," because the symptoms were so difficult to pin down. Aronowitz, now a clinician and medical historian at the Robert Wood Johnson Medical School in New Jersey, never could determine what was behind his patients' complaints.

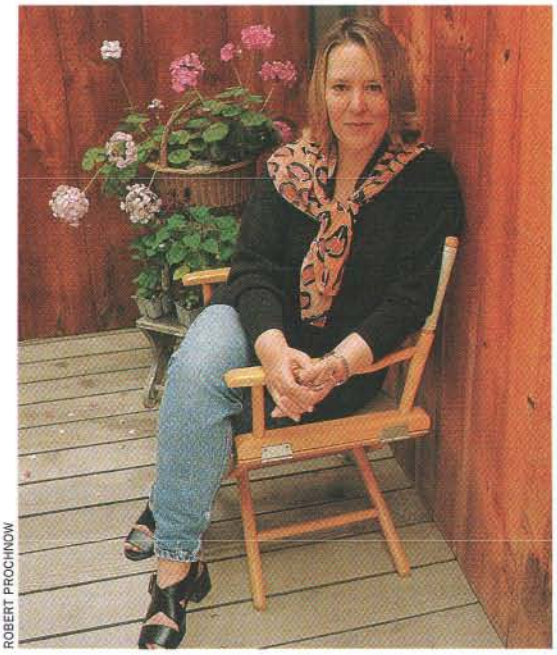
Such confusion is not unusual: most of us have on occasion left the doctor's office wondering if something important has been missed. Explaining sickness can become especially complicated when the medical community disagrees over whether a particular disease even exists. Consider the condition known as chronic fatigue syndrome (CFS), characterized by fatigue, pain and cognitive disorders, which has been riding a roller coaster of medical opinion since it was first described in the mid-1980s. A recent book—*Osler's Web: Inside the Labyrinth of the Chronic Fatigue Syndrome Epidemic*—recounts the history of this controversial ailment.

The author, Hillary Johnson, a journalist and CFS patient, traces the syndrome from its early connection with the Epstein-Barr virus to the current search for a novel retrovirus that some claim may cause CFS. Along the way, she criticizes health officials for dismissing the syndrome as psychological and notes that CFS is not the first condition to be overlooked—in the early part of this century, for instance, multiple sclerosis was known as "the faker's disease."

People complaining of CFS and similarly disputed maladies, such as Gulf War syndrome, multiple chemical sensitivity and the complications supposedly connected to silicone breast implants, generally blame stress on the immune system for their problems. According to advocates of these syndromes, an overload of toxins—nerve gas, insecticides, silicone gel or a virus—somehow overwork the body's natural defenses, leaving its immune system in disarray.

Charles Rosenberg, a historian and sociologist of science at the University of Pennsylvania, notes that immune disorders have traditionally been difficult to identify. "Even well-established diseases such as lupus are elusive and complicated to diagnose," he says. (On average, patients with lupus, a disease in which the immune system attacks healthy tissue and damages the skin, joints, blood and kidneys, go undiagnosed or misdiagnosed for about four years.) Aronowitz suggests that because of science's incomplete understanding of the immune system, physicians and patients—no doubt influenced by the specter of AIDS—often implicate immune disorders in mysterious illnesses. "They point to things like environmental exposure and the battle of the immune system" to explain why some people get sick and others do not, Aronowitz says.

Of course, not every ache and pain heralds a bona fide disease. So how do doctors distinguish between hypochondria and hidden illness? An organic



ROBERT PROCHNOW

CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME SUFFERER
Hillary Johnson has written a new book on the controversial condition.

In Brief, *continued from page 14*

Long Days' Night

As the moon moves away from Earth, it is stretching out our days, a team of scientists now reports. They measured the microscopic thickness of ancient tidalites—sediments left by the rise and fall of lunar tides—at several sites in the U.S. and Australia. The results indicated that 900 million years ago, during the Proterozoic era, days were only 18.2 hours long, and years were 481 days long.

Some Flies Have All the Luck

Female fireflies, a new study shows, prefer flashy dates. Marc A. Branham, then at the University of Kansas, analyzed videotape of *Photinys consimilis* and built a robot to mimic the bug's behavior. In the field, he found that the rate at which the robot flashed—and not the brightness or color of its light—determined its success with the fairer sex: the faster it blinked, the more attractive it seemed.

IVAN POLUNIN Bruce Coleman Inc.

Polar Surprise

New data are helping geologists characterize a body of water that lies four kilometers below central East Antarctica's ice sheet. Updated satellite measurements and radio-echo surveys show that the submerged lake is about a million years old, fresh and much bigger than anyone thought. In fact, its dimensions rival those of Lake Ontario. Workers calculate that the lake has a mean depth of at least 125 meters. Their next step may be sampling these waters for signs of ancient microorganisms.

Pedal Medals

Bamboo bicycles may have been featured in every fashion magazine this summer, but the Kangaroo, made from glass fiber–reinforced composites, won first prize at a recent design competition. The task Owens Corning's 1996 Global Design Challenge gave to university students around the world was simple: devise an affordable bicycle for developing nations that rely heavily on two-wheeled transportation. The Kangaroo's creators, seven students from the University of São Paulo in Brazil, will split a $10,000 prize with their school.

Continued on page 19

agent, such as a bacterium, virus or mutated gene, certainly establishes a disease as real. But many diseases—multiple sclerosis, for example—lack a well-understood biochemical cause yet are still considered legitimate. What makes these disorders easier to accept? Edward Shorter, a medical historian at the University of Toronto, observes that although doctors may not always understand the cause of a disease, they are good at finding organic changes triggered by the ailment, such as the damage to nerve fibers seen in multiple sclerosis.

Shorter goes on to argue that "these mystery diseases share many of the same symptoms—chronic pain, chronic fatigue, slight cognitive changes, maybe some dizziness," adding that "these symptoms are as common as grass." He notes that some patients simply need the "gift of time" from family doctors who will listen to these recurring complaints.

Regardless of how the debates on CFS and other disputed syndromes are resolved, physicians will no doubt continue to face mysterious ailments as medical research and the health care system both attempt to keep up. When pressed further to explain the "here and there" problems of his Tanzanian patients, Aronowitz turns philosophical, suggesting that an undercurrent of as yet unexplained suffering may be at work in many ailments—a frustrating diagnosis, to be sure. —*Sasha Nemecek*

ATMOSPHERIC SCIENCE

SMOG FROM SPACE

Pollution photographed from the space shuttle helps to quantify global cooling

Confusion tore through the crew of the space shuttle *Columbia* this past February when a tethered satellite broke free and drifted into oblivion. But for Robert J. Charlson, an atmospheric scientist at the University of Washington, the aborted mission was a boon. An unexpected phone call from the National Aeronautics and Space Administration told him that the astronauts now had time to snap a few earthy photographs especially for him.

The photos, intended to help Charlson and others decipher how atmospheric pollution affects the planet's climate, build on those brought back from earlier shuttle missions and finally confirm the geographic extent of the thick haze that covers many industrial regions. Although scientists have yet to determine the exact chemical composition of the haze, they do know that a large part of it is made up of sulfates. Long thought of as a greenhouse gas and contributor to global warming, sulfate haze is now also known to cool climate—perhaps

Continued on page 19

EARTH SCIENCE BRANCH, NASA JOHNSON SPACE CENTER

***HAZE OVER YANGTZE RIVER VALLEY** in China consists mostly of sulfates produced by coal burning.*

ANTI GRAVITY

Put a Sock on It

Consider the turkey. Most of us only do that briefly on the fourth Thursday of each November, after which the bird once again recedes from our consciousness. Ben Franklin was one of the last scientists to give the turkey a second thought, and that was only to nominate it as official symbol for the newly hatched United States. It didn't win. "We know a whole lot about what eats turkeys and what turkeys eat," says Richard Buchholz, an ornithologist at Northeast Louisiana University—but not all that much about turkeys. Thanks to a recent study published by Buchholz in the journal *The Auk,* however, the turkey is less of a black box bird than it used to be.

Male wild turkeys have brightly colored, unfeathered heads that ornithologists generally believed played a role in attracting females. When his own hairline started to recede, Buchholz began to wonder whether a turkey's bald pate might serve important functions besides picking up chicks. Other studies suggested that unfeathered regions might help some birds regulate body temperature. Wood storks and turkey vultures, for example, seem to get a radiator effect from their bare legs. They also appear to achieve a greater heat loss by defecating on their own legs, thereby promoting evaporation.

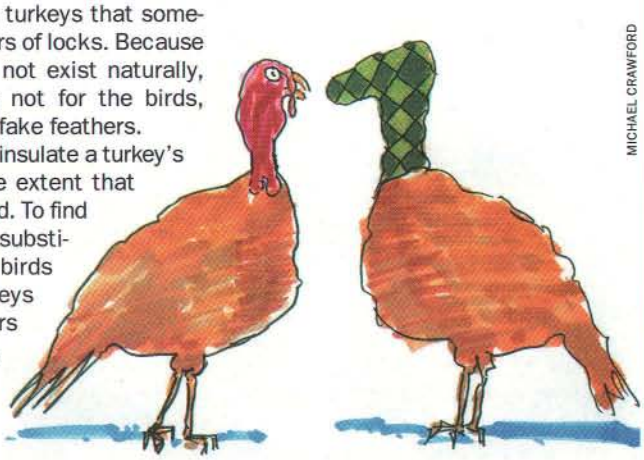
Barring years of yoga, wild turkeys will probably never learn the trick of defecating on their unfeathered regions. But Buchholz decided to see if those unfeathered heads did indeed have a role in thermoregulation. To conduct his trials properly, however, he would need to compare normal, bald turkeys with turkeys that somehow had lush layers of locks. Because such animals do not exist naturally, and Monoxidil is not for the birds, Buchholz needed fake feathers.

His idea was to insulate a turkey's head to the same extent that real feathers would. To find the right feather substitute, he needed birds related to turkeys but with feathers on their heads. Roosters fit the bill. Buchholz got some rooster heads, froze them and measured the rate at which they warmed up. Then he plucked them and repeated the process. Then he went to Wal-Mart and bought socks. ("Hey, all good field biologists and lab biologists rely on Wal-Mart," Buchholz asserts.) Tests on the rooster heads revealed that their feathers' insulatory properties could be simulated by a pair of Adler Casual Acrylic Crew socks, 75 percent hi-bulk acrylic, 25 percent stretch nylon. On to the turkeys.

Buchholz took measurements of oxygen consumption, metabolic rate and other parameters for eight wild turkeys placed in a metabolic chamber at 0 degrees Celsius, 22 degrees C and 35 degrees C. Wild turkeys range from southern Mexico to the Canadian-U.S. border and are exposed to at least this temperature variation. Each bird had a second chamber experience while wearing the socks, with large holes for the eyes and entire bill.

Cold turkeys, and even warm turkeys, did not show significant differences in their response to the socks. But at 35 degrees C, the dressed turkeys had a much higher average metabolic rate and far greater trouble dissipating heat through evaporation. (One can scarcely imagine the problems head socking could cause at, say, 350 degrees Fahrenheit for 20 minutes per pound.)

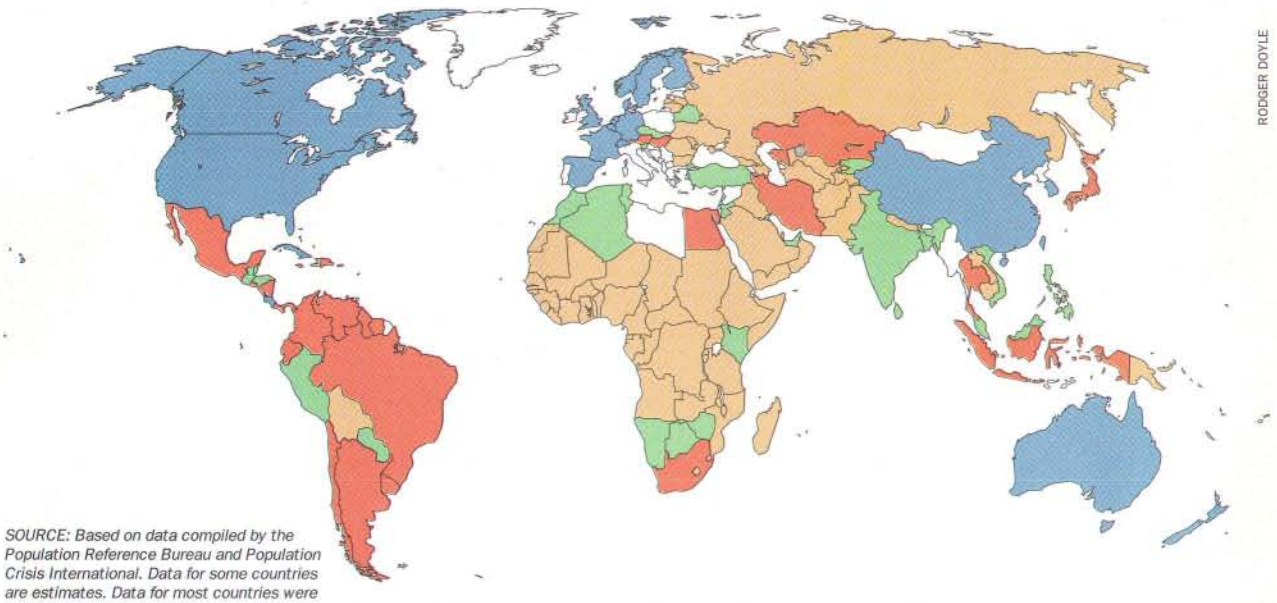
The wild turkey thus becomes the first bird species for which the value of the unfeathered head in thermoregulation, as opposed to sexual selection, has been demonstrated experimentally. Of course, a previous Buchholz study showed that what really attracts female wild turkeys isn't primarily the male's bald head, anyway. It's the length of his snood. But that's another story. —*Steve Mirsky*



MICHAEL CRAWFORD

BY THE NUMBERS

World Birth-Control Use



SOURCE: Based on data compiled by the Population Reference Bureau and Population Crisis International. Data for some countries are estimates. Data for most countries were collected in the late 1980s and early 1990s. Data apply to married women and women in nonmarital unions.

Over the past 30 years or so, there has been a dramatic decline in world fertility rates, particularly in developing countries. Between 1960 and 1965 women in these countries averaged six births over a lifetime, but 30 years later they averaged only 3.4. In east Asia over the same period, births per woman fell 65 percent and are now below the replacement rate of 2.1 children. In other parts of Asia, births declined by about a third, whereas in Latin America, they have almost halved. In Africa, on the other hand, the drop has been only 10 percent. In the developed countries the number of births per woman declined by about 40 percent and are now below replacement level in virtually all these countries, including the U.S.

Modern contraceptive methods have played a key role in lowering fertility. Among women of reproductive age who are married (or in nonmarital unions), half now depend on such methods as female sterilization (the most popular), male sterilization, hormonal implants such as Norplant, injectibles such as Depo-Provera, intrauterine devices (IUDs), birth-control pills, condoms and diaphragms. The first four methods are almost 100 percent effective in preventing conception. Next are IUDs, followed by the pill and the male condom. Diaphragms are among the least effective. Condoms—both the male and female type—are the only methods currently available that provide some protection against sexually transmitted diseases, such as AIDS.

The percentage of women using modern contraception now stands at 54 percent in Asia (39 percent if China is excluded), 53 percent in Latin America, 30 to 40 percent in the Muslim countries of the Middle East and North Africa, 48 percent in the countries of the southern tip of Africa, but less than 10 percent in that vast region comprising the middle part of Africa. In the developed countries of North America and western Europe, modern methods are used by 65 to 75 percent of women. Usage in the countries of the former Soviet Union averages less than 20 percent because birth-control products are in short supply. Women there have depended heavily on abortion as an acceptable way of limiting family size.

The growth in birth-control use and the decline in fertility in developing countries is closely tied to expanding educational opportunities for women. Increased literacy, of course, makes it easier for women to get reliable information on contraception, whereas the demands of education, particularly at the postsecondary level, cause women to delay marriage and childbearing. Sub-Saharan Africa, the region with the highest fertility rates, has the lowest female education levels.

Some developing countries, such as China and Cuba, are already below the replacement level of 2.1 children, in large part because of modern birth-control methods. Countries such as Brazil, Indonesia, Vietnam, South Africa, Turkey, Egypt and India should reach this goal within the next decade or so. At the other extreme are nations such as Pakistan and Nigeria, which are unlikely to reach the replacement rate for several decades to come. Few women in these high-fertility countries use modern contraception.

Traditional methods of birth control (not included on the map) include the rhythm method, coitus interruptus and prolonged breast-feeding; the last suppresses ovulation. Worldwide, 7 percent of all women of reproductive age who are married (or in nonmarital unions) depend on these practices, which are far less reliable than most current methods. They are widespread in several countries, such as Peru, where the rhythm method is popular, and Turkey, where coitus interruptus is prevalent. *—Rodger Doyle*

Continued from page 16

even completely counteracting regional warming caused by such greenhouse gases as carbon dioxide and methane.

Sulfates lower temperature in two ways. Under clear skies, sulfur dioxide—a gas commonly emitted by industrial processes—forms sulfate aerosol, which reflects away incoming solar radiation. Sulfates can also boost the number of cloud droplets, thereby increasing cloud albedo, or reflectivity. These reactions take place in the troposphere, that part of the atmosphere that extends from the earth's surface up to about 10 kilometers. The temperature-lowering effect of sulfate aerosols, however, is only regional. Unlike carbon dioxide, which spreads throughout the atmosphere, sulfur dioxide stays put, and so only those areas that it engulfs are cooled.

So far estimates for the extent of this cooling effect have come largely from theoretical calculations and computer modeling and have varied substantially. Scientists now hope to gather chemical data on the exact composition of the haze to quantify the cooling more precisely. Photographs such as these, Charlson says, are needed to determine how those chemical data, gathered at a single point, apply to an entire region.

An example is the photograph on page 16 of the Yangtze River Valley from 400 kilometers away. Taken from the *Columbia,* it is the first time that the atmosphere above this area has ever been imaged. The valley empties into one of China's most rapidly industrializing areas, the Red Basin in Sichuan Province. Decades of radiometric measurements had shown that the amount of sunlight hitting the area had steadily decreased as the population increased. The captured scene implicates increasing levels of sulfate-laden smog, most likely from coal burning, as the reason.

The camera also spied other kinds of aerosol clouds, such as one that hovered over California's Central Valley. It consisted of dust and smoke particles generated from burning organic compounds such as wood and agricultural waste. Such particles reflect sunlight and increase cloud albedo, although to a lesser degree than sulfates do.

Although haze offsets some of the greenhouse warming that seems to be taking place, it has two other effects, both quite nasty: it creates acid rain and depletes the ozone layer. Spewing sulfates into the air isn't necessarily a cool thing to do. —*Gunjan Sinha*

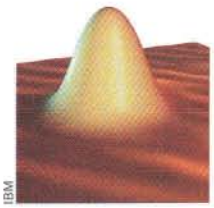
In Brief, *continued from page 16*

Ungulates Uncovered

This past spring paleontologists offered proof that ungulates—hoofed vertebrates related to deer—lived before the Cretaceous-Tertiary extinction, which wiped out the dinosaurs 65 million years ago. Eighty-five-million-year-old jaws and teeth, clearly from an ungulate ancestor, surfaced in the former Soviet Union.

Resistance through an Atom

Physicists at IBM have recently measured the ease with which an electron travels through "wires" made from single or double xenon atoms. To do so, they fixed the atoms to the tip of a scanning tunneling microscope over a nickel surface. The results showed that conductivity at this scale can depend heavily on the quantum state of an individual atom. The electrical resistance for one xenon atom (*photograph*) was 100,000 ohms. The value shot up to 10 million ohms for two xenon atoms.



IBM

FOLLOW-UP

Imanishi-Kari Cleared

This summer an appeals panel from the Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) found Tufts University professor Thereza Imanishi-Kari not guilty of scientific misconduct. The immunologist made headlines two years ago, when DHHS's Office of Research Integrity charged her with fabricating data for a paper she co-wrote with Nobelist David Baltimore in 1986. The new ruling derails the proposed punishment: a 10-year freeze on federal funding for Imanishi-Kari. (See January 1992, page 16.)

Sweeter Dreams

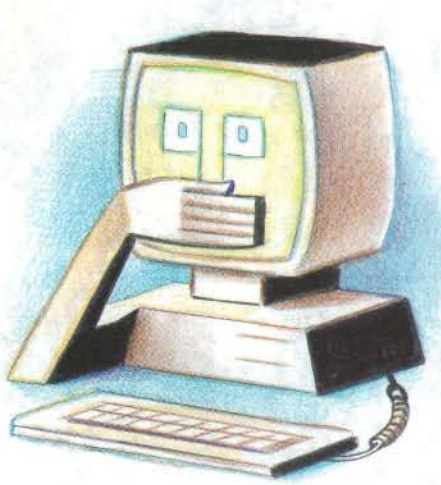
Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS) has become 30 percent less prevalent since 1994, reports D. Duane Alexander, director of the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development. He attributes the decline to the "Back to Sleep" campaign fostered by the National Institutes of Health, which began in 1994 and teaches parents and sitters that babies should sleep on their backs or sides, not on their stomachs. (See August 1995, page 16.)

—*Kristin Leutwyler*

CYBER VIEW

The Internet Is Learning to Censor Itself

Of all the arguments over the future of the Internet, censorship has sparked the most heated debates. Libertarians see any attempt to censor the Net as the death of freedom of speech. Traditionalists see its continued liberties as the death of moral standards. Mercifully, some of the very technologies that have created this argument now are paving the way for a compromise. The Platform for Internet Content Selection (PICS) promises to create a sort of do-it-yourself censorship that will allow everybody both freedom to speak and freedom not to listen. It could also make the Net a richer and more interesting place.



DAVID SUTER

PICS is being developed by the World Wide Web Consortium, a group based at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Led by Web inventor Tim Berners-Lee, PICS resolves the moral contradiction that lies at the heart of existing schemes to regulate the Net. Because they inherit the assumptions of broadcasting regulation, content-regulation schemes try to impose uniform moral standards on a world in which tolerance for diversity is highly valued. One of the most offensive aspects of the Communications Decency Act—thankfully declared unconstitutional in June by a court in Philadelphia—is that it would have forced federal courts to decide for all Americans what is and is not "offensive." PICS allows each individual American to decide.

Instead of creating a single rating system that applies the same set of values to all Web content, PICS encourages the creation of a variety of rating systems. Web sites can either rate themselves, or they can ask to be rated by a (supposedly objective) agency. Rating systems can apply any desired criteria—from the amount of sex and violence a site contains to individual reviewers' judgments on how entertaining it is. PICS is in effect a system for disseminating reputations throughout the global village.

PICS works because everything on the Internet is connected to everything else. Each PICS rating has two parts: the rating itself and the URL, or address, of the rating agency. The actual text of the ratings is abbreviated and hard to decipher. But when a surfer (or, to be specific, the browser) wants to know how a site measures up under some particular rating system, he or she simply contacts the rating agency, sends in the abbreviated rating and receives in return as much explanation as desired.

Ratings can either be distributed with the document being requested or separately, by contacting the rating service directly to see if it has a rating at the URL of the document in question. This second option means that third parties can rate those sites that might not necessarily welcome their judgments; the Simon Wiesenthal Center, for example, could rate Nazi sites on the viciousness of their anti-Semitism, even though the sites themselves are highly unlikely to include the center's rating in their Web home pages.

Whatever the source of the ratings, they enable surfers to anticipate what they are likely to see. By building the ability to read ratings directly into the browser, parents can automatically restrict their children's access only to sites rated safe. Similarly, software "firewalls" can block a whole network's access to some sites; for example, a business could limit employees' access to recreational sites during working hours.

Both Netscape and Microsoft have promised to build PICS capabilities into forthcoming browsers. CompuServe has said it will put PICS ratings on all its content as it moves onto the Web. Britain's Internet service providers agreed to adopt PICS ratings voluntarily, although their willingness was in part motivated by threatened regulation. France's new regulations require Internet service providers to make the ratings available to surfers. Although the regulations do not specify a particular rating scheme, most French service providers are expected to adopt a method that is compliant with PICS.

PICS already offers a choice of rating schemes. The recreational Software Advisory Council, the rating system adopted by CompuServe, has a self-rating scheme based on four simple categories: violence, nudity, sex and language. Each Web site is asked to rate itself in each category on a scale from one (damage to objects, revealing attire and kissing) to four (torture, explicit sex and filthy speech). SafeSurf offers a rating system involving more categories of information—from homosexuality to drug use and gambling. Because the categories and criteria are more complicated, the scheme does not allow sites to rate themselves directly; instead SafeSurf asks managers of each site to fill out a form from which a rating is automatically created.

Accept the underlying principle of PICS—that there is no need for government to choose what citizens can experience when they can choose for themselves—and the role of government in content regulation changes completely. Instead of trying to thrash out a single value system for multicultural societies, government's first job is simply to ensure that sites do not misrepresent themselves under whatever rating systems they choose to advertise.

But the potential of PICS is far greater than simply managing smut. It can fortify the Web with a vast, interlinked system of reference, recommendation and reputation. It creates automatic, electronic analogs to the bonds of judgment and trust that make sense of the information people use day to day. It allows one person to vouch for the trustworthiness of another's information, to recommend a funny piece of entertainment or to warn surfers away from a boring or offensive site. It adds to the fullness of discussion on the Net. Everybody can speak, and everybody can also pass judgment. —*John Browning in London*

MARINE BIOLOGY

ALARMING NETS

Fishermen try acoustics to protect porpoises

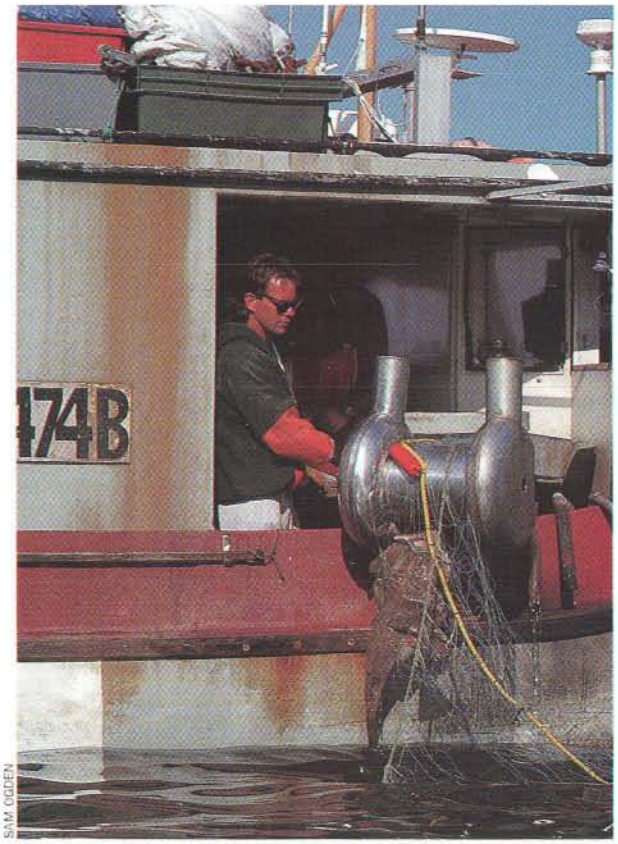
In search of a fish dinner, harbor porpoises range quite close to shore. Unfortunately, that behavior can send the creatures into the nets of commercial fishermen plying the same waters. In New England the death of harbor porpoises in nets set along the bottom seemed so rampant that wildlife conservationists petitioned the federal government in 1991 to designate the local population as officially threatened. That move would have severely restricted fishing in the region. But instead of challenging the porpoise advocates in court, some fishermen joined with scientists, engineers and environmentalists to find a technical solution. That effort resulted in an underwater acoustic alarm—a "pinger"—that keeps the porpoises from entangling themselves. Yet, despite tests that have shown the efficacy of these devices, many scientists have remained frustratingly slow in blessing the pingers.

The problem stemmed from a general belief among marine biologists that acoustic deterrents were ineffective. An influential review article published in 1991 in *Marine Mammal Science* stated flatly that "studies undertaken to determine whether sound emitters reduce entanglement have been inconclusive, and have so far failed to demonstrate better than a marginal reduction in entanglement rates, if any."

But some fishermen, scientists and environmentalists felt otherwise. "We had been blinded by the literature that said it didn't work," admits Scott D. Kraus, a marine biologist at the New England Aquarium in Boston. Nevertheless, some members of an informal "harbor porpoise working group" decided to approach Jon Lien, a professor of animal behavior at Memorial University in St. Johns, Newfoundland, who had been using acoustic devices to prevent whales from colliding with fishing gear.

With their first attempt at using Lien's pingers in 1992, the fishermen saw a remarkable reduction in the entanglement of harbor porpoises. Whereas a set of control nets without pingers snared 10 harbor porpoises, the nets set with Lien's sounders entangled none. Yet naysayers complained that the fishermen had placed the pingers in areas they knew would be free from porpoise traffic.

So with $9,000 from the U.S. National Marine Fisheries Service, Lien and the New England fishermen mounted a more elaborate experiment in 1993, using new pingers that they constructed on the spot. "We went to Radio Shack and got a sound generator and went to a hardware store and got some plumbing," Lien recalls. They also deployed their test nets in an arrangement that kept the control nets in proximity, avoiding the possibility of experimenter bias. Again the results were positive. Nets fully outfitted with pingers trapped only one harbor porpoise; those without caught 32 of the animals.



SAM OGDEN

UNDERWATER SOUNDERS (orange device) *keep porpoises from nets.*

But critics once more found reason to question the experiment, noting that some of the harbor porpoises had been trapped close to the juncture between pinger-studded and pinger-free sides. A panel of experts convened by the National Marine Fisheries Service determined that the fishermen's experiments, though promising, were inconclusive.

Only a large-scale, statistically controlled experiment would produce a definitive answer. So the porpoise working group appealed to Congress for the necessary funds. Their lobbying efforts included a refreshing twist: the fishermen in the group argued on behalf of the endangered porpoises, and the environmentalists present argued on behalf of the endangered New England fishermen. That tactic startled Congress into approving a large-scale study.

During their 1994 trials, the group monitored more than 10,000 fishing nets, each as long as a football field. To rule out any possibility of bias, all the nets were fitted with pingers, but only half of them had sounders that were operative. Special switches powered up the devices after they were cast overboard, and thus the participants could not distinguish live pingers from duds while deploying the nets.

As the experiment progressed, it soon became clear that the pingers were deterring porpoises. In the final count, 25 porpoises became entangled in the control nets, whereas only two suffered in an equal number of nets outfitted with working pingers—and one of those animals was most likely deaf. Moreover, the acoustic beacons did not scare away the desired fish.

The New England fishermen are now even more confident that the harbor porpoise problem can be solved with pingers. Some scientists and conservationists, however, remain cautious. David N. Wiley, a senior scientist with the International Wildlife Coalition in Massachusetts, for example, warns that the pingers "have not been shown to be without

detrimental 'side effects'...." Other scientists question how effective the pingers will prove to be during different seasons and over long periods.

But like doctors who have observed positive results in clinical trials, the fishermen are reluctant to continue running tests. And they wonder why some scientists and government regulators have been so slow to pay attention to pingers—something even porpoises seem able to do. *—David Schneider*

BIOTECHNOLOGY

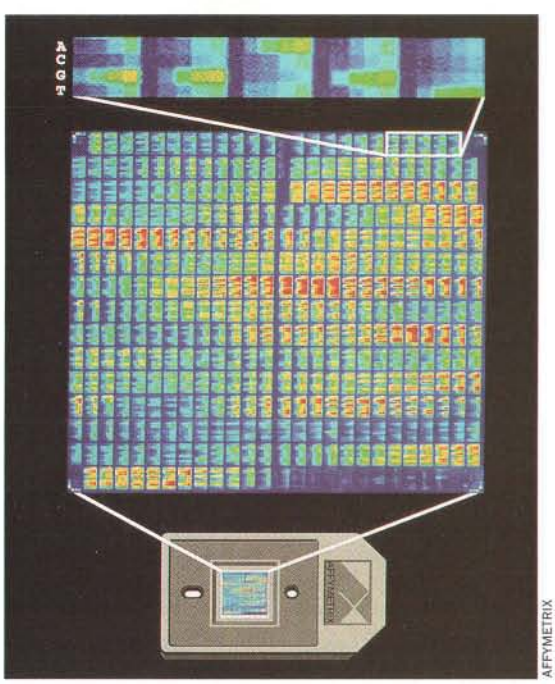
NEW CHIP OFF THE OLD BLOCK

Can DNA microprobes do for genetics what microprocessors did for computing?

In 1971 a small company in Santa Clara, Calif., perfected a way to shrink 2,300 transistors onto a single integrated circuit and began selling the first microcomputer chips. Through mass production, Intel made microprocessors affordable, launching the personal-computer industry and a multibillion-dollar business. Now, 25 years later, a small start-up just a few miles from Intel headquarters has adapted the same production methods to fabricate microchips that process DNA rather than electrons. Affymetrix claims its GeneChip systems can boost the field of genetic medicine the same way desktop computers helped business: by gathering information much more quickly and cheaply than previously possible.

Held in the hand, a GeneChip looks unremarkable. A simple plastic case small enough to conceal in one's palm holds a glass slide the size of a small postage stamp, on the inside of which is a dull, dark coating. But given a drop of blood and a few hours, a GeneChip system can reveal not only whether a subject has HIV but also whether the particular strain of the AIDS-causing virus in his or her body carries mutations that make it resistant to certain drugs. With a different chip (each costs only a few dollars to mass-produce), the same system can screen for any of the 450 or so mutations linked to cystic fibrosis. In contrast, standard genetic testing would take 12 hours to screen an HIV sample and perhaps a week to search for all the genetic risk factors for cystic fibrosis.

"We're approaching the postgenome world where we know the sequence of all human genes," says David J. Lockhart, senior scientist at Affymetrix. "The chip allows us to quickly lay down probes that scan thousands of these sequences at once and reveal overnight not only whether they contain mutations but also how strongly the genes are expressed. In essence, it reduces hundreds of experiments down to one."



GENE CHIP FOR HIV
(bottom) *contains thousands of unique DNA probes* (center), *each of which glows* (top) *when a matching sequence is detected.*

Such economies of scale are possible because of Affymetrix's clever adaptation of photolithography, the technique routinely used to make semiconductors. Instead of projecting ultraviolet light through a series of masks to etch multilayered circuits into silicon, Affymetrix's machines use the masks to build chainlike DNA sequences that rise from a glass wafer. Each mask limits where new links are attached, so adjacent chains can contain completely different combinations of the four DNA building blocks, called bases. In 32 steps, the automated process can create on a single chip up to 65,536 unique probes, each eight bases long. "We expect [the number of probes] to rise to 400,000 within a year or two," says Robert J. Lipshutz, the company's director of advanced technology. "We have actually produced a prototype chip containing a million probes."

Reading the results of thousands of micron-size experiments requires a little preparation. First the unknown DNA to be tested is extracted from blood or tissue cells, unzipped from its double helix into separate strands, then chopped into fragments. Fluorescent molecules are attached to the fragments before they are pumped underneath the glass slide in the chip, where they flow over the probes, sticking to any that mimic the opposite strand from which they were separated. Fragments that find no mate are simply washed away.

Once the bonding is completed, a technician moves the chip into a reader. There a laser scans the slide row by row, exciting the fluorescent molecules. Peering through a high-powered microscope, a computer records the pattern of bright and dim blocks, indicating which probes found matching DNA in the test sample. Comparing the pattern to a map of known probe locations, the system can reconstruct the unknown genetic sequence (*photograph at left*).

In April, Affymetrix began selling the GeneChip system with its first commercial chip, a test for AIDS research that can identify any of the mutations within HIV associated with its drug resistance. "We don't know enough yet about the genetic evolution of HIV to use this for clinical decisions," says Thomas R. Gingeras, the firm's director of molecular biology. "But the test is helping us to acquire that knowledge quickly." Several other chips are being developed as well, including one that will be able to screen a gene called *p53* for more than 400 known mutations that are closely associated with many types of cancer.

Designing a chip for each new test does require time and skill—although it is significantly easier than designing a new microprocessor. But once the design is finished, production is almost completely automated. And because the chips vary only in the arrangement and length of the probes, all tests can be performed and read using the same equipment.

Officials at Affymetrix, aware of the controversy over genetic screening, emphasize that they will be selling their

systems to research groups, not to hospitals and clinical laboratories. But a prospectus the company issued before its first public stock offering in June stated that "the company's longer-term strategy is to seek regulatory approval for and to commercialize GeneChip systems as diagnostic tests for clinical use." Clearly, Affymetrix is betting that the GeneChip will do for its bottom line what the microprocessor did for Intel's.

—W. Wayt Gibbs in San Francisco

CRYPTOGRAPHY

FOR YOUR EYES ONLY?

"Strong crypto" puts federal controls under pressure

Rendering electronic messages into unbreakable code is—depending on your point of view—either the ultimate guarantee of privacy from snoopers or the stock-in-trade of Internet-savvy terrorists, drug smugglers and other villains. As the computer industry has sought to exploit the growing global market for encryption, the U.S. government has been building a wall to stem the tide, limiting exports of programs or devices that encrypt well enough to stymie code breakers at the National Security Agency.

The dam is starting to crack. The latest embarrassment for federal policy is RSA Data Security, the Redwood City, Calif., firm that holds patents on the widely used "public key" encryption technique. RSA's recently established Japanese subsidiary, Nihon RSA, has licensed rights for RSA encryption to the Japanese communications giant NTT. The NTT chip offers far more powerful encryption than any chip that can be exported from the U.S. Exportable RSA products are in general limited to 512-bit keys, which are crackable by an expert with a powerful computer. The new NTT chip, which has a 1,024-bit key and could be used with even longer keys, is in the uncrackable realm.

D. James Bidzos, RSA's president, predicts healthy sales for the NTT chip, which the firm is authorized to sell in the U.S. as well as other countries. He expects to see it in high-speed Internet links as well as in private networks such as those maintained by banks. Smaller versions, Bidzos foresees, will be incorporated in "smart" cards that 21st-century shoppers and travelers will use.

Nihon RSA is not the only overseas source of RSA encryption technology, Bidzos points out: manufacturers in Germany and the Netherlands are making equivalent devices. But Bidzos says the future for cryptography looks particularly bright in Japan, where encryption is aggressively promoted by MITI, the national technology ministry. The increasing availability of "strong crypto," including cryptographic software available on the Internet, means "the pressure is starting to build" to change U.S. export controls, Bidzos argues.

U.S. chipmakers could manufacture devices like the new NTT chip for the domestic market, but export controls limit sales to overseas markets. (There are exceptions to the 512-bit key limit for specific areas, such as finance.) Bidzos and the U.S. Association for Computing Machinery both support legislation sponsored by Senator Conrad Burns of Montana that would roll back current restrictions. A recent study by the National Research Council also recommended that export controls be progressively relaxed, though not eliminated.

The administration appears to be feeling the heat. One high-ranking official says some relaxation of current export regulations—including expansion of both approvable destinations and exempted applications—could occur as soon as this fall. But in exchange, he adds, industry must agree to pilot-scale trials of a scheme that would allow the government to gain access to keys for law-enforcement purposes.

In 1994 the administration failed to win support for a proposal advocating that companies use a special "clipper chip" for their cryptography and deposit keys with federal officials. The latest scheme involves persuading companies to deposit keys for their encryption systems with a "trusted" nongovernmental organization. This party would promise to turn keys over to federal investigators on receipt of a court order.

Civil libertarians are not much happier with the present proposal than they were with the clipper-chip idea. But according to the administration official, staff-level representatives from the nations of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development recently backed the principle of surrendering keys to third parties. Will industry trade users' privacy for larger markets?

—Tim Beardsley in Washington, D.C.

BIOTECHNOLOGY

ARTIFICIAL BLOOD QUICKENS

Several short-term substitutes approach final clinical trials

Beneath the surgeon's scalpel, life's fluid seeps into pools to be sopped up by sponges and vacuumed into suction pumps. Some of the effluence can be cleaned and returned to the body, but much is lost. Every year roughly 100 million units of donated blood trickle into patients. Recently a small but growing number of pioneers have allowed something other than human red blood cells to fill the bags hanging above their hospital gurneys. Some patients have accepted into their veins protein solutions extracted from cow's blood or fermented from genetically engineered bacteria. In others, a Teflon-like solution has displaced, for a few hours, up to 40 percent of the blood from their vessels.

This year at least six companies in the U.S. are testing so-called blood substitutes in human surgeries. "Substitutes" is perhaps too ambitious a label for these solutions, because none can replace the clotting and infection-fighting abilities of whole blood. But all six liquids can, like red blood cells, ferry oxygen from the lungs to the rest of the body and carry carbon dioxide back. Two of the products are on track to enter final, phase III clinical trials in hundreds of patients next year.

The rush to produce alternatives to blood may seem oddly timed. Tighter screening prompted by the emergence of HIV has made the blood supply safer than it has ever been. Yet donation levels have never recovered from the initial AIDS scare, and blood banks face periodic regional shortages.

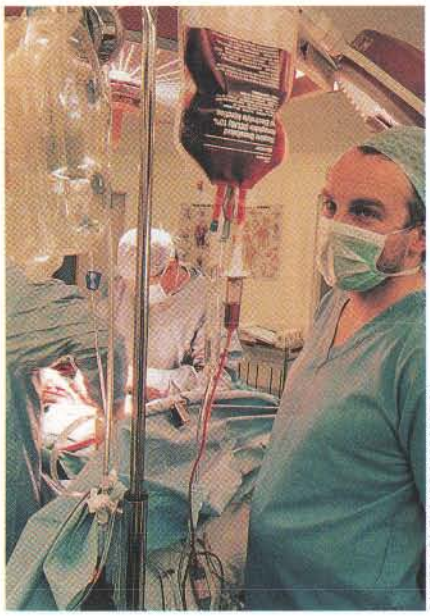
"The main benefit of these products will be to reduce the amount of donated blood a patient receives. That can minimize the risk of infection [because the chemicals can be sterilized more rigorously than blood] and will preserve blood for cases where it is really needed," says Steven A. Gould, president of Northfield Laboratories in Evanston, Ill.

Synthetic substitutes should have other advantages as well. All will stay fresh for six months or more; red blood cells go bad within six weeks. And the artifi-

cial compounds bear none of the proteins and sugars that coat blood cells and separate them into eight distinct types. Theoretically, substitutes could be pumped into anyone, without fear of provoking a serious allergic reaction.

Of course, doctors had the same hope back in 1868, when they first extracted hemoglobin, the oxygen-bearing protein in red blood cells. Hemoglobin failed as a blood replacement because it works only when intact and when assisted by a cofactor found in red blood cells. Stripped from its protective cell and its molecular teammate, hemoglobin is quickly snipped in two by enzymes, and the fragments can poison the kidneys.

Biotechnology firms are now trying to solve the problems of raw hemoglobin in two ways: avoiding it and altering it. Oily chemicals called perfluorocarbons can mimic hemoglobin's actions without its side effects. Alliance Pharmaceutical of San Diego has begun small-scale, phase II trials to demonstrate the effectiveness of one such candidate, called Oxygent. Volunteers are drained of a few pints of blood, then given a partial transfusion of the substance—a by-product of Teflon manufacture—during surgery. Their own blood is returned at the end of the operation. Alliance hopes to announce later this year whether the procedure reduced patients' need for donated blood; final trials could begin in early 1997.



BAXTER HEALTHCARE CORPORATION

SUBSTITUTE FOR BLOOD is being tested in surgeries in several hospitals.

Other companies are trying to modify hemoglobin so that it works without its cofactor and resists the body's attempt to split it into toxic halves. That's a tall order, but a decade of research has brought several groups tantalizingly close to success.

Baxter Healthcare in Deerfield, Ill., has completed five phase II trials of Hem-Assist, which it makes by extracting hemoglobin from outdated human blood and chemically binding its pieces together with a derivative of aspirin. In June, Baxter became the first company to win approval in the U.S. for a phase III trial of its blood substitute. The firm started a similar trial last year in Europe and has already begun building a factory to produce the drug in Switzerland.

Baxter won't be the only firm making modified hemoglobin. Northfield presented dramatic, though statistically shaky, results in May for its PolyHeme preparation. Ten trauma patients given, on average, 4.6 units of PolyHeme during surgery required, on average, 4.6 fewer units of donated blood. "Even more important," Gould adds, "we've replaced up to 60 percent of the blood volume in patients with PolyHeme, and we have yet to see any adverse affects from the product." Northfield asked the Food and Drug Administration in June to approve a phase III trial to begin later this year.

Thomas M. S. Chang of McGill University, who has worked on blood substitutes since 1957, expects to see "several substitutes, some better for certain situations than others." Their prices may compete as well, so some biotechnology companies are pursuing cheaper sources of hemoglobin. BioPure in Cambridge, Mass., starts with cow's blood. Somatogen in Boulder, Colo., ferments its product, now in phase II trials, out of a genetically modified strain of *E. coli* bacteria.

If the thought of having genetically engineered goo injected into your arteries makes your skin crawl, fret not: the substitutes will simply be options available—at premium prices—for those who cannot use their own previously stockpiled blood and do not trust others'. Unfortunately, prospects are slim that substitutes cheaper than blood will be able to address perhaps the greatest need for them: saving lives on battlefields and in hospitals in the more remote corners of the world where blood shortages are chronic.

—W. Wayt Gibbs in San Francisco

COMPUTING

Recently Netted....

Privacy While You're Connected. If you prefer privacy when you telephone from your desktop or notebook computer, consider PGPfone, a software package that permits a secure telephone conversation, modem to modem or on the Internet. The package, which combines cryptographic protocols and speech compression, is the creation of Phil Zimmermann, who is also the author of the popular program Pretty Good Privacy (PGP). (PGP—its name is a linguistic cousin of Ralph's Pretty Good Grocery, found on Garrison Keillor's radio show "A Prairie Home Companion"—uses encryption to protect the security of e-mail and of files stored on a computer.) Unlike steganography, which might conceal a telephone conversation as background noise in a digitized sound file, PGPfone makes no secret that the message is encoded. "We encrypt the data string," Zimmermann says. "Anyone can tell there is traffic. They just can't decrypt it." PGPfone, like PGP, is distributed on the Web at http://web.mit.edu/network/pgpfone

These Key Words for Hire. The Internet is becoming so commercialized that even key words—the entries typed in on search engines—are up for sale. IBM, for instance, has bought the words "Lou Gerstner" on the search service Excite. Type "Lou Gerstner," and Excite may respond not only with citations but with a sparkling blue advertisement for IBM (Gerstner is the head of IBM). Another search service, Lycos, has gone a step further: it sells key words to competitors. Type "Windows 95," and you might see a vibrant ad for IBM's rival operating system, OS/2.

Sales of key words are the latest attempts by search services to generate revenue. Excite, InfoSeek, Lycos, Magellan and Yahoo each paid $5 million to Netscape to be featured choices, boosting advertising sales for the search companies. In a recent quarter, Lycos sold more than $1 million in advertisements, according to Lycos vice president Bill Townsend. The company rotates the 120 million ads it shows a month so that 10 different ads appear per second.

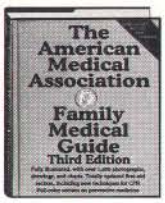
—Anne Eisenberg (aeisenberg@duke.poly.edu)

Now the best English-language books can be delivered right to your door!

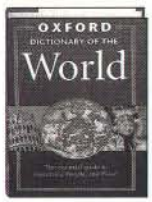
Choose any 3 books for the price of 1!

You simply agree to buy 2 more books within your first year of membership.

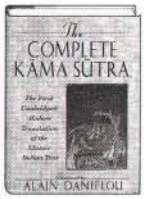
BOMC Book-of-the-Month Club *Since 1926*



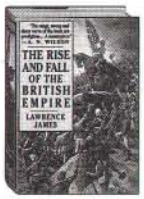
The best-selling family health guide is completely revised and updated; lavishly illustrated and totally user-friendly.
67-7678 Price $39.50



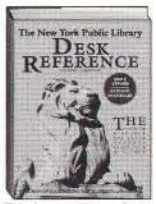
From Aabenraa to Zwolle—over 15,000 geographical entries, featuring 16 pages of color maps.
35-1399 Price $41.95



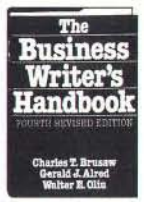
The world's oldest, most widely read guide to the pleasures and techniques of sex, in a new, unabridged translation.
87-4193 Price $31.95



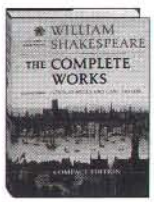
In stirring detail, the exploits of Britain's conquerors, statesmen, poets and scoundrels.
25-0974 Price $37



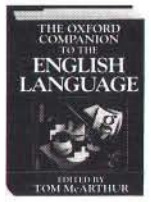
This best-selling reference has 26 subject categories from "Words" to "First Aid," including a variety of information.
52-5957 Price $42



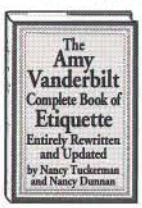
Learn to write clean, clear memos, reports and letters with this thoroughly updated guide.
12-4009 Price $26.95



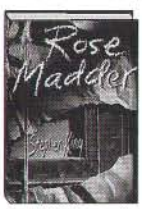
All of the plays and poems as revised by the Bard, with modernized spelling and punctuation.
42-0729 Price $31.95



If you love the English language—in all of its idiosyncratic glory—this definitive reference is indispensable.
50-8852 Price $47

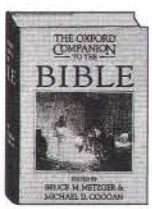


This classic guide to manners has been rewritten for life in the '90s and covers every aspect of modern life.
24-8053 Price $34

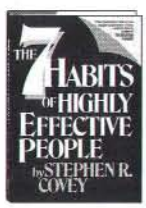


An abused, young housewife escapes from her biting, gut-punching, husband. Or does she?
22-6395 Price $27.95

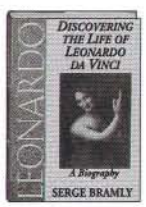
Kaufman explains the idea that highly complex, seemingly random systems settle into ordinary states.
55-1547 Price $27



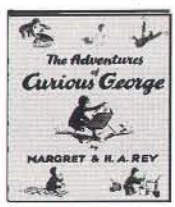
Offers more than 700 entries on every aspect of the Bible, from brief identifications to extensive interpretive essays.
72-5893 Price $47



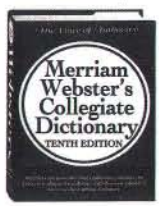
A seven-step approach to realizing success in professional endeavors and personal relationships.
90-0906 Price $21.95



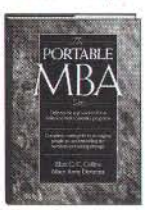
This biography takes us beyond the list of achievements that have long defined the elusive genius.
60-8812 Price $37



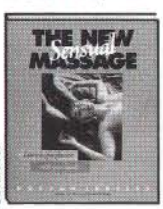
This exclusive one-volume edition features the most lovable, huggable and curious monkey in the world.
42-8285 Price $28.95



Hundreds of new words and drawings in this latest edition of the United States' most popular dictionary.
32-4028 Price $23.95

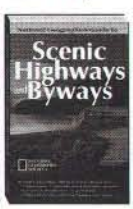


Learn essential MBA concepts from leading faculty members at Stanford, Harvard, Wharton, Columbia and M.I.T.
70-3907 Price $29.95



Softcover

A master masseur explains new techniques for achieving pure relaxation and total bliss; 150 photos.
21-4595 Price $19

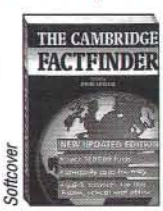


Softcover

National Geographic magazine road tests 200 scenic drives in all 50 states; color photos, maps and more.
45-0286 Price $23.95

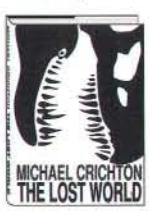
Softcover

How to set up *Windows '95* or upgrade your system, customize your desktop, work in a network and more.
85-0683 Price $23.95

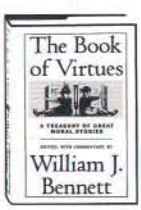


Softcover

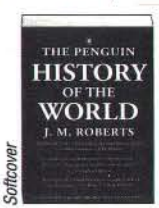
This handy reference contains more than 180,000 facts—on the universe, religion, science and more.
14-8421 Price $16.95



The spellbinding sequel to *Jurassic Park* continues the story of famed scientist Ian Malcolm.
25-0612 Price $27

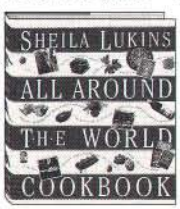


A charming treasury of stories and poems that teaches children lessons in character.
77-4192 Price $32

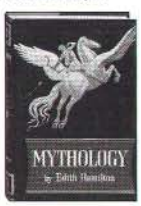


Softcover

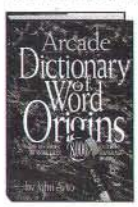
Fully revised third edition of this acclaimed one-volume work of scholarship.
55-2727 Price $18.95



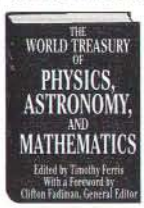
Fusing international styles, culinary genius Sheila Lukins traveled to 33 countries to create a new cuisine.
87-4796 Price $29.95



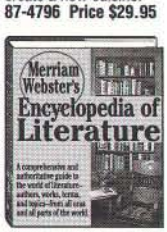
A renowned scholar rewrites the great legends from original Greek, Roman and Norse sources.
24-0161 Price $18.95



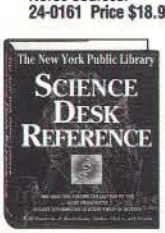
This engaging book presents the origins, development and often surprising connections among 8,000 words.
20-8150 Price $31.95



The authors include Albert Einstein and Stephen W. Hawking. The topics range far afield.
70-5529 Price $36.95



This comprehensive new reference offers a window on the world's literature.
94-8027 Price $41.95



This best-selling reference includes updated information on people, events, facts and dates.
25-1825 Price $41.95

MEMBER INFORMATION

You will receive the *Book-of-the-Month Club News* 17 times a year, with 150 books in each issue. You are never obligated to buy from any particular issue. We accept Visa®, American Express®, Mastercard® or checks drawn on a US bank denominated in US Dollars. Shipping and handling: US $5.50 for the 1st book, US $3.50 each additional book. Books are shipped by surface mail. Air-speeded delivery is available for an extra charge. If you are not satisfied with your introductory books, return them within 15 days and you will owe nothing.

Fax this page to U.S.A. (1)717-795-1670

or mail to Book-of-the-Month Club, Inc., Camp Hill, PA 17012-0001, U.S.A.

Book-of-the-Month Club, Inc., Camp Hill, PA 17012-0001, U.S.A.

YES. Please start my charter membership in Book-of-the-Month Club and send me the 3 books I've indicated at the right. Bill me U.S. $17, plus $5.50 for shipping and handling for a total of $22.50. I agree to buy 2 more books in the next year, but have no further obligation to buy beyond that. A shipping and handling charge is added to each shipment. 6-W4

Write the 6-digit item numbers of your 3 book choices in the boxes below.

1. ☐☐-☐☐☐☐
2. ☐☐-☐☐☐☐
3. ☐☐-☐☐☐☐

Date_____

1. Signature_____
Customer is responsible for any local taxes or duties incurred.

IAY18-9

Name_____

Address_____

City_____ **Postal Code**_____ **Country**_____

I understand that I am entitled to revoke my BOMC membership by returning the 3 books of the introductory offer within 15 days after receipt. Or, I may revoke my membership but keep the 3 books for $17, plus $5.50 shipping and handling for a total of $22.50, if I contact you within 15 days of receiving the introductory books.

2. Signature_____

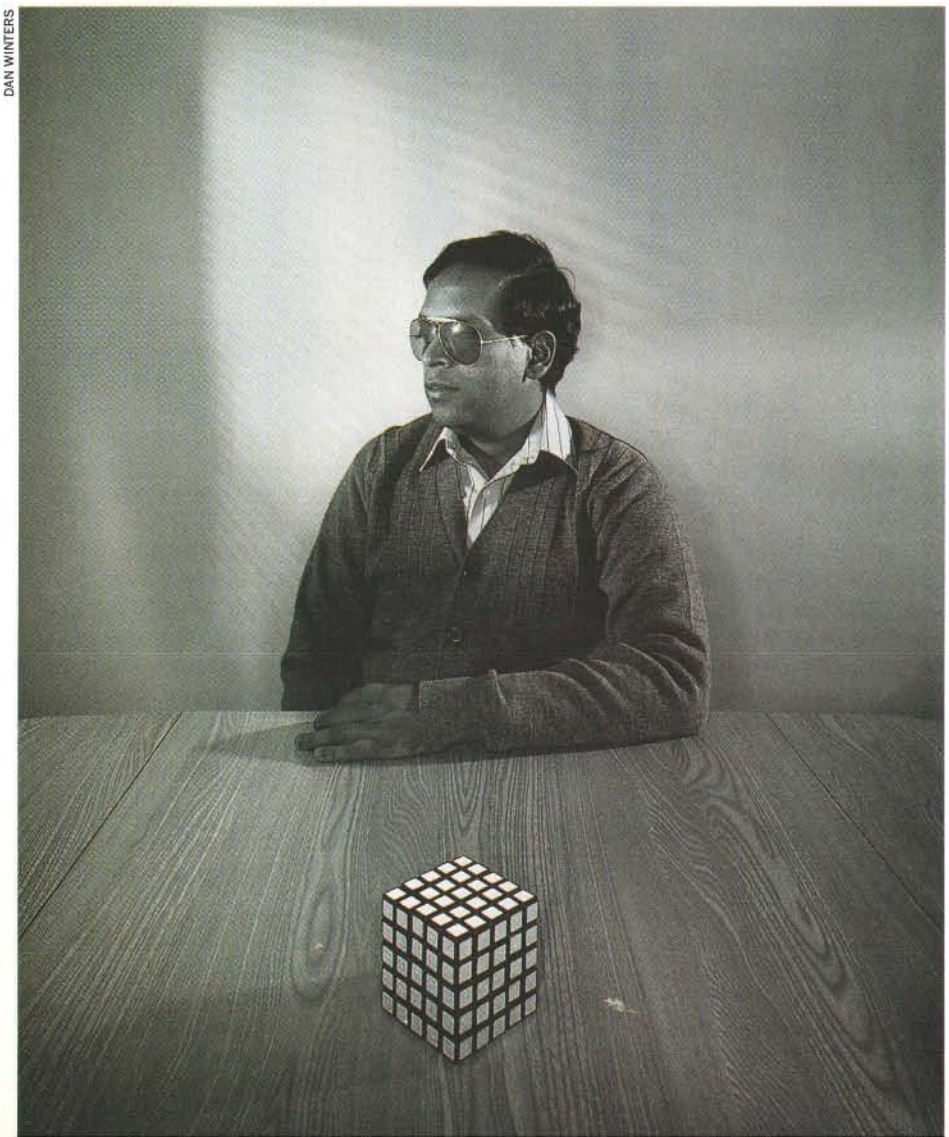
All orders subject to approval. Future prices subject to change. Printed in U.S.A.

PROFILE: T. V. RAMAN

Envisioning Speech

T. V. Raman wants to show me what he has been building on the nights and weekends when he is not working as a senior computer scientist at Adobe Systems. So I have come down to his apartment in Mountain View, Calif., to watch him play. As we sit in his spartan living room, decorated only with a NordicTrack, a partially solved five-by-five Rubik's Cube (adorned with Braille stickers) and a single framed poster of wolves, Raman powers up his laptop. The device comes to life with what sounds to my ears to be a string of alien gibberish, like a compact disc on fast forward. Raman smiles: to the blind engineer, that is the sweet sound of connection. "I've gotten used to the thing talking very, very fast. It keeps me efficient," he chuckles, before slowing the speech rate down by about half so that I can follow along. Gibberish turns to stilted, robotic English—a voice familiar to me as that of Stephen W. Hawking, the renowned physicist, who uses the same type of synthesizer.

Feeling around the cushions of his couch for a telephone cord, Raman plugs in his modem and dials up his workstation at Adobe. As his hands fly over the keys, the movements of this 31-year-old immigrant from Pune, India, remind me of a virtuoso pianist. Each stroke elicits a distinct sound as his synthesizer intones a cacophony of letters, words, chords. Cowbells jangle when the computer has a question or a suggestion for him. As his World Wide Web browser loads, Bach's toccata and fugue plays. Within a minute or two, Raman is scanning the latest headlines from CNN and checking out hot stocks at the *Wall Street Journal*. His expression betrays a giddy adoration for this technology.



DAN WINTERS

Raman can be forgiven a touch of nerdy technophilia, for without his work, it would be tedious if not impossible for the blind to do these things with a computer. Software he designed enables the sightless to read mathematical and scientific papers, to surf the Internet and to write their own programs almost as efficiently as the sighted do. Raman's ideas may soon find their place in the mainstream as well: his research for Digital Equipment and Adobe is wending its way toward the marketplace.

The path from Pune to Mountain View could not have been easy for Raman, but he waves off suggestions that he has overcome any great handicap. Glaucoma dimmed Raman's sight gradually during childhood. "By age 14, I couldn't see anything," he states without any hint of bitterness. The baby in a middle-class family of six, Raman—whose initials stand, respectively, for his hometown and his father's name—showed an early affinity for mathematics. He majored in the subject at the University of Pune, then applied for a master's program in math and computer science at the Indian Institute of Technology—the first blind student ever to do so. "I convinced the dean to allow students to satisfy their national social service requirement by reading the screen for me," Raman recounts. "I had to line up 13 students each semester."

At Cornell University, where he did his doctoral work, Raman got his first speech synthesizer, along with the most advanced screen-reading software then available: it simply spoke the text on display. "Imagine working with a one-line, 40-character display, instead of a nice, big 60-line monitor. That's what you're fighting against when you use a speech interface," Raman says animatedly. Worse than the tedium, the device rendered many of the mathematics texts Raman needed to read unintelligible. "Most of these papers were written in LaTeX [a notation used to typeset texts containing equations or symbols]. The program would come upon the code for an equation and start saying, 'Backslash backslash x caret something'—it was ridiculous," he laughs. "So I decided to write a nice weekend hack that would read LaTeX to me sensibly."

Mukkai S. Krishnamoorthy, a computer science professor at Rensselaer Poly-

technic Institute, was taking his sabbatical at Cornell at the time. "Raman was working on a very ambitious thesis topic," he recalls. "He wanted to design a robotic guide dog that could navigate using the Global Positioning System. But it was going slowly, so I suggested he focus instead on improving computers' reading abilities."

Raman followed that advice as well as a clever approach suggested by David Gries: he constructed a high-level programming language that can control the way certain phrases and mathematical expressions are spoken by the synthesizer. Then he added a system that can take a file formatted in LaTeX, analyze it and render it aurally. Raman designed his program to translate the visual structure and style of the text into intuitive audio cues. Italicized passages can be read louder than normal. Chapter headings might be read by a baritone voice, footnotes by a soprano. A short tone could precede each item in a bulleted list.

Raman named the system AsTeR, ostensibly for "Audio System for Technical Readings," but actually after the frisky black Labrador that has guided him for six years. AsTeR's power lies in its ability to browse quickly through complicated material. Whereas one can skim through a book, find a page of interest and take in tables, fractions and integrals at a glance, audio is frustratingly linear. Yet it need not be one-dimensional. "If you have CNN on in the other room, you can always tell when the financial news is on—they play a distinctive noise in the background," Raman points out. AsTeR uses similar techniques to help listeners keep track of where they are. It also allows the hearer to interrupt its monologue and skip to another section.

Complex mathematical expressions can sound ambiguous or incomprehensibly long even when read aloud by experts. AsTeR relies on aural tricks to do the job. To speak

$$\int_{1}^{\infty} e^{x^{2-x-1}} dx$$

the program uses successively higher-pitched voices, rather than verbose descriptions, to indicate the nested exponentials. When reading tables or matrices, it can pan the sound left and right to convey the position of each value. Most important, it can create all its audio cues from unembellished LaTeX documents written by authors who have never heard of AsTeR, and readers can customize AsTeR's cues. Fittingly, Recording for the Blind and Dyslexic in Princeton, N.J., used AsTeR to read Raman's thesis onto tape, the organization's first fully synthesized recording.

Although AsTeR helped Raman read and write technical papers, it did nothing to simplify the more pedestrian functions of his computer. The need for a better speech interface became even more pressing when Raman left Cornell to join Digital Equipment's Cambridge Research Lab. "A colleague, Dave Wecker, prodded me to apply the principles of AsTeR to a more general computer interface," Raman recounts. "But the challenge is that even though your program may know what is on the screen, that screen is not a simple paragraph of text but a complicated display with title bars and menu bars and scroll bars and messages popping up and cursors bouncing around. The amount of information is huge.

"I finally figured out that this approach could improve my life a hell of a lot."

"I figured I'd build something quickly on top of Emacs [a text-based UNIX interface] to run on my laptop. After a few days, I had a first version that did almost nothing: it would just read the line beneath the cursor. But then I built an extension for the calendar, and I finally figured out that this approach could improve my life a hell of a lot."

To demonstrate why, Raman grabs his laptop. Aster (the dog) plops her head in my lap, and Raman scratches her back as he fires up the calendar. "Now," he says, moving the cursor to the beginning of a week, "this is how a screen reader interprets the calendar." The voice begins reading the numbers in the row of boxes, "Eight, nine, ten, eleven...." Raman cuts it off, giggling at its inanity. "Useless. A more natural way to convey the same information is like this." Another keystroke, and the computer intones the cursor's position as he has taught it to: "Wednesday, May 1, 1996."

"Now the text of what it said does not appear on the screen," Raman explains. "In fact, the program did not refer to the screen at all." Raman has exploited a way to modify the behavior of programs without changing the programs themselves. "Emacs allows you to 'advise' a function to run extra code after it is finished. So I simply advise the calendar to speak the complete date whenever I reposition the cursor. The great thing is," he says, exploding with enthusiasm, "the guy who wrote the calendar function has no idea I've done this, and when he releases a new version of the software, the speech enhancements will still work. It's a perfect parasite."

Bit by bit, Raman added speaking capabilities to other Emacs programs, such as the tools he uses to write and test software. "A lot of people in the lab, including myself, started using tools that he was evangelizing," Wecker reports. "They were necessary for him, but they were improvements for us, because they allow you to collapse subroutines, even whole programs into outline form." Raman adapted a public-domain browser for the Web to use his interface and distributes Emacspeak free on the Internet.

Meanwhile others are weaving new products from threads of his invention. Krishnamoorthy built a prototype Web service at Rensselaer that can run AsTeR for those who are unable to. "You simply paste the document to be read into a form, then the server processes it and sends you back a file for your speech synthesizer," the professor explains. Unfortunately, the project has been halted for lack of funding.

Since 1994 the Science Accessibility Project, led by John Gardner of Oregon State University, has continued to develop AsTeR. "Raman really pioneered this area of audio formatting," says Gardner, who is also blind. "The [audio-enhanced] Web browser is so much better than anything else I could possibly use. But there is still an awful lot to be done." Gardner's group just released a graphing calculator for the blind; he says the next version will use audio formatting. "If we can develop audio formatting for math and science, we can do it for bloody well anything," Gardner says.

Whether that includes mainstream applications remains to be seen. Raman is not leaving the matter to chance. He is working with Adobe to incorporate audio formatting into its popular portable document format, and he is a frequent speaker at conferences on the future of computer interfaces. On the Internet, he seems omnipresent, adding to his inventions, pushing the boundaries of technology and persuasively arguing for standards that will ensure that the flood of information raises all boats.

—W. Wayt Gibbs in San Francisco

Making Headway against Cancer

A single cure is still elusive, but for people touched by this disease, modern understanding is paying off in better treatments, better prevention and brighter prospects

ALFRED T. KAMAJIAN

by John Rennie and Ricki Rusting

When President Richard M. Nixon signed the National Cancer Act two days before Christmas in 1971, he committed the U.S. to a "war" on cancer. In the 25 years since then, the battle has been waged around the world in laboratories, in hospitals, in our own homes and bodies. All of us are deluged with reports of scientific progress—dispatches from the front, so to speak—recounting incremental discoveries here, larger ones there, and widely hailed "breakthroughs" that translate into practice with frustrating rarity. Warnings about carcinogenic hazards blare one week, then get replaced by new advice that sometimes seems to conflict with what has already been said.

What, in fact, has medical science learned about cancer in the past quarter century? What real weapons do we now have for battling this foe, and what do all the miscellaneous discoveries mean for a worried public?

There is no way to skirt the fact that the combined death rate for all cancers has yet to come down. Indeed, between 1973 and 1992, the latest year for which comprehensive data are available, the cancer death rate rose by 6.3 percent. (This rate is measured as the number of people dying per 100,000 in the population and is "age-adjusted"—a maneuver that corrects for progress against other diseases and the rising longevity of the population.) African-Americans and people older than 65 years have fared particularly poorly; in both groups the overall death rate jumped by about 16 percent.

Epidemiologists project that this year nearly 555,000 U.S. cancer patients will die—up from 331,000 deaths in 1970. Some 40 percent of Americans will eventually be stricken with the disease, and more than one in five will die of it; the trends are broadly similar for most developed nations. Globally, the World Health Organization estimates that cancer kills roughly six million people annually.

But those forbidding statistics should not overshadow the equally real, galvanizing successes. For example, there have been striking reductions in death from some cancers, specifically Hodgkin's disease, Burkitt's lymphoma, testicular cancer, certain cancers of the bones and muscles, and a variety of malignancies that afflict children. The American Cancer Society reports that since 1960 the death rate from cancer in children has plummeted 62 percent.

The death toll from some of the greatest killers has begun to come down as well, at least for some segments of the population. Lung cancer mortality rates in men dropped by 3 percent between 1990 and 1992, largely from a decline in cigarette smoking over the past few decades. Breast cancer mortality rates fell by more than 5 percent between 1989 and 1993, most markedly in women younger than 65 and in whites. The decline appears to stem from a combination of early detection and, probably, improvements in treatment. And mortality from colorectal cancer fell by about 17 percent between 1973 and 1992, thanks to early detection and revised treatment strategies.

In fact, a close look at the mortality data [*see illustration on next page*] reveals much cause for guarded optimism. The horrendous casualties from lung cancer obscure the general headway that has been made. Put aside

lung cancer (a largely preventable disease), and the death rate from all other types has declined by 3.4 percent since 1973—by 13.3 percent in people younger than 65.

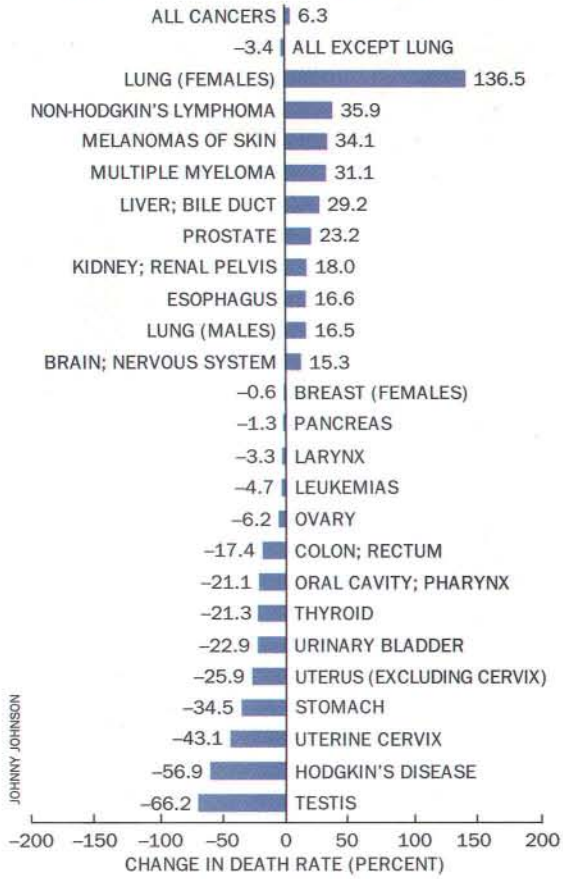
Much of this success derives, as Samuel Hellman and Everett E. Vokes of the University of Chicago describe in "Advancing Current Treatments for Cancer" (page 84), from new modes of therapy and more effective combinations and schedules of treatment. Therapeutic advances also include greater use of organ-sparing surgeries (which minimize disfigurement, pain and loss of function) and improvement in easing the side effects of therapy. Better attention is also paid to the emotional issues raised by the diagnosis and treatment of cancer. In short, a verdict of cancer does not necessarily carry the same bleak sentence it once did.

Certainly more needs to be done. Prevention is still an idea with plenty of untapped potential. An astonishing 30 percent of fatal cancers can be blamed primarily on smoking, and an equal number on lifestyle, especially dietary practices and lack of exercise. (One researcher has quipped that the best way to avoid cancer is to run from salad bar to salad bar.) By some estimates, if the government, other authorities and individuals did more to reform risky behaviors, upward of 200,000 lives could be saved from cancer annually even if no new treatments were discovered.

More lives should also be spared as a result of the avalanche of fundamental findings about how cancer develops and progresses. That knowledge, hard won over the past 20 years, is providing the blueprints for totally new therapies that will exploit the characteristic molecular abnormalities of cancer cells.

Unfortunately, political and economic hurdles stand in the way of doing more to prevent cancer and threaten research aimed at improving care. Richard D. Klausner, director of the National Cancer Institute, laments that U.S. government funding for the fight against cancer, which for 1996 stands at about $2 billion, has barely kept up with inflation over the past 10 years. Such belt-tightening means, as Donald S. Coffey of the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine wrote in an editorial for the journal *Cancer*, that there are "hundreds of good leads that cannot be followed today because of limited funds." He also asserts that the federal government has never mounted a war against cancer at all: "Total federal research funding per year for the two leading cancers diagnosed in the U.S. male (prostate and lung) would not represent enough money to purchase three new fighter planes."

TRENDS IN U.S. CANCER MORTALITY, 1973–92



SOURCE: SEER Statistics Review, 1973–1992. *NIH Publication No. 96-2789. National Cancer Institute, 1995.*

Scientists warn that the trend toward managed care, with its emphasis on cost containment, further saps progress. Insurers are increasingly reluctant to underwrite the costs of care given in clinical trials, which are the only way to test whether a new idea has any value.

For most members of society, however, the consuming issues are not statistical and political but personal and medical. What are the latest findings about how cancer develops and becomes lethal? What is the most up-to-date thinking on how to prevent, detect and treat cancer? Which findings are most likely to extend and save lives? Those answers can be found in these pages.

Together the following articles suggest that within the foreseeable future physicians will be able to determine from just a drop of blood or urine whether a person is at special risk for a cancer or has an unnoticed microscopic tumor. For people at risk, various prevention strategies—from changes in behavior to prophylactic medications—may be available. For those who already have cancer, analysis of the tumor's genes will reveal how aggressive it is, whether it needs extensive treatment, and which therapies might be effective. By tailoring prevention and treatment approaches to fit these profiles, doctors will finally succeed in making cancer much less deadly and frightening. "These are milestones we can achieve, not promises we cannot keep," Klausner insists.

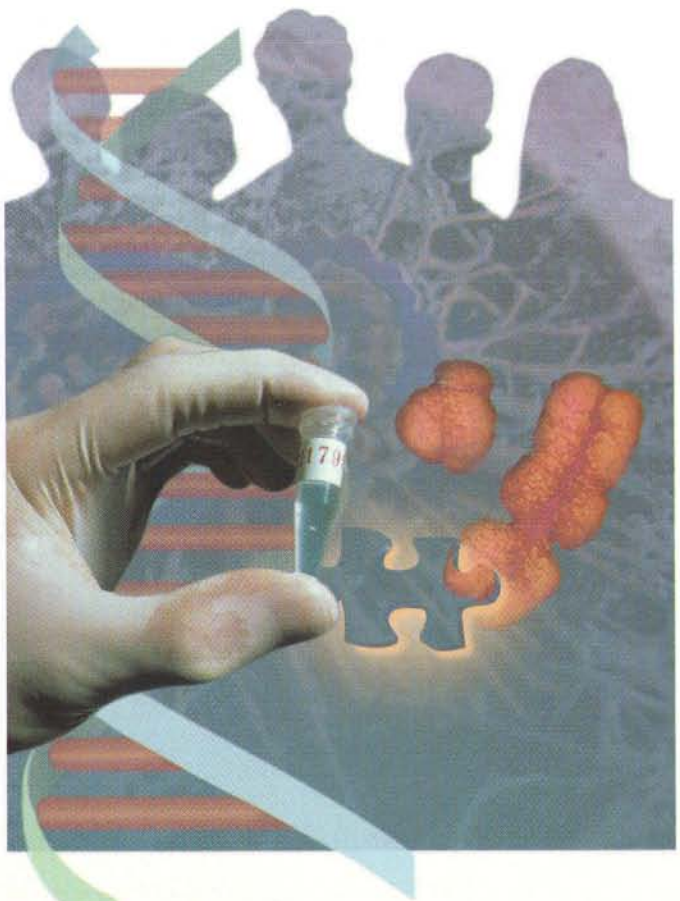
Some researchers striving for these goals are beginning to view cancer as a disease that might be managed over the long term, even when it cannot be cured. Eradicating every ominous cell from a cancer patient's body is a difficult goal—and in many cases, it may not be possible or necessary. After all, millions of people prosper despite chronic conditions such as diabetes and asthma. If physicians can help currently untreatable patients enjoy a more fulfilling span of pain-free years, that should count as a meaningful achievement. The day of complete cancer management may not yet be here, but the tools that medicine has now are a start.

Of course, the ultimate goal remains unchanged. As our lead author, Robert A. Weinberg of the Whitehead Institute, observes, "We have to keep our eye on the prize—which is to kill the tumor." Medical research should never give up on that quest for a cancer cure. Still, in the interim, it is heartening to know that in this war on cancer, even if total victory is not at hand, we might still add good years of life through strategies of containment. SA

JOHN RENNIE and RICKI RUSTING are editor in chief and associate editor of Scientific American.

Cancer begins when a cell breaks free from the normal restraints on uncontrolled growth and spread. Recent progress in understanding the dangerous changes in cell behavior has been extraordinary. These findings are the basis for many of today's most exciting ideas for improving care.

Fundamental Understandings



CONTENTS

PHOTOMONTAGE BY PATRICIA McDERMOND
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF PHOTO RESEARCHERS, INC.

How Cancer Arises

An explosion of research is uncovering the long-hidden molecular underpinnings of cancer—and suggesting new therapies

by Robert A. Weinberg

How cancer develops is no longer a mystery. During the past two decades, investigators have made astonishing progress in identifying the deepest bases of the process—those at the molecular level. These discoveries are robust: they will survive the scrutiny of future generations of researchers, and they will form the foundation for revolutionary approaches to treatment. No one can predict exactly when therapies targeted to the molecular alterations in cancer cells will find wide use, given that the translation of new understanding into clinical practice is complicated, slow and expensive. But the effort is now under way.

In truth, the term "cancer" refers to more than 100 forms of the disease. Almost every tissue in the body can spawn malignancies; some even yield several types. What is more, each cancer has unique features. Still, the basic processes that produce these diverse tumors appear to be quite similar. For that reason, I will refer in this article to "cancer" in generic terms, drawing on one or another type to illustrate the rules that seem to apply universally.

The 30 trillion cells of the normal, healthy body live in a complex, interdependent condominium, regulating one another's proliferation. Indeed, normal cells reproduce only when instructed to do so by other cells in their vicinity. Such unceasing collaboration ensures that each tissue maintains a size and architecture appropriate to the body's needs.

Cancer cells, in stark contrast, violate this scheme; they become deaf to the usual controls on proliferation and follow their own internal agenda for reproduction. They also possess an even more insidious property—the ability to migrate from the site where they began, invading nearby tissues and forming masses at distant sites in the body. Tumors composed of such malignant cells become more and more aggressive over time, and they become lethal when they disrupt the tissues and organs needed for the survival of the organism as a whole.

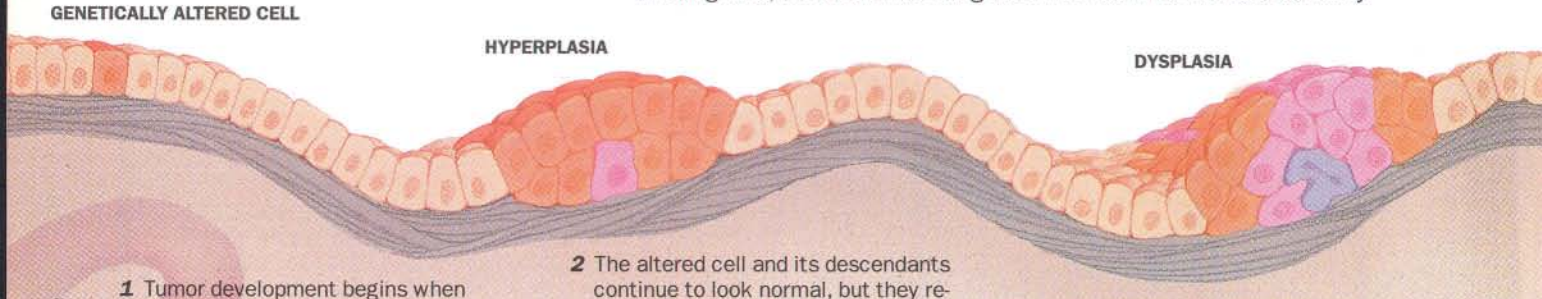
This much is not new. But over the past 20 years, scientists have uncovered a set of basic principles that govern the development of cancer. We now know that the cells in a tumor descend from a common ancestral cell that at one point—usually decades before a tumor becomes palpable—initiated a program of inappropriate reproduction. Further, the malignant transformation of a cell comes about through the accumulation of mutations in specific classes of the genes within it. These genes provide the key to understanding the processes at the root of human cancer.

Genes are carried in the DNA molecules of the chromosomes in the cell nucleus. A gene specifies a sequence of amino acids that must be linked together to make a particular protein; the protein then carries out the work of the gene. When a gene is switched on, the cell responds by synthesizing the encoded protein. Mutations in a gene can perturb a cell by changing the amounts or the activities of the protein product.

Two gene classes, which together constitute only a small proportion of the full genetic set, play major roles in triggering cancer. In their normal configuration, they choreograph the life cycle of the cell—the intricate sequence of events by which a cell enlarges and divides. Proto-oncogenes encourage such growth, whereas tumor suppressor genes inhibit it. Collectively these two gene classes ac-

Tumor Development Occurs in Stages

The creation of a malignant tumor in epithelial tissue is depicted schematically below. Epithelial cancers are the most common malignancies and are called carcinomas. The mass seen here emerges as a result of mutations in four genes, but the number of genes involved in real tumors can vary.



DANA BURNS-PIZER

1 Tumor development begins when some cell (*orange*) within a normal population (*beige*) sustains a genetic mutation that increases its propensity to proliferate when it would normally rest.

2 The altered cell and its descendants continue to look normal, but they reproduce too much—a condition termed hyperplasia. After years, one in a million of these cells (*pink*) suffers another mutation that further loosens controls on cell growth.

3 In addition to proliferating excessively, the offspring of this cell appear abnormal in shape and in orientation; the tissue is now said to exhibit dysplasia. Once again, after a time, a rare mutation that alters cell behavior occurs (*purple*).

count for much of the uncontrolled cell proliferation seen in human cancers.

When mutated, proto-oncogenes can become carcinogenic oncogenes that drive excessive multiplication. The mutations may cause the proto-oncogene to yield too much of its encoded growth-stimulatory protein or an overly active form of it. Tumor suppressor genes, in contrast, contribute to cancer when they are inactivated by mutations. The resulting loss of functional suppressor proteins deprives the cell of crucial brakes that prevent inappropriate growth.

For a cancerous tumor to develop, mutations must occur in half a dozen or more of the founding cell's growth-controlling genes. Altered forms of yet other classes of genes may also participate in the creation of a malignancy, by specifically enabling a proliferating cell to become invasive or capable of spreading (metastasizing) throughout the body.

Signaling Systems Go Awry

Vital clues to how mutated proto-oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes contribute to cancer came from studying the roles played within the cell by the normal counterparts of these genes. After almost two decades of research, we now view the normal genetic functions with unprecedented clarity and detail.

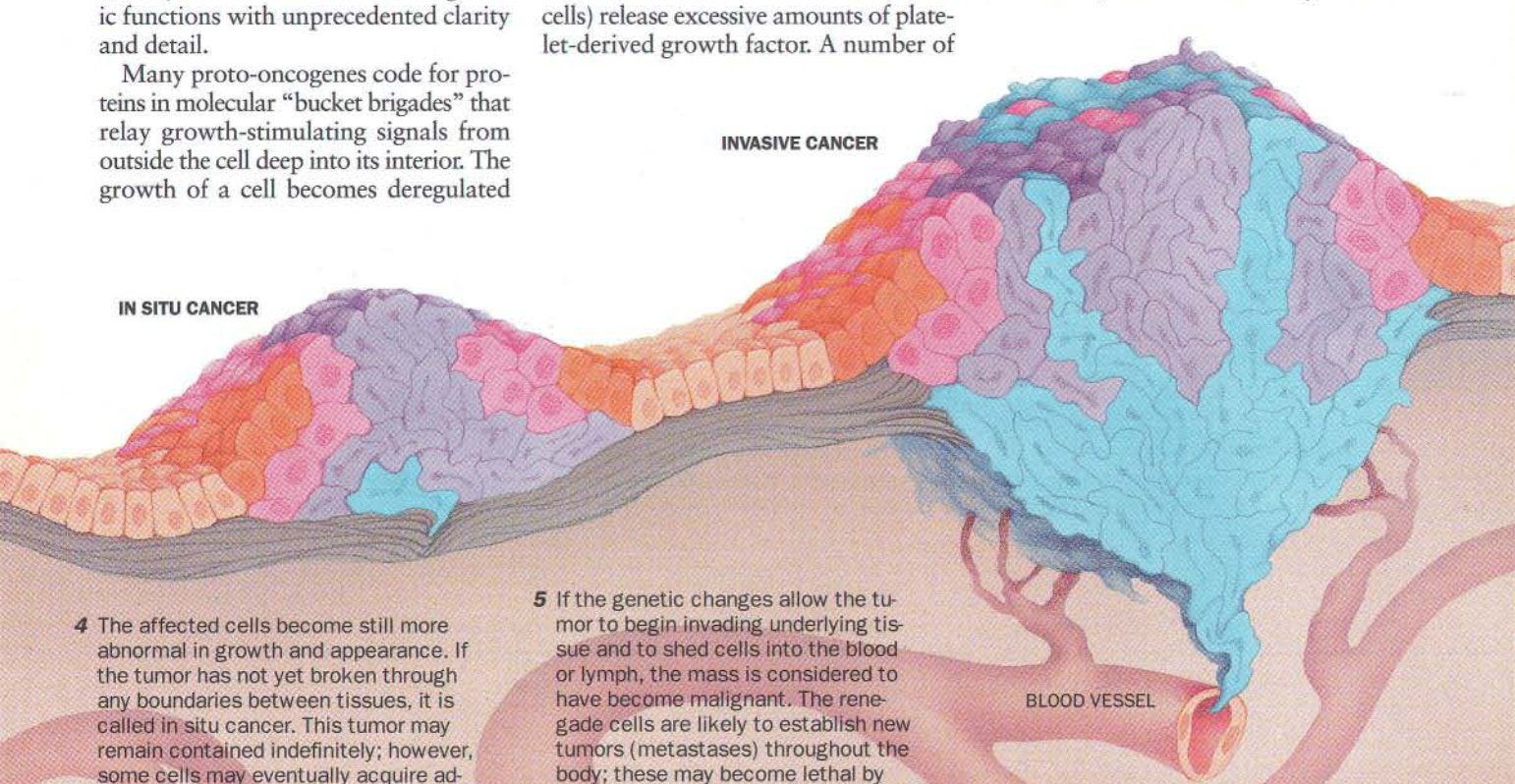
Many proto-oncogenes code for proteins in molecular "bucket brigades" that relay growth-stimulating signals from outside the cell deep into its interior. The growth of a cell becomes deregulated when a mutation in one of its proto-oncogenes energizes a critical growth-stimulatory pathway, keeping it continuously active when it should be silent.

These pathways within a cell receive and process growth-stimulatory signals transmitted by other cells in a tissue. Such cell-to-cell signaling usually begins when one cell secretes growth factors. After release, these proteins move through the spaces between cells and bind to specific receptors—antennalike molecules—on the surface of other cells nearby. Receptors span the outer membrane of the target cells, so that one end protrudes into the extracellular space, and the other end projects into the cell's interior, its cytoplasm. When a growth-stimulatory factor attaches to a receptor, the receptor conveys a proliferative signal to proteins in the cytoplasm. These downstream proteins then emit stimulatory signals to a succession of other proteins, in a chain that ends in the heart of the cell, its nucleus. Within the nucleus, proteins known as transcription factors respond by activating a cohort of genes that help to usher the cell through its growth cycle.

Some oncogenes force cells to overproduce growth factors. Sarcomas and gliomas (cancers, respectively, of connective tissues and nonneuronal brain cells) release excessive amounts of platelet-derived growth factor. A number of other cancer types secrete too much transforming growth factor alpha. These factors act, as usual, on nearby cells, but, more important, they may also turn back and drive proliferation of the same cells that just produced them.

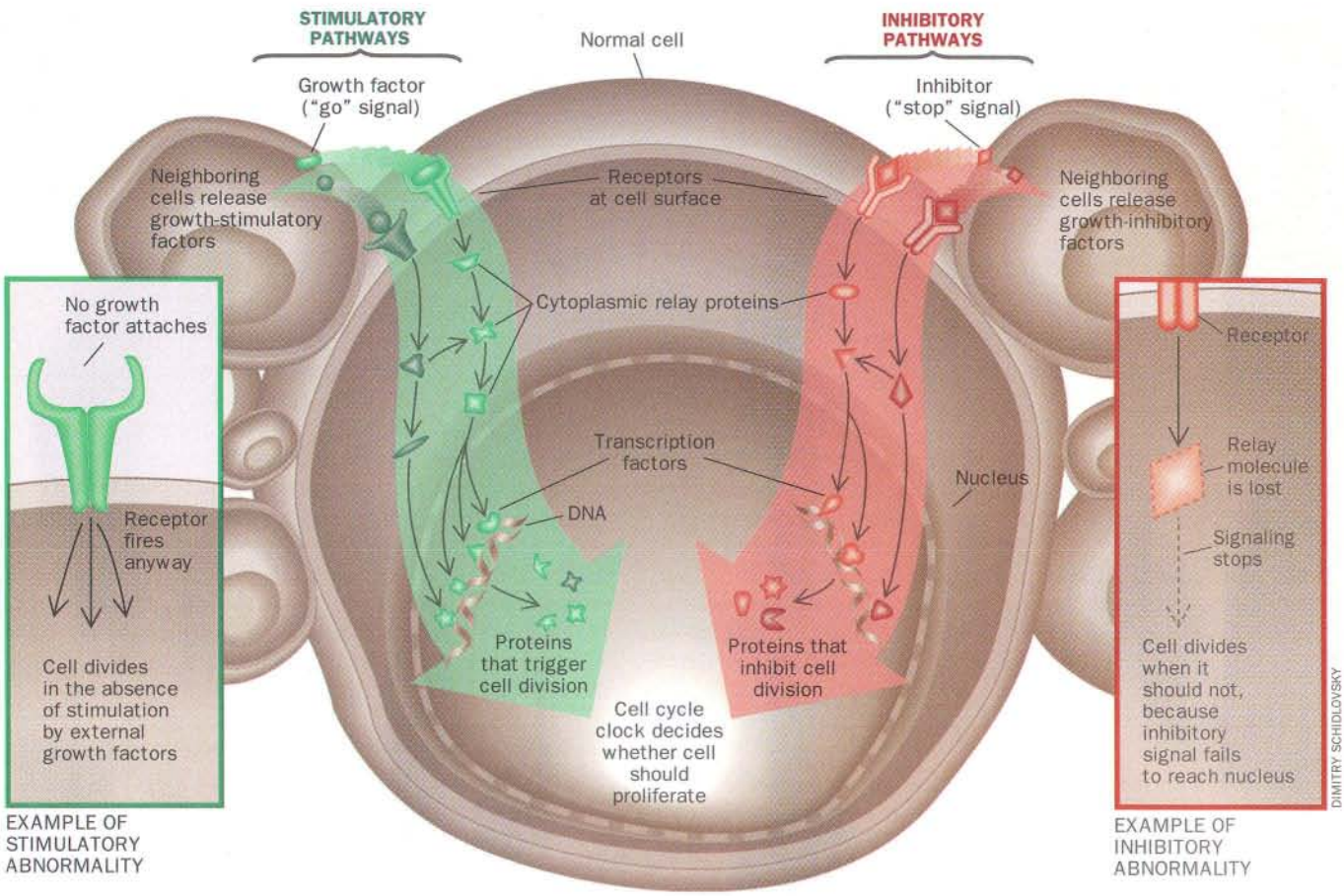
Researchers have also identified oncogenic versions of receptor genes. The aberrant receptors specified by these oncogenes release a flood of proliferative signals into the cell cytoplasm even when no growth factors are present to urge the cell to replicate. For instance, breast cancer cells often display Erb-B2 receptor molecules that behave in this way.

Still other oncogenes in human tumors perturb parts of the signal cascade found in the cytoplasm. The best understood example comes from the *ras* family of oncogenes. The proteins encoded by normal *ras* genes transmit stimulatory signals from growth factor receptors to other proteins farther down the line. The proteins encoded by mutant *ras* genes, however, fire continuously, even when growth factor receptors are not prompting them. Hyperactive Ras proteins are found in about a quarter of all human tumors, including carcinomas of the colon, pancreas and lung. (Carcinomas are by far the most common forms of cancer; they originate in epithelial cells, which line the body cavities



4 The affected cells become still more abnormal in growth and appearance. If the tumor has not yet broken through any boundaries between tissues, it is called in situ cancer. This tumor may remain contained indefinitely; however, some cells may eventually acquire additional mutations (*blue*).

5 If the genetic changes allow the tumor to begin invading underlying tissue and to shed cells into the blood or lymph, the mass is considered to have become malignant. The renegade cells are likely to establish new tumors (metastases) throughout the body; these may become lethal by disrupting a vital organ.



SIGNALING PATHWAYS in normal cells convey growth-controlling messages from the outer surface deep into the nucleus. There a molecular apparatus known as the cell cycle clock collects the messages and decides whether the cell should divide. Cancer cells often proliferate excessively because genetic mutations cause stimulatory pathways (*green*) to issue too many "go" signals or because inhibitory pathways (*red*) can no longer convey "stop" signals. A stimulatory pathway will become hyperactive if a mutation causes any component, such as a growth factor receptor (*box at left*), to issue stimulatory messages autonomously, without waiting for commands from upstream. Conversely, inhibitory pathways will shut down when some constituent, such as a cytoplasmic relay (*box at right*), is eliminated and thus breaks the signaling chain.

and form the outer layer of the skin.)

Yet other oncogenes, such as those in the *myc* family, alter the activity of transcription factors in the nucleus. Cells normally manufacture Myc transcription factors only after they have been stimulated by growth factors impinging on the cell surface. Once made, Myc proteins activate genes that force cell growth forward. But in many types of cancer, especially malignancies of the blood-forming tissues, Myc levels are kept constantly high even in the absence of growth factors.

Discovery of trunk lines that carry proliferative messages from the cell surface to its nucleus has been more than intellectually satisfying. Because these pathways energize the multiplication of malignant cells, they constitute attractive targets for scientists intent on developing new types of anticancer therapeutics. In an exciting turn of events, as many as half a dozen pharmaceutical companies are working on drugs designed to shut down aberrantly firing growth factor receptors. At least three other companies are attempting to develop compounds that block the synthesis of aberrant Ras proteins. Both groups of agents halt excessive signaling in cultured cancer cells, but their utility in blocking the growth of tumors in animals and humans remains to be demonstrated.

Tumor Suppressors Stop Working

To become malignant, cells must do more than overstimulate their growth-promoting machinery. They must also devise ways to evade or ignore braking signals issued by their normal neighbors in the tissue. Inhibitory messages received by a normal cell flow to the nucleus much as stimulatory signals do—via molecular bucket brigades. In cancer cells, these inhibitory brigades may be disrupted, thereby enabling the cell to ignore normally potent inhibitory signals at the surface. Critical components of these brigades, which are specified by tumor suppressor genes, are absent or inactive in many types of cancer cells.

A secreted substance called transforming growth factor beta (TGF-ß) can stop the growth of various kinds of normal cells. Some colon cancer cells become oblivious to TGF-ß by inactivating a gene that encodes a surface receptor for this substance. Some pancreatic cancers inactivate the *DPC4* gene, whose protein product may operate downstream of the growth factor receptor. And a variety of cancers discard the *p15* gene, which codes for a protein that, in re-

sponse to signals from TGF-ß, normally shuts down the machinery that guides the cell through its growth cycle.

Tumor suppressor proteins can also restrain cell proliferation in other ways. Some, for example, block the flow of signals through growth-stimulatory circuits. One such suppressor is the product of the *NF-1* gene. This cytoplasmic molecule ambushes the Ras protein before it can emit its growth-promoting directives. Cells lacking *NF-1*, then, are missing an important counterbalance to Ras and to unchecked proliferation.

Various studies have shown that the introduction of a tumor suppressor gene into cancer cells that lack it can restore a degree of normalcy to the cells. This response suggests a tantalizing way of combating cancer—by providing cancer cells with intact versions of tumor suppressor genes they lost during tumor development. Although the concept is attractive, this strategy is held back by the technical difficulties still encumbering gene therapy for many diseases. Current procedures fail to deliver genes to a large proportion of the cells in a tumor. Until this logistical obstacle is surmounted, the use of gene therapy to cure cancer will remain a highly appealing but unfulfilled idea.

The Clock Is Struck

Over the past five years, impressive evidence has uncovered the destination of stimulatory and inhibitory pathways in the cell. They converge on a molecular apparatus in the cell nucleus that is often referred to as the cell cycle clock. The clock is the executive decision maker of the cell, and it apparently runs amok in virtually all types of human cancer. In the normal cell, the clock integrates the mixture of growth-regulating signals received by the cell and decides whether the cell should pass through its life cycle. If the answer is positive, the clock leads the process.

The cell cycle is composed of four stages. In the G_1 (gap 1) phase, the cell increases in size and prepares to copy its DNA. This copying occurs in the next stage, termed S (for synthesis), and enables the cell to duplicate precisely its complement of chromosomes. After the chromosomes are replicated, a second gap period, termed G_2, follows during which the cell prepares itself for M (mitosis)—the time when the enlarged par-

Some Genes Involved in Human Cancers

Genes known as proto-oncogenes code for proteins that stimulate cell division; mutated forms, called oncogenes, can cause the stimulatory proteins to be overactive, with the result that cells proliferate excessively. Tumor suppressor genes code for proteins that inhibit cell division. Mutations can cause the proteins to be inactivated and may thus deprive cells of needed restraints on proliferation. Investigators are still trying to decipher the specific functions of many tumor suppressor genes.

ONCOGENES

Genes for growth factors or their receptors	
PDGF	Codes for platelet-derived growth factor. Involved in glioma (a brain cancer)
erb-B	Codes for the receptor for epidermal growth factor. Involved in glioblastoma (a brain cancer) and breast cancer
erb-B2	Also called *HER-2* or *neu*. Codes for a growth factor receptor. Involved in breast, salivary gland and ovarian cancers
RET	Codes for a growth factor receptor. Involved in thyroid cancer
Genes for cytoplasmic relays in stimulatory signaling pathways	
Ki-ras	Involved in lung, ovarian, colon and pancreatic cancers
N-ras	Involved in leukemias
Genes for transcription factors that activate growth-promoting genes	
c-myc	Involved in leukemias and breast, stomach and lung cancers
N-myc	Involved in neuroblastoma (a nerve cell cancer) and glioblastoma
L-myc	Involved in lung cancer
Genes for other kinds of molecules	
Bcl-2	Codes for a protein that normally blocks cell suicide. Involved in follicular *B* cell lymphoma
Bcl-1	Also called *PRAD1*. Codes for cyclin D1, a stimulatory component of the cell cycle clock. Involved in breast, head and neck cancers
MDM2	Codes for an antagonist of the p53 tumor suppressor protein. Involved in sarcomas (connective tissue cancers) and other cancers

TUMOR SUPPRESSOR GENES

Genes for proteins in the cytoplasm	
APC	Involved in colon and stomach cancers
DPC4	Codes for a relay molecule in a signaling pathway that inhibits cell division. Involved in pancreatic cancer
NF-1	Codes for a protein that inhibits a stimulatory (Ras) protein. Involved in neurofibroma and pheochromocytoma (cancers of the peripheral nervous system) and myeloid leukemia
NF-2	Involved in meningioma and ependymoma (brain cancers) and schwannoma (affecting the wrapping around peripheral nerves)
Genes for proteins in the nucleus	
MTS1	Codes for the p16 protein, a braking component of the cell cycle clock. Involved in a wide range of cancers
RB	Codes for the pRB protein, a master brake of the cell cycle. Involved in retinoblastoma and bone, bladder, small cell lung and breast cancer
p53	Codes for the p53 protein, which can halt cell division and induce abnormal cells to kill themselves. Involved in a wide range of cancers
WT1	Involved in Wilms' tumor of the kidney
Genes for proteins whose cellular location is not yet clear	
BRCA1	Involved in breast and ovarian cancers
BRCA2	Involved in breast cancer
VHL	Involved in renal cell cancer

ent cell finally divides in half to produce its two daughters, each of which is endowed with a complete set of chromosomes. The new daughter cells immediately enter G_1 and may go through the full cycle again. Alternatively, they may stop cycling temporarily or permanently.

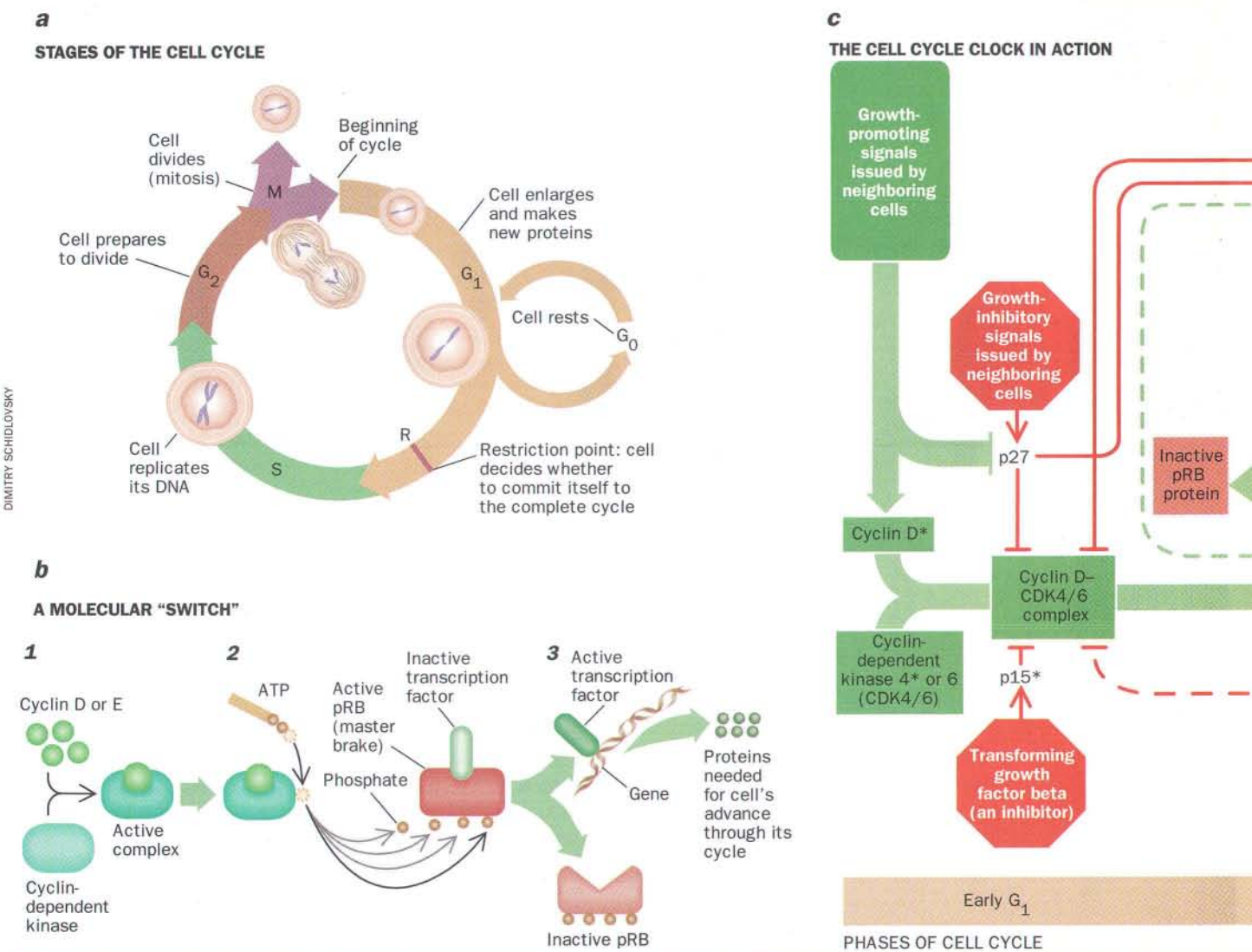
The cell cycle clock programs this elaborate succession of events by means of a variety of molecules. Its two essential components, cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases (CDKs), associate with one another and initiate entrance into the various stages of the cell cycle. In G_1, for instance, D-type cyclins bind to CDKs 4 or 6, and the resulting complexes act on a powerful growth-inhibitory molecule—the protein known as pRB. This action releases the braking effect of pRB and enables the cell to progress into late G_1 and thence into S (DNA synthesis) phase [*see b in box below*].

Various inhibitory proteins can restrain forward movement through the cycle. Among them are p15 (mentioned earlier) and p16, both of which block the activity of the CDK partners of cy-

The Cell Cycle Clock and Cancer

Most, perhaps all, human cancers grow inappropriately not only because signaling pathways in cells are perturbed but also because the so-called cell cycle clock becomes deranged. The clock—composed of an assembly of interacting proteins in the nucleus—normally integrates messages from the stimulatory and inhibitory pathways and, if the stimulatory messages win out, programs a cell's advance through its cycle of growth and division. Progression through the four stages of the cell cycle (*a*) is driven to a large extent by rising levels of proteins called cyclins: first the D type, followed by E, A and then B.

A crucial step in the cycle occurs late in G_1 at the restriction point (R), when the cell decides whether to commit itself to completing the cycle. For the cell to pass through R and enter S, a molecular "switch" must be flipped from "off" to "on." The switch works as follows (*b*): As levels of cyclin D and, later, cyclin E rise, these proteins combine with and activate enzymes called cyclin-dependent kinases (*1*). The kinases (acting as part of cyclin-kinase complexes) grab phosphate groups (*2*) from molecules of



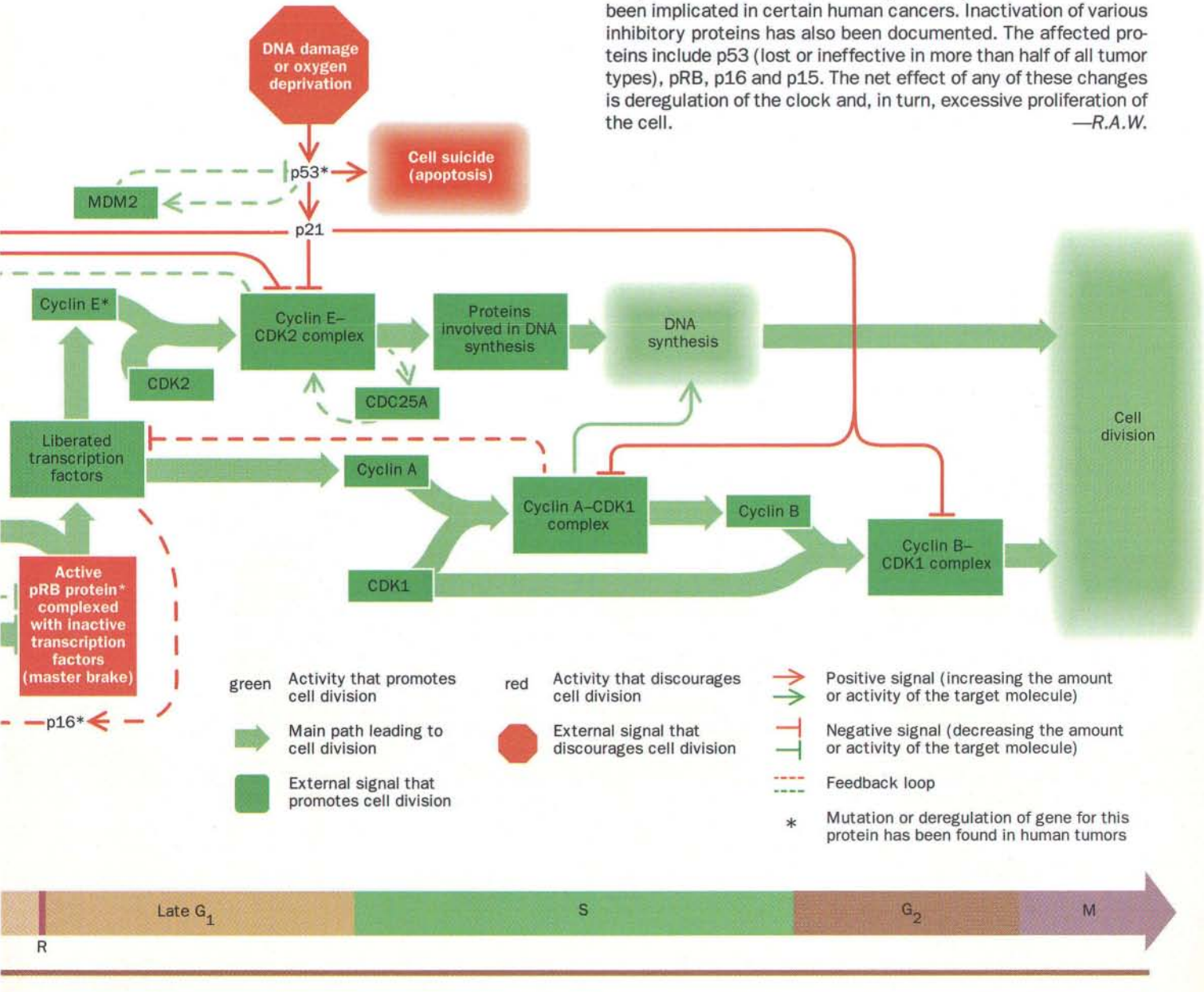
DIMITRY SCHIDLOVSKY

clin D, thus preventing the advance of the cell from G_1 into S. Another inhibitor of CDKs, termed p21, can act throughout the cell cycle. P21 is under control of a tumor suppressor protein, p53, that monitors the health of the cell, the integrity of its chromosomal DNA and the successful completion of the different steps in the cycle.

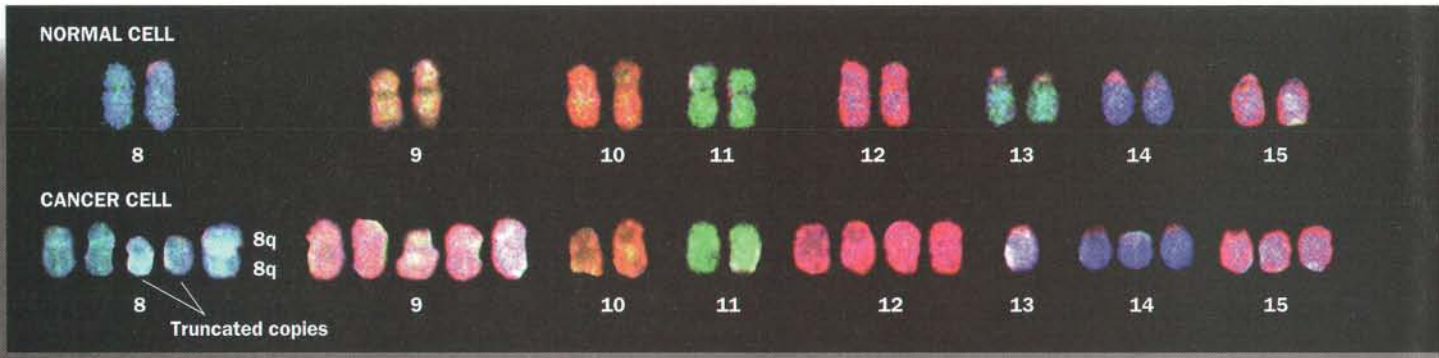
Breast cancer cells often produce excesses of cyclin D and cyclin E. In many cases of melanoma, skin cells have lost the gene encoding the braking protein p16. Half of all types of human tumors lack a functional p53 protein. And in cervical cancers triggered by infection of cells with a human papillomavirus, both the pRB and p53 proteins are frequently disabled, eliminating two of the clock's most vital restraints. The end result in all these cases is that the clock begins to spin out of control, ignoring any external warnings to stop. If investigators can devise ways to impose clamps on the cyclins and CDKs active in the cell cycle, they may be able to halt cancer cells in their tracks.

ATP (adenosine triphosphate) and transfer them to a protein called pRB, the master brake of the cell cycle clock. When pRB lacks phosphates, it actively blocks cycling (and keeps the switch in the "off" position) by sequestering other proteins termed transcription factors. But after the cyclin-kinase complexes add enough phosphates to pRB, the brake stops working (*3; bottom*); it releases the factors, freeing them to act on genes (*3; top*). The liberated factors then spur production of various proteins required for continued progression through the cell cycle.

In figure *c* below, the switch is placed in the larger context of the many molecular interactions that regulate the cell cycle. Flipping of the switch to "on" can be seen above the R point. Overactivity of the stimulatory proteins cyclin D, cyclin E and CDK4 have been implicated in certain human cancers. Inactivation of various inhibitory proteins has also been documented. The affected proteins include p53 (lost or ineffective in more than half of all tumor types), pRB, p16 and p15. The net effect of any of these changes is deregulation of the clock and, in turn, excessive proliferation of the cell. —*R.A.W.*



I have so far discussed two ways that our tissues normally hold down cell proliferation and avoid cancer. They prevent excess multiplication by depriving a cell of growth-stimulatory factors or, conversely, by showering it with antiproliferative factors. Still, as we have seen, cells on their way to becoming cancerous often circumvent these controls: they stimulate themselves and turn a deaf ear to inhibitory signals. Prepared for such eventualities, the human body equips cells with certain backup systems that guard against runaway division. But additional mutations in the cell's genetic repertoire can overcome even these defenses and contribute to cancer.



MERRYN MACVILLE AND THOMAS REID National Center for Human Genome Research, NIH

HUMAN CHROMOSOMES from a normal dividing cell (*top*) occur as identical pairs; those numbered 8 to 18 are shown. Chromosomes from a cervical cancer cell, in contrast, display many abnormalities (*bottom*). Chromosome 8, for instance, exhibits three disturbances: gain of copy number; deletion of genetic material from individual copies; and breakage followed by joining of segments that do not belong together (*far right in 8*). Copy loss, as in chromosome 13, is also common. These various changes can favor tumor progression if they activate an oncogene, increase the copies of an oncogene or eliminate a tumor suppressor gene. The images were generated by spectral karyotyping, a new method for analyzing chromosomes.

Fail-Safe Systems Fail

One such backup system, present in each human cell, provokes the cell to commit suicide (undergo "apoptosis") if some of its essential components are damaged or if its control systems are deregulated. For example, injury to chromosomal DNA can trigger apoptosis. Further, recent work from a number of laboratories indicates that creation of an oncogene or the disabling of a tumor suppressor gene within a cell can also induce this response. Destruction of a damaged cell is bad for the cell itself but makes sense for the body as a whole: the potential dangers posed to the organism by carcinogenic mutations are far greater than the small price paid in the loss of a single cell. The tumors that emerge in our tissues, then, would seem to arise from the rare, genetically disturbed cell that somehow succeeds in evading the apoptotic program hardwired into its control circuitry.

Developing cancer cells devise several means of evading apoptosis. The p53 protein, among its many functions, helps to trigger cell suicide; its inactivation by many tumor cells reduces the likelihood that genetically troubled cells will be eliminated. Cancer cells may also make excessive amounts of the protein Bcl-2, which wards off apoptosis efficiently.

Recently scientists have realized that this ability to escape apoptosis may endanger patients not only by contributing to the expansion of a tumor but also by making the resulting tumors resistant to therapy. For years, it was assumed that radiation therapy and many chemotherapeutic drugs killed malignant cells directly, by wreaking widespread havoc in their DNA. We now know that the treatments often harm DNA to a relatively minor extent. Nevertheless, the affected cells perceive that the inflicted damage cannot be repaired easily, and they actively kill themselves. This discovery implies that cancer cells able to evade apoptosis will be far less responsive to treatment. By the same token, it suggests that therapies able to restore a cell's capacity for suicide could combat cancer by improving the effectiveness of existing radiation and chemotherapeutic treatment strategies.

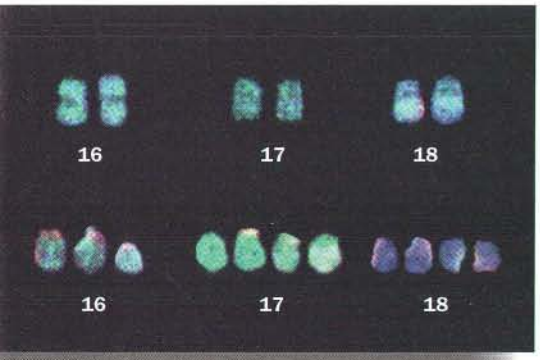
A second defense against runaway proliferation, quite distinct from the apoptotic program, is built into our cells as well. This mechanism counts and limits the total number of times cells can reproduce themselves.

Cells Become Immortal

Much of what is known about this safeguard has been learned from studies of cells cultured in a petri dish. When cells are taken from a mouse or human embryo and grown in culture, the population doubles every day or so. But after a predictable number of doublings—50 to 60 in human cells—growth stops, at which point the cells are said to be senescent. That, at least, is what happens when cells have intact *RB* and *p53* genes. Cells that sustain inactivating mutations in either of these genes continue to divide after their normal counterparts enter senescence. Eventually, though, the survivors reach a second stage, termed crisis, in which they die in large numbers. An occasional cell in this dying population, however, will escape crisis and become immortal: it and its descendants will multiply indefinitely.

These events imply the existence of a mechanism that counts the number of doublings through which a cell population has passed. During the past several years, scientists have discovered the molecular device that does this counting. DNA segments at the ends of chromo-

somes, known as telomeres, tally the number of replicative generations through which cell populations pass and, at appropriate times, initiate senescence and crisis. In so doing, they circumscribe the ability of cell populations to expand indefinitely [see "Telomeres, Telomerase and Cancer," by Carol W. Greider and Elizabeth H. Blackburn; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, February].



Like the plastic tips on shoelaces, the telomere caps protect chromosomal ends from damage. In most human cells, telomeres shorten a bit every time chromosomes are replicated during the S phase of the cell cycle. Once the telomeres shrink below some threshold length, they sound an alarm that instructs cells to enter senescence. If cells bypass senescence, further shrinkage of the telomere will eventually trigger crisis: extreme shortening of the telomeres will cause the chromosomes in a cell to fuse with one another or to break apart, creating genetic chaos that is fatal to the cell.

If the telomere-based counting system operated properly in cancerous cells, their excessive proliferation would be aborted long before tumors became very large. Dangerous expansion would be stemmed by the senescence program or, if the cell evaded that blockade, by disruption of the chromosomal array at crisis. But this last defense is breached during the development of most cancer cells, overcome by activation of a gene that codes for the enzyme telomerase.

This enzyme, virtually absent from most healthy cell types but present in almost all tumor cells, systematically replaces telomeric segments that are usually trimmed away during each cell cycle. In so doing, it maintains the integrity of the telomeres and thereby enables cells to replicate endlessly. The resulting cell immortality can be troublesome in a couple of ways. Obviously, it allows tumors to grow large. It also gives precancerous or already cancerous cells time to accumulate additional mutations that will increase their ability to replicate, invade and ultimately metastasize.

From the point of view of a cancer cell, production of a single enzyme is a clever way to topple the mortality barrier. Yet dependence on one enzyme may represent an Achilles' heel as well. If telomerase could be blocked in cancer cells, their telomeres would once again shrink whenever they divided, pushing these cells into crisis and death. For that reason, a number of pharmaceutical firms are attempting to develop drugs that target telomerase.

Why Some Cancers Appear Early

It normally takes decades for an incipient tumor to collect all the mutations required for its malignant growth. In some individuals, however, the time for tumor development is clearly compressed; they contract certain types of cancer decades before the typical age of onset of these cancers. How can tumor formation be accelerated?

In many cases, this early onset is explained by the inheritance from one or the other parent of a mutant cancer-causing gene. As a fertilized egg begins to divide and replicate, the set of genes provided by the sperm and egg is copied and distributed to all the body's cells. Now a typically rare event—a mutation in a critical growth-controlling gene—becomes ubiquitous, because the mutation is implanted in all the body's cells, not merely in some randomly stricken cell. In other words, the process of tumor formation leapfrogs over one of its early, slowly occurring steps, accelerating the process as a whole. As a consequence, tumor development, which usually requires three or four decades to reach completion, may culminate in one or two. Because such mutant genes can pass from generation to generation, many members of a family may be at risk for the early development of cancer.

An inherited form of colon cancer provides a dramatic example. Most cases of colon cancer occur sporadically, the results of random genetic events occurring during a person's lifetime. In certain families, however, many individuals are afflicted with early-onset colonic tumors, preordained by an inherited gene. In the sporadic cases, a rare mutation silences a tumor suppressor gene called *APC* in an intestinal epithelial cell. The resulting proliferation of the mutant cell yields a benign polyp that may eventually progress to a malignant carcinoma. But defective forms of *APC* may pass from parents to children in certain families. Members of these families develop hundreds, even thousands of colonic polyps during the first decades of life, some of which are likely to become transformed into carcinomas.

The list of familial cancer syndromes that are now traceable directly to inheritance of mutant tumor suppressor genes is growing. For instance, inherited defective versions of the gene for *pRB* often lead to development of an eye cancer—retinoblastoma—in children; later in life the mutations account for a greatly increased risk of osteosarcomas (bone cancers). Mutant inherited versions of the *p53* tumor suppressor gene yield tumors at multiple sites, a condition known as the Li-Fraumeni syndrome (named in part for Frederick Li, co-author of "What Causes Cancer?", page 50). And the recently isolated *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes seem to account for the bulk of familial breast cancers, encompassing as many as 20 percent of all premenopausal breast cancers in this country and a substantial proportion of familial ovarian cancers as well.

Early onset of tumors is sometimes explained by inheritance of mutations in another class of genes as well. As I implied earlier, most people avoid cancer until late in life or indefinitely because they enter the world with pristine genes. During the course of a lifetime, however, our genes are attacked by carcinogens imported into our bodies from the environment and also by chemicals produced in our own cells. And genetic errors may be introduced when the enzymes that replicate DNA during cell cycling make copying mistakes. For the most part, such errors are rapidly corrected by a repair system that operates in every cell. Should the repair system slip up and fail to erase an error, the damage will become a permanent mutation in one of the cell's genes and in that same gene in all descendant cells.

The system's high repair efficiency is one reason many decades can pass before all the mutations needed for a ma-

lignancy to develop will, by chance, come together within a single cell. Certain inherited defects, though, can accelerate tumor development through a particularly insidious means: they impair the operation of proteins that repair damaged DNA. As a result, mutations that would normally accumulate slowly will appear with alarming frequency throughout the DNA of cells. Among the affected genes are inevitably those controlling cell proliferation.

Such is the case in another inherited colon cancer, hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. Afflicted individuals make defective versions of a protein responsible for repairing the copying mistakes made by the DNA replication apparatus. Because of this impairment, colonic cells cannot fix DNA damage efficiently; they therefore collect mutations rapidly, accelerating cancer development by two decades or more. People affected by another familial cancer syndrome, xeroderma pigmentosum, have inherited a defective copy of a gene that directs the repair of DNA damaged by ultraviolet rays. These patients are prone to several types of sunlight-induced skin cancer.

Similarly, cells of people born with a defective *ATM* gene have difficulty recognizing the presence of certain lesions in the DNA and mobilizing the appropriate repair response. These people are susceptible to neurological degeneration, blood vessel malformation and a variety of tumors. Some researchers have proposed that as many as 10 percent of inherited breast cancers may arise in patients with a defective copy of this gene.

Over the next decade, the list of cancer susceptibility genes will grow dramatically, one of the fruits of the Human Genome Project (which seeks to identify every gene in the human cell). Together with the increasingly powerful tools of DNA analysis, knowledge of these genes will enable us to predict which members of cancer-prone families are at high risk and which have, through good fortune, inherited intact copies of these genes.

Beyond Proliferation

Although we have learned an enormous amount about the genetic basis of runaway cell proliferation, we still know rather little about the mutant genes that contribute to later stages of tumor development, specifically those that allow tumor cells to attract blood vessels for nourishment, to invade nearby tissues and to metastasize. But research in these areas is moving rapidly. (Judah Folkman describes the ingenuity of tumor cells in generating their own blood supply in "Fighting Cancer by Attacking Its Blood Supply," on page 116. Erkki Ruoslahti takes up metastasis in "How Cancer Spreads" on page 42.)

We are within striking distance of writing the detailed life histories of many human tumors from start to life-threatening finish. These biographies will be written in the language of genes and molecules. Within a decade, we will know with extraordinary precision the succession of events that constitute the complex evolution of normal cells into highly malignant, invasive derivatives.

By then, we may come to understand why certain localized masses never progress beyond their benign, noninvasive form to confront us with aggressive malignancy. Such benign growths can be found in almost every organ of the body. Perhaps we will also discern why certain mutant genes contribute to the formation of some types of cancer but not others. For example, mutant versions of the *RB* tumor suppressor gene appear often in retinoblastoma, bladder carcinoma and small cell lung carcinoma but are seen only occasionally in breast and colon carcinomas. Very likely, many of the solutions to these mysteries will flow from research in developmental biology (embryology). After all, the genes that govern embryonic development are, much later, the sources of our malignancies.

By any measure, the amount of information gathered over the past two decades about the origins of cancer is without parallel in the history of biomedical research. Some of this knowledge has already been put to good use, to build molecular tools for detecting and determining the aggressiveness of certain types of cancer, as David Sidransky discusses in "Advances in Cancer Detection," on page 70. Still, despite so much insight into cause, new curative therapies have so far remained elusive. One reason is that tumor cells differ only minimally from healthy ones; a minute fraction of the tens of thousands of genes in a cell suffers damage during malignant transformation. Thus, normal friend and malignant foe are woven of very similar cloth, and any fire directed against the enemy may do as much damage to normal tissue as to the intended target.

Yet the course of the battle is changing. The differences between normal and cancer cells may be subtle, but they are real. And the unique characteristics of tumors provide excellent targets for intervention by newly developed drugs [see the section "Therapies of the Future," beginning on page 101]. The development of targeted anticancer therapeutics is still in its infancy. This enterprise will soon move from hit-or-miss, serendipitous discovery to rational design and accurate targeting. I suspect that the first decade of the new century will reward us with cancer therapies that earlier generations could not have dreamed possible. Then this nation's long investment in basic cancer research will begin to pay off handsomely. SA

The Author

ROBERT A. WEINBERG is Member of the Whitehead Institute for Biomedical Research and a professor of biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, where he earned his doctoral degree in biology in 1969. His laboratory was instrumental in isolating the first human oncogene and the first human tumor suppressor gene. Weinberg, a member of the National Academy of Sciences, has won many awards for his contributions to the understanding of cancer genetics, most recently the G.H.A. Clowes Memorial Award of the American Association for Cancer Research. This is his fourth article for *Scientific American*.

Further Reading

CANCER: SCIENCE AND SOCIETY. J. Cairns. W. H. Freeman, 1978.

GENES AND THE BIOLOGY OF CANCER. H. Varmus and R. A. Weinberg. Scientific American Library (distributed by W. H. Freeman), 1993.

THE MULTISTEP NATURE OF CANCER. B. Vogelstein and K. W. Kinzler in *Trends in Genetics*, Vol. 9, No. 4, pages 138–141; April 1993.

CANCER: THE RISE OF THE GENETIC PARADIGM. J. M. Bishop in *Genes and Development*, Vol. 9, No. 11, pages 1309–1315; June 1, 1995.

ONCOGENES. Second edition. G. M. Cooper. Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Boston, 1995.

Can you put up a power transmission system without annoying your neighbors?

Economic development and environmental conservation are often seen as natural enemies. But by taking environmental considerations seriously early on in a project, ABB keeps any impact to a minimum. For example in southern Africa, ABB was asked to erect 410 kilometers of transmission lines without disturbing an indigenous colony of Cape vultures. The project was executed with minimum disturbance during the breeding season between April and September. It is somewhat surprising therefore that this neighborly respect did not slow down the project. In fact planning ahead combined with local knowledge and advanced technology meant the Zimbabwean section of the Matimba – Bulawayo interconnection was completed ahead of schedule.

Yes, you can.

ABB is committed to the core principle of sustainable development. Balancing mankind's needs with those of a delicate environment takes foresight and efficient, ecologically sound technology. This is what ABB offers to neighborhoods all over the world.

ABB

ABB Asea Brown Boveri Ltd., Reader Services Center, P.O. Box 4110, CH-8021 Zurich, Switzerland

How Cancer Spreads

Tumor cells roam the body by evading the controls that keep normal cells in place. That fact offers clues to fighting cancer

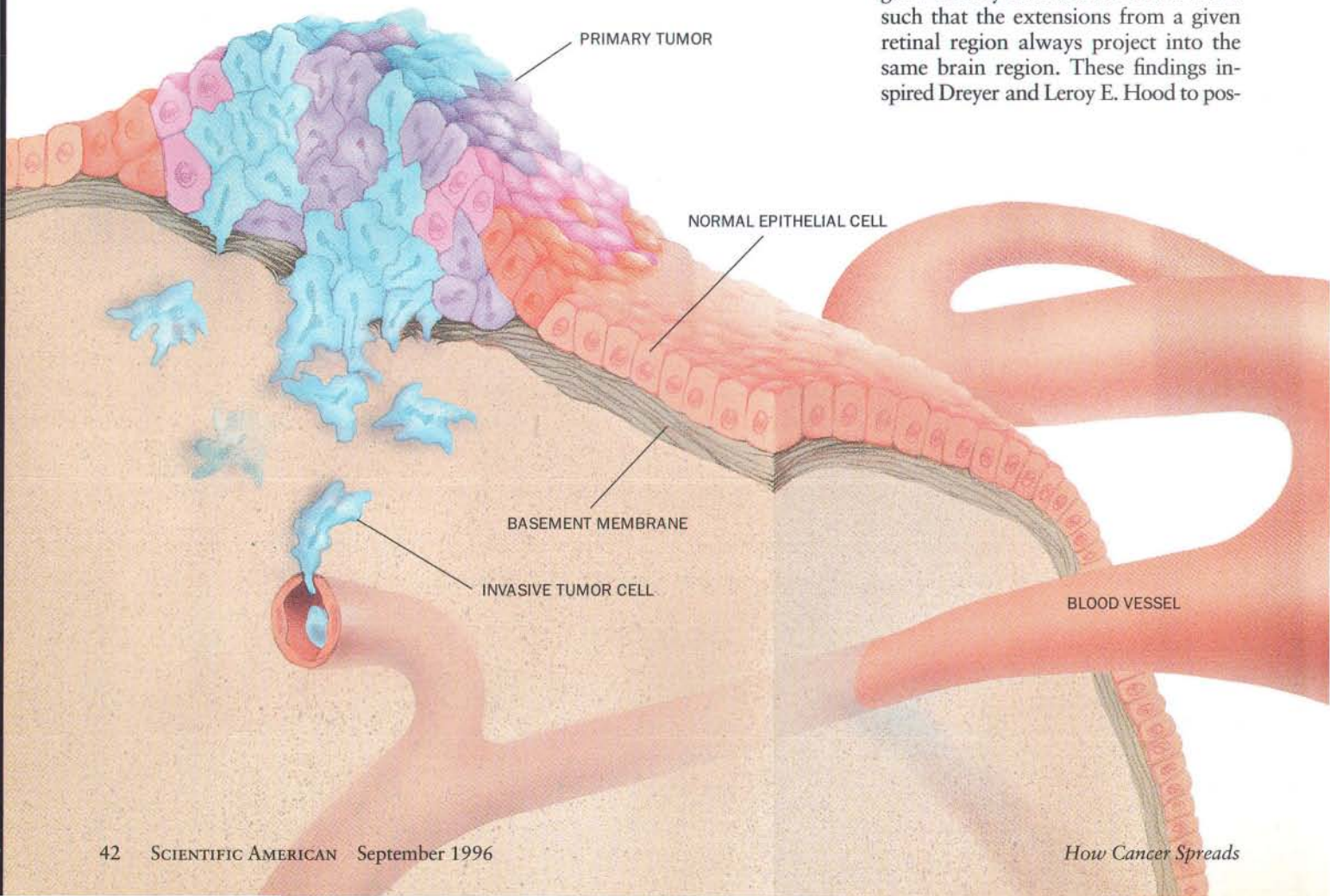
by Erkki Ruoslahti

Our body is a community of cells, in which each cell occupies a place appropriate for its tasks on behalf of the whole. With the exception of white blood cells, which patrol the body for microbial invaders and tissue damage, normal cells stay in the tissue of which they are part. Cancer cells, however, are rogues that trespass aggressively into other tissues.

Metastasis, the spread of cancer to distant sites in the body, is in fact what makes cancer so lethal. A surgeon can remove a primary tumor relatively easily, but a cancer that has metastasized usually reaches so many places that cure by surgery alone becomes impossible. For that reason, metastasis and the invasion of normal tissue by cancer cells are the hallmarks of malignancy. In countries where health care is primitive, one sometimes sees people who live with tumors as big as a soccer ball; the cells that make up these so-called benign tumors obviously overproliferate, but unlike malignant cancer cells, they do not invade or metastasize.

Acquiring the capabilities needed to emigrate to another tissue is therefore a key event in the development of a cancer. To metastasize successfully, cancer cells have to detach from their original location, invade a blood or lymphatic vessel, travel in the circulation to a distant site and establish a new cellular colony. At every one of these steps, they must escape many controls that, in effect, keep normal cells in place.

A fruitful way of understanding how tumor cells evade these controls has consequently been to study the signals that normally direct cells to their place in the body and keep them there during adulthood. When I was a postdoctoral fellow at the California Institute of Technology from 1968 to 1970, my mentor, William J. Dreyer, had become interested in those questions. Roger W. Sperry, also at Caltech, had found that the light-sensing nerve cells in the retina of the eye grow orderly extensions into the brain such that the extensions from a given retinal region always project into the same brain region. These findings inspired Dreyer and Leroy E. Hood to pos-



tulate their "area code" hypothesis, that a cell has on its surface an address system—written in one set of molecules and readable by molecules on other cells—that identifies where the cell should be.

It seemed to me at the time that if a molecular address system existed, something had to be wrong with it in cancer, because cancer cells did not stay put. I decided to try to find such molecules. As the work of many laboratories eventually showed, area code molecules do exist. They mediate cell adhesion, the anchoring of cells to adjacent structures.

In normal tissues, cells adhere both to one another and to an insoluble meshwork of protein filling the space between them, known as extracellular matrix. (This arrangement is particularly descriptive of the epithelia, which are the cell layers that form the outer surface of the skin and the lining of the gut, lungs and some other organs, and from which most cancer originates.) The two kinds of adhesion play different critical roles during tissue invasion and metastasis.

Cell-cell adhesion molecules appear to help keep cells in place; these molecules seem to be missing or compromised in cancer cells. For example, various kinds of cancers lose some or all of an intercellular adhesion molecule called E-cadherin. By manipulating this molecule in cultured cancer cells, one can change the cells' ability to invade tissues and form tumors. Walter Birchmeier, now at the Max Delbrück Center in Berlin, first showed that blocking the function of E-cadherin can turn a cultured lineage of cells from noninvasive to invasive. Conversely, restoring E-cadherin to cancer cells that lack it can negate their ability to form tumors when they are injected into mice. Thus, loosening of the adhesive restraint between cells is likely to be an important early step in cancer invasion.

The Need for Adhesion

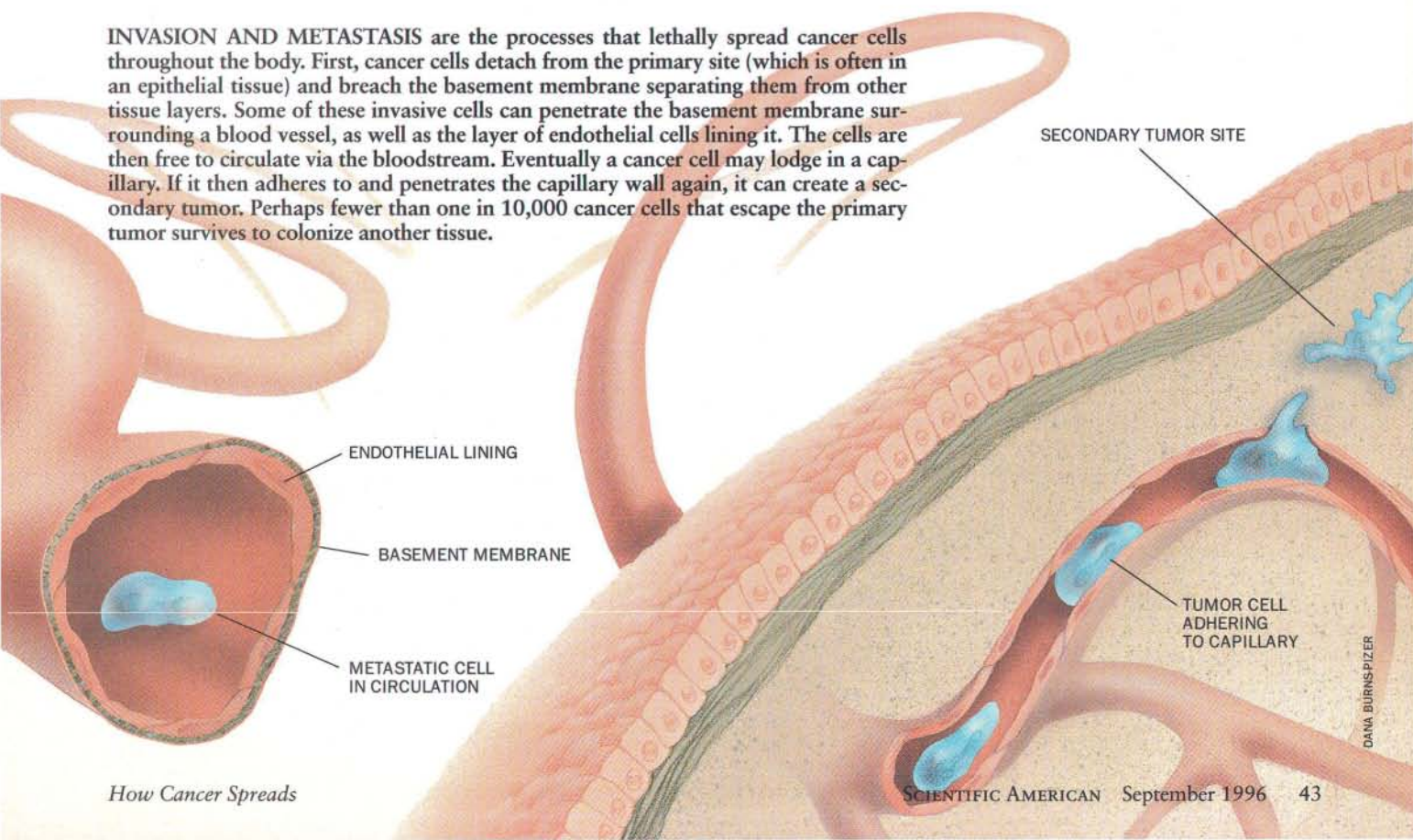
Adhesion to extracellular matrix, on the other hand, allows cells to survive and proliferate. As researchers have known for many years, cultured cells cannot reproduce until they attach to a surface, a phenomenon called anchorage dependence. This attachment is mediated by cell-surface molecules known as integrins that bind to the extracellular matrix. As Steven Frisch of the Burnham Institute in La Jolla, Calif., Martin A. Schwartz of the Scripps Research Institute, also in La Jolla, Calif., and Mina J. Bissell of the University of California at Berkeley have shown, only attachments involving integrins can satisfy the requirements of anchorage dependence.

My laboratory at the Burnham Institute, together with Tony Hunter of the Salk Institute for Biological Studies in San Diego, Calif., has recently shown that unattached cells stop growing because one of the nuclear proteins (known as the cyclin E–CDK2 complex) that regulates the growth and division of cells becomes less active. Inhibitory substances in the nuclei of these cells seem to shut down this protein.

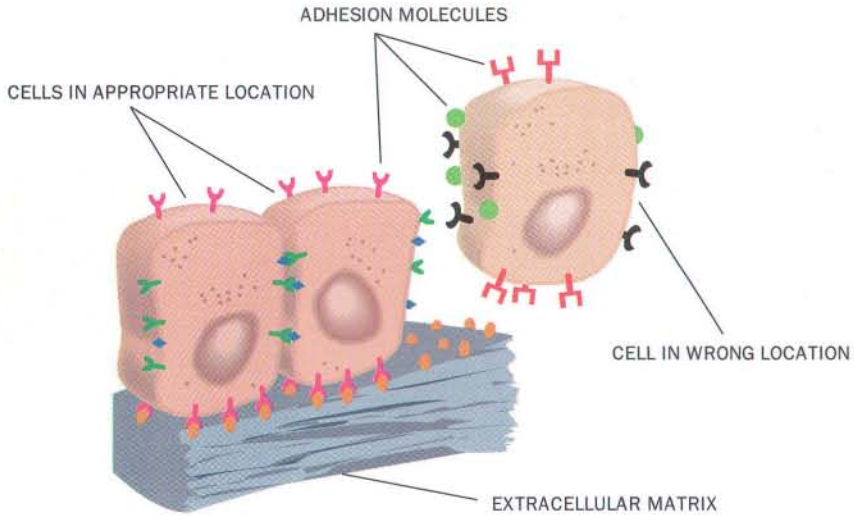
As Frisch, Schwartz and Bissell also discovered, when many types of cells are denied anchorage, they not only stop proliferating but commit suicide. That is, they spontaneously undergo specific changes that lead to their own death. This kind of cell death, in which the cell is an active participant, has been termed apoptosis.

My group has demonstrated that for cells to survive, the extracellular matrix to which they adhere must bear the right "area code," one that is probably found only in the extracellular matrix of select tissues. Moreover, they have to use the appropriate integrin to attach to the ma-

INVASION AND METASTASIS are the processes that lethally spread cancer cells throughout the body. First, cancer cells detach from the primary site (which is often in an epithelial tissue) and breach the basement membrane separating them from other tissue layers. Some of these invasive cells can penetrate the basement membrane surrounding a blood vessel, as well as the layer of endothelial cells lining it. The cells are then free to circulate via the bloodstream. Eventually a cancer cell may lodge in a capillary. If it then adheres to and penetrates the capillary wall again, it can create a secondary tumor. Perhaps fewer than one in 10,000 cancer cells that escape the primary tumor survives to colonize another tissue.



How Cancer Spreads



DANA BURNS-PIZER

"AREA CODES" FOR CELLS take the form of specific surface adhesion molecules and receptors. During development, a normal cell recognizes its proper place in the body by fitting its adhesion molecules to those on other cells and on the extracellular matrix. In cancer, something goes wrong with this address system.

trix. As all these results show, a molecular explanation for anchorage dependence is beginning to take shape, although much more critical detail still needs to be filled in.

Cellular suicide from lack of anchorage or from inappropriate anchorage is likely to be one of the safeguards that maintain the integrity of tissues. Cells usually cannot just float away from their tissue and establish themselves somewhere else, because they will die on the way. Yet cancer cells get around this requirement; they are anchorage independent. The cyclin E–CDK2 complex in such cells stays active whether the cells are attached or not.

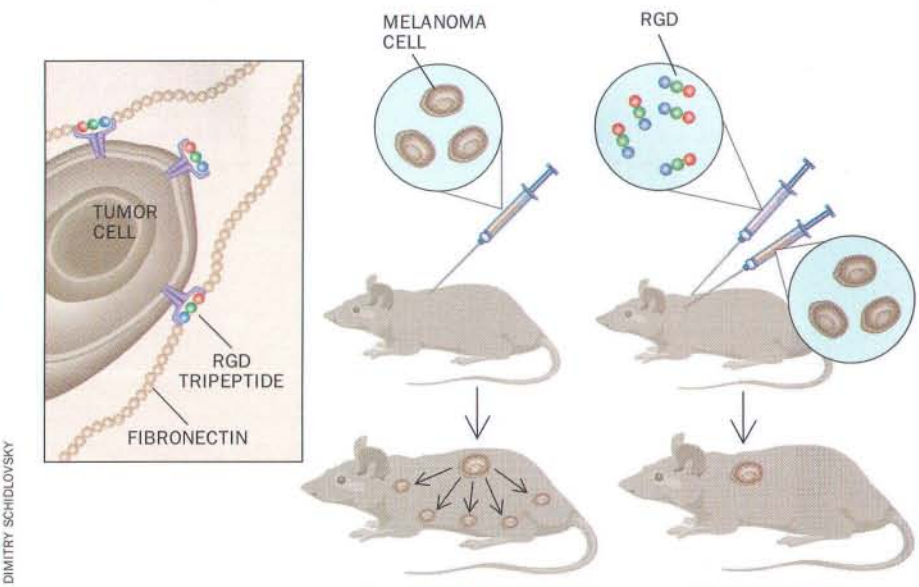
How cancer cells accomplish this trick is not fully understood, but it seems that oncogenes can be blamed. (Oncogenes are mutated versions of normal genes called proto-oncogenes; these mutations can turn normal cells into malignant ones; see "How Cancer Arises," by Robert A. Weinberg, on page 32.) In effect, as various experiments have shown, proteins made by these oncogenes convey a false message to the nucleus that the cell is properly attached when it is not, thereby stopping the cell from arresting its own growth and dying through apoptosis.

Anchorage dependence is only one of the constraints that a cancer cell must overcome to roam around the body. Epithelial cells, the most common sources of cancers, are separated from the rest of the body by a basement membrane, a thin layer of specialized extracellular matrix. Basement membranes form a barrier that most normal cells cannot breach, but cancer cells can [see "Cancer Cell Invasion and Metastasis," by Lance A. Liotta; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, February 1992].

This fact can be strikingly demonstrated by giving cells in a test tube an opportunity to invade through a natural or reconstructed basement membrane: cancer cells will penetrate it; normal ones will not. Furthermore, in this experiment, cells from metastatic cancers generally invade faster than those from nonmetastatic tumors. White blood cells, in keeping with their role as security patrol, are an exception to the rule that normal cells do not invade—they, too, are adept at penetrating tissues, including basement membranes. Cancer cells and white blood cells do so by releasing enzymes, called metalloproteinases, that dissolve basement membranes and other extracellular matrices. Other cells have less of these enzymes and more enzyme inhibitors.

After a cancer cell has passed through the basement membrane separating it from the rest of the tissue at its original site, it soon encounters another basement membrane, one surrounding a small blood vessel. (A blood vessel is usually nearby, because to sustain themselves successful tumors induce the growth of new blood vessels.) By penetrating this second basement membrane barrier and the layer of endothelial cells that form the vessel's inner lining, the cancer cell gains access to the bloodstream and is carried elsewhere in the body.

New technology makes it possible to detect cancer cells in the blood of pa-



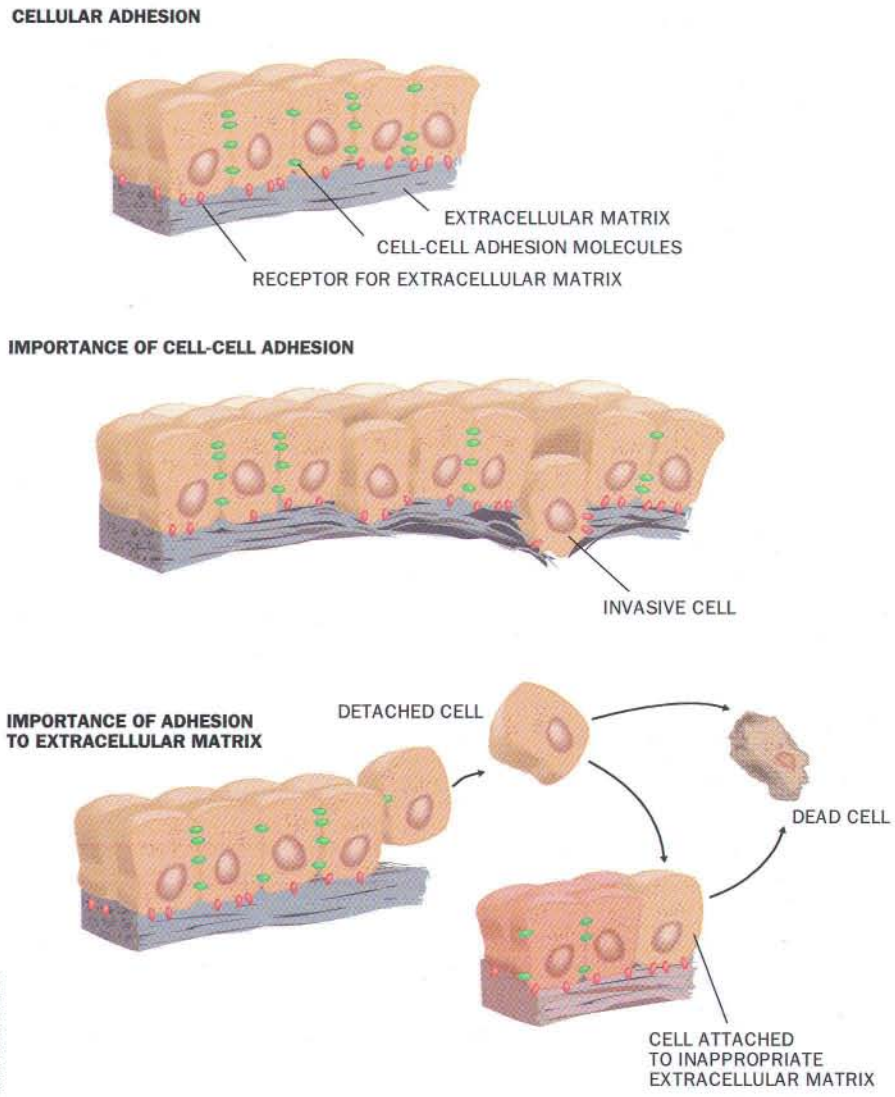
DIMITRY SCHIDLOVSKY

INHIBITING METASTASIS by interfering with cancer cell adhesion may someday be a therapeutic option. In mouse experiments, injections of RGD, a fragment of the protein fibronectin, discouraged melanoma cells from spreading to the lungs. Presumably, the RGD molecules blocked receptors that wandering cancer cells needed for binding to fibronectin in the extracellular matrix of tissues.

tients. Great strides have been made in identifying telltale marker molecules that distinguish a cell as having come from a specific tissue or type of tumor. At the same time, researchers have also developed ultrasensitive assays (based on such techniques as the polymerase chain reaction and monoclonal-antibody tagging) for detecting those molecules. From studies employing these methods, we know that malignant cells are often circulating even when a clinical examination cannot yet find evidence of the cancer's distant spread.

The further development of such tests may eventually improve therapies, by helping physicians determine whether they need to prescribe treatments beyond surgery for seemingly contained tumors. Detection of micrometastases in the blood and elsewhere in the body is a significant step forward in early diagnosis, and it is the vanguard of applied research on metastasis.

Some doctors have also wondered whether the manipulation of a tumor during its diagnosis or surgical removal might be enough to release cells into the circulation. The new testing methods should allow researchers to prove or disprove this ominous hypothesis, but to my knowledge, that has not yet been done. But even if the hypothesis proves to be correct, it is clear that the benefits of diagnostics and surgery far outweigh the possible risks from inaction.



CELLULAR ADHESION is a vital brake on the migration of normal cells. Two types apply to most body cells: cell-cell adhesion and adhesion to the extracellular matrix (*top*). If a cell cannot adhere to other cells, it may become more invasive and migrate through the matrix (*middle*). If a cell lacks adhesion to the extracellular matrix, it can detach from its native tissue (*bottom*). Usually, if a cell fails to reattach to the extracellular matrix or if it attaches to the wrong type of matrix, it dies through apoptosis (cellular suicide). Cancer cells, however, can survive without this adhesion.

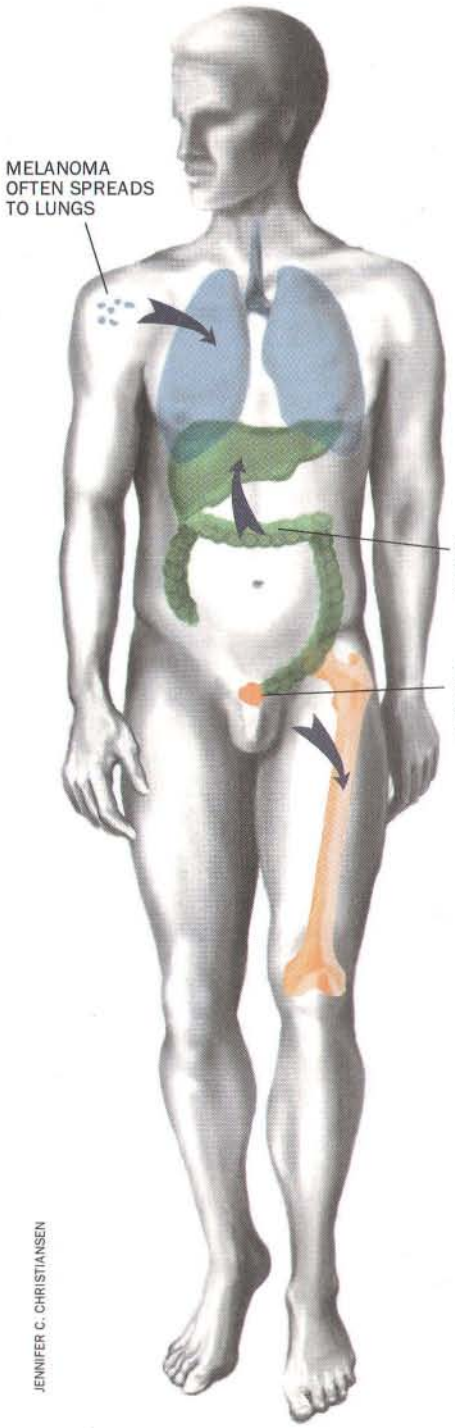
Vulnerable in the Blood

Fortunately, even when cancer cells do get into the circulation, the formation of secondary tumors is not inevitable. The circulating cell still faces several more hurdles: it must attach to the inner lining of a blood vessel, cross through it, penetrate the basement membrane at this new location, then invade the tissues beyond and begin multiplying. Each of these obstacles makes demands of the tumor cell that may go beyond those it faced in its home tissue. Furthermore, it may also be that many cancers cannot entirely overcome the defense mechanisms that keep our cells in the right places—another hindrance to metastasis.

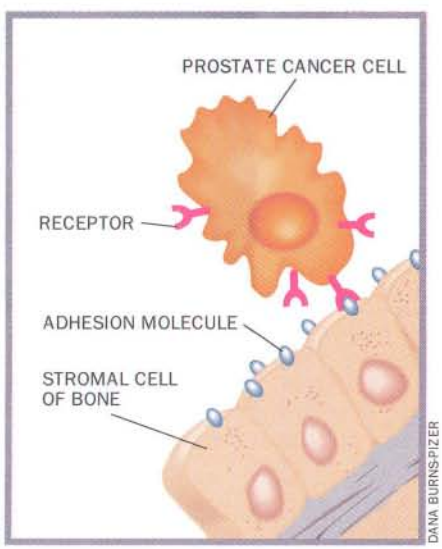
Probably fewer than one in 10,000 of the cancer cells that reach the circulation survive to found a new tumor at a distant site. The reasons for this apparent vulnerability while in the blood are not well understood—perhaps the anchorage independence of the tumor cells is not complete, and they sometimes die through apoptosis after all. In any case, researchers believe the cells need to attach fairly promptly to the inner lining of a small blood vessel.

Blood circulation explains much about why various metastatic cancers spread preferentially to certain tissues. Circulating tumor cells usually get trapped in the first vascular bed (or network of capillaries, the finest blood vessels) that they encounter "downstream" of their origin. The first vascular bed encountered by blood leaving most organs is in the lungs; only the intestines send their blood to the liver first. Accordingly, the lungs are the most common site of metastasis, followed by the liver.

In part, cancer cells lodge in small blood vessels because these cells tend to be large. Also, some cancers produce chemical factors that cause platelets, the tiny blood cells that initiate blood clotting, to aggregate around them. These aggregates effectively make the cancer cells even larger and stickier. (It is also



PATTERNS OF METASTASIS can be explained in part by the architecture of the circulatory system. Tumors in the skin and many other tissues often colonize the lungs first because the lungs contain the first capillary bed "downstream" of most organs. In contrast, because the intestines send their blood to the liver first, the liver is often the primary site of metastasis for colorectal cancers. Yet circulation is not the only factor: prostate cancer, for example, usually metastasizes to the bones. This tendency may result from an affinity between receptors on prostate tumor cells and molecules in bone tissues (*inset*).



noteworthy that platelets produce their own rich supply of growth factors, and these may help the cancer cells to which they bind survive in the blood. This may be why, in some experimental systems, drugs that interfere with platelet functions have anticancer effects.)

Physical trapping of cancer cells in the blood vessels at the site of metastasis is not the whole story, however. If it were, cancers would not spread so diversely through the body. Indeed, some types of cancer show a striking preference for organs other than those that receive their venous blood—witness the tendency of metastatic prostate cancer to move into the bones. Once again, the explanation seems to rest with the molecular address system on cell surfaces. A specific affinity between the adhesion molecules on cancer cells and those on the inner linings of blood vessels in the preferred tissues could explain the predilection of the cells to migrate selectively. Different concentrations of growth-promoting factors and hormones in various tissues may also play a part.

Recently, in an elegant piece of work, Ivan Stamenkovic of Harvard Medical School and his colleagues showed that he could direct the metastatic spread of tumor cells: he genetically engineered mice so that their livers displayed a target for an adhesion molecule found on certain tumor cells. As predicted, the tumor cells homed in on the liver. For these experiments, Stamenkovic borrowed receptors and targets from the molecular adhesion system used by white blood cells to leave the circulation and enter tissues. Although this system was artificial, it may be that cancers naturally mimic white blood cells in much this way—cancer cells do often manufacture certain molecules (called Le^x) important to the mobility of white blood cells in the body.

Finding the Body's Area Codes

If, as seems likely, there is much to be learned by identifying the molecular addresses that white blood cells and tumors use to find particular tissues, a method of doing so that Renata Pasqualini, a postdoctoral fellow in my laboratory, and I have devised should prove helpful. We adapted a technique for isolating biologically active molecules from huge collections, or "libraries," of diverse compounds. The theory behind this approach is that if one screens a sufficiently large number of compounds, one can find a molecule for almost any purpose.

We use a large library of peptides (small pieces of protein) as the source of our compounds. During the 1980s, George Smith, now at the University of Missouri, devised a technique for building such a library that employs a phage, a type of virus that infects bacteria. If a short random piece of DNA is inserted into the phage's gene for a surface protein, the phage will thereafter display on its surface a corresponding random peptide. Applying Smith's method, one can create an entire library of phages carrying a billion different peptides, with each individual phage expressing only one peptide.

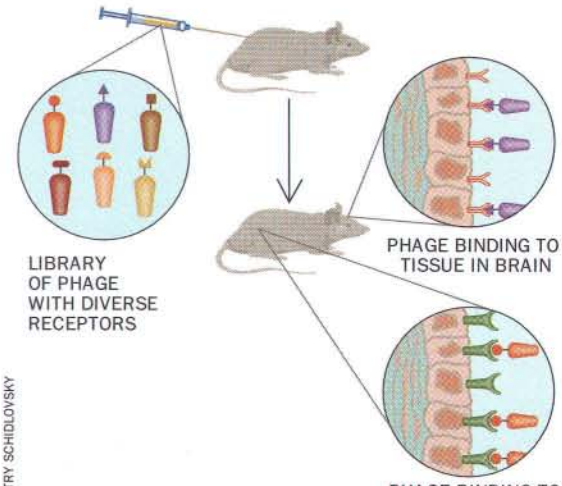
Our innovation was to test the affinities of peptides in this library by injecting the diverse viruses into a living ani-

mal. Any phage that carried a peptide with an affinity for molecules on a particular tissue would stick there. We looked for and found phages that bound preferentially to blood vessels in a mouse's brain and kidney. That success suggests that specific addresses for other organs could also be discovered and tested for their involvement in tumor cell homing.

Knowledge of the addresses that tumor cells seek may eventually pay off in clinical benefits. Given the vulnerability of tumor cells in transit, anything we can do to make it more difficult for tumor cells to attach to tissues may be beneficial to patients.

Initial work in that direction has started. In 1984 Michael D. Pierschbacher, who was then a postdoctoral associate in my laboratory and is now at Telios Pharmaceuticals, and I showed that all cells attach to fibronectin and several other extracellular matrix proteins at a structure made up of just three amino acids. This result was surprising, given that fibronectin is a long chain of 2,500 amino acids. We went on to show that artificial peptides containing this critical tripeptide (arginine-glycine-aspartic acid, designated as RGD) can act like a decoy, binding to cells' receptors for fibronectin and blocking their attachment to the matrix.

Martin Humphries and Kenneth M. Yamada, who were then at the National Cancer Institute, and Kenneth Olden, then at Howard University, subsequently showed that if they injected mice with cells from melanomas (lethal skin cancers), RGD peptides could prevent the cells from colonizing the animals' lungs. Such peptides can even prevent metastasis from melanoma tumors grown under the skin of mice—an experimental system that more closely resembles the human disease. David A. Cheresh of the Scripps Research Institute has shown that RGD compounds can also prevent the formation of new blood vessels that nurture tumors. Related compounds therefore may someday augment physicians' anticancer arsenal, but much work will have to be done first so that these peptides can be taken orally and will act longer.



PHAGE LIBRARY, consisting of billions of viruses sporting diverse receptor molecules, can help identify the area codes of tissues to which cancer cells home. In one experiment, a phage library was injected into a mouse. Some of the viruses bound uniquely in either the brain or the kidney.

Understanding Invasion

Disappointingly little is as yet understood in molecular detail about the mechanisms that turn a cancer from a locally growing tumor into a metastatic killer. Some of the same genetic changes that allow cancer cells to escape growth control and avoid apoptosis are clearly important in the early stages of metastatic spread, because they enable cells to survive without anchorage. What then turns on the programs that make the cancer invasive and metastatic, however, is not really known.

Genetic approaches similar to those used in the discovery of oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes have produced some candidates for genes with a specific role in metastasis. Further genetic comparisons of local and metastatic tumors may well explain their differences, but it is also possible that entirely new thinking is needed.

My own bias is that studying resistance to cancer invasion at both the tissue and genetic levels may provide important answers. For example, some tissues are not invaded by cancer: cartilage and, to an extent, the brain. Cancers originating elsewhere in the body can metastasize to the brain, but they do not truly invade the brain tissue—they just grow bigger within and near the blood vessels. Something about brain tissue seems to repel otherwise invasive tumor cells. Some species of animals also appear to be unusually resistant to developing cancers. I suspect that much could be learned if the molecular bases for these and other phenomena were understood. The fact that metastasis is the deadliest aspect of cancer adds the utmost urgency to our quest for this knowledge. SA

The Author

ERKKI RUOSLAHTI is president and chief executive officer of the Burnham Institute (formerly the La Jolla Cancer Research Foundation) in La Jolla, Calif., and adjunct professor in pathology at the University of California, San Diego. Born in Finland, he attended the University of Helsinki, where he received his bachelor's degree in 1961, his medical degree in 1965 and his medical doctorate in immunology in 1967. He has been the recipient of many internationally respected honors; in 1995 he was a Nobel Fellow at the Karolinska Institute and delivered a Nobel Forum Lecture.

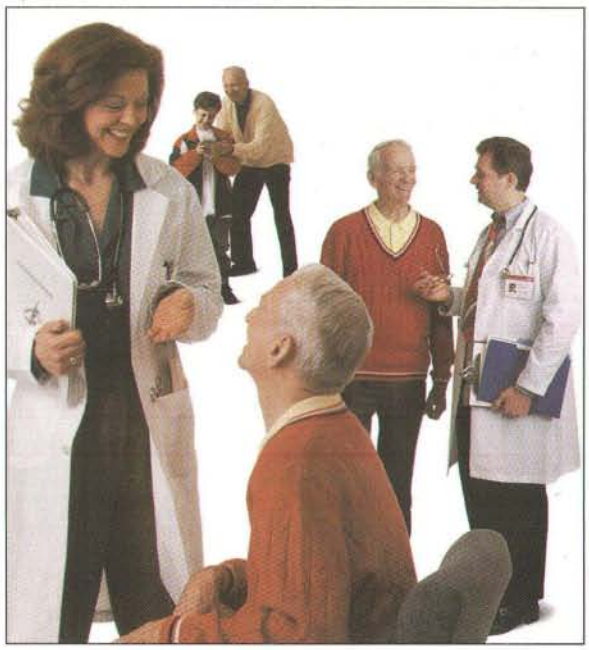
Further Reading

MOLECULAR MEDIATORS OF INTERACTIONS WITH EXTRACELLULAR MATRIX COMPONENTS IN METASTASIS AND ANGIOGENESIS. L. R. Bernstein and L. A. Liotta in *Current Opinion in Oncology,* Vol. 6, No. 1, pages 106–113; January 1994.

ANCHORAGE DEPENDENCE, INTEGRINS, AND APOPTOSIS. Erkki Ruoslahti and John C. Reed in *Cell,* Vol. 77, No. 4, pages 477–478; May 20, 1994.

EVOLUTIONS: METASTASIS. David I. Lewin in *Journal of NIH Research,* Vol. 8, pages 82–87; June 1996.

FIBRONECTIN AND INTEGRINS IN INVASION AND METASTASIS. S. K. Akiyama, K. Olden and K. M. Yamada in *Cancer and Metastasis Reviews,* Vol. 14, No. 3, pages 173–189; 1996.



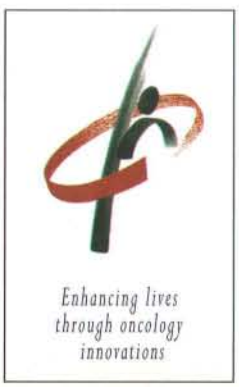
Hoechst Marion Roussel... Enhancing Lives Through Oncology Innovations

CORPORATE TECHNOLOGY REPORT

Providing products for greater well-being

We are three of the world's most respected names in health care: Hoechst pharmaceuticals, Marion Merrell Dow, and Roussel Uclaf, Hoechst's French pharmaceutical subsidiary. Together we are a leading global supplier of prescription products that improve the quality of human life.

We have a heritage of breakthrough discoveries in medicine that give doctors the ability to treat life-threatening diseases. We pioneered the development of innovative products for tuberculosis, diphtheria, tetanus, and heart disease. And we discovered the first truly safe local anesthetic.



With the strength of our heritage and a future devoted to making meaningful advances in treating serious diseases, we have chosen to focus on oncology as one of our target therapeutic areas. Hoechst Marion Roussel sponsors educational meetings, workshops, and symposia for health care professionals in the field of oncology. We also maintain memberships in the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO), the Oncology Nursing Society (ONS), the American Association of Cancer Research (AACR), and the American Society of Health System Pharmacists (ASHP).

In addition to contributing to professional leadership programs (including the ONS Leadership Weekend and Leadership Development Programs), Hoechst Marion Roussel also sponsors research funds for oncology fellows and nurses. Some of these sponsorships include the ASCO Young Investigators, Career Development and Merit Awards, and the ONS Foundation Research Fellowship.

Because we know that each new generation faces its own set of challenges, Hoechst Marion Roussel is also committed to scientific advances in the areas of therapeutic and supportive care research. Current areas of development include gene therapy, cell signaling, tumor targeting, and angiogenesis.

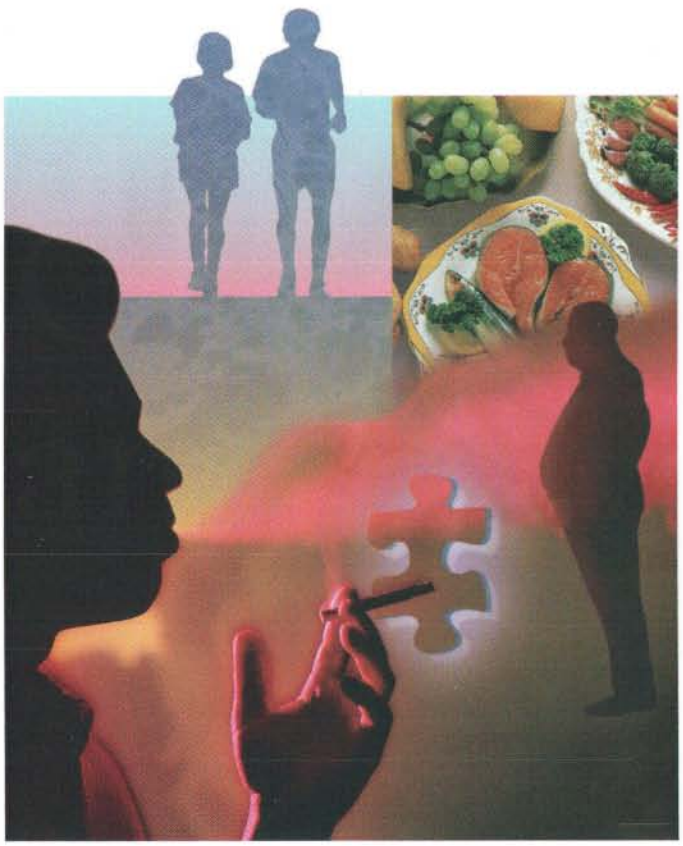
Hoechst Marion Roussel

A member of the Hoechst Group

Hoechst

96985601/1379M6

Causes and Prevention



Many of the culprits most publicized as causes of cancer actually account for a relatively small fraction of deaths. The good news: we can do more to protect ourselves. And a growing area of study—chemoprevention—is attempting to make the task easier.

CONTENTS

PHOTOMONTAGE BY PATRICIA McDERMOND
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF PHOTO RESEARCHERS, INC.

What Causes Cancer?

The top two causes—tobacco and diet—account for almost two thirds of all cancer deaths and are among the most correctable

by Dimitrios Trichopoulos, Frederick P. Li and David J. Hunter

Cancer, a major killer throughout human history, changed its grasp as humankind advanced industrially and technologically. Although the risk of a few types of cancer has declined dramatically in developed countries in this century, the incidence of the most significant forms of the disease has increased. Cancers of the lung, breast, prostate and colon and rectum have all become more frequent in countries where risk factors such as cigarette smoking, unhealthful dietary habits and exposure to dangerous chemicals at work or in the environment are now more common.

As industrialization has proliferated, so, too, have the suspected causes of cancer. In recent years, news accounts have been full of warnings about all manner of modern conveniences, from pharmaceuticals to cellular telephones. Meanwhile the pace of technological advance makes it more vital than ever to single out definitive causes of cancer from an ever expanding array of possibilities.

For this daunting task, researchers rely heavily on epidemiology. Epidemiologists identify factors that are common to cancer victims' history and way of life and evaluate them in the context of current biological understanding. Ultimately, the evidence may persuade researchers that one or more of these factors or characteristics "cause" the disease—that is to say, exposure to them significantly increases the odds of the illness developing.

Over the past half century, epidemiology has enabled researchers not only to ferret out many of the environmental (that is, noninherited) causes of cancer but also to estimate how many annual cancer deaths can be attributed to each one. Although the work cannot be used to predict what will happen to any one individual, it nonetheless provides broadly useful information for people seeking to minimize their exposure to known cancer-causing agents, or carcinogens.

Cancer seems to arise from the effects of two different kinds of carcinogens. One of these categories comprises agents that damage genes involved in controlling cell proliferation and migration. Cancer arises when a single cell accumulates a number of these mutations, usually over many years, and finally escapes from most restraints on proliferation. The mutations allow the cell and its descendants to develop additional alterations and to accumulate in increasingly large numbers, forming a tumor that consists mostly of these abnormal cells. Another category includes agents that do not damage genes but instead selectively enhance the growth of tumor cells or their precursors. The primary danger of malignancies is that they can metastasize, allowing some of their cells to migrate and thus carry the disease to other parts of the body. Finally, the illness can reach and disrupt one of the body's vital organs [see "How Cancer Arises," by Robert A. Weinberg, page 32].

Hardly any researchers doubt that repeatedly exposing parts of the body to, for example, chemicals in tobacco smoke, may eventually bring about the cellular damage that can lead to cancer. But the details of how most exposures give rise to such damage remain elusive. One long-standing theory holds that many environmental stressors, as well as aging and other life processes, play a role by increasing the generation in the body of so-called free radicals—chemically reactive fragments of molecules. By reacting with a gene's DNA, these fragments can damage and permanently mutate the gene. Other cancer-causing agents, such as some viruses, seem to act differently, by accelerating the rate of cell division.

Of course, the genes people inherit from their parents also influence cancer development. Some are born with mutations that directly promote excessive growth of certain cells or the formation of more mutations. Evolutionary pressure, however, assures that such mutations are rare; they are responsible for the development of fewer than 5 percent of fatal cancer cases. (Known genes linked to inherited human cancers are listed in the table on page 57.)

On the other hand, more general inherited physiological traits, in contrast to mutations in genes that regulate cell growth, contribute in some way to the vast majority of cancers. For example, inheriting fair skin makes a person more prone to skin cancer. But although fair-skinned people are more susceptible, they develop the disease only after extensive exposure to sunlight, an environmental carcinogen. Further, if someone inherits a normal genetic variant that causes the body to eliminate certain carcinogens relatively inefficiently, that person, after repeated exposure to the carcinogen, will be more likely to acquire the cancer than will a person who has a more efficient form of this gene.

One common question about cancer concerns the number of cases that would be expected to arise naturally in otherwise healthy, genetically normal individuals who somehow had managed to avoid all environmental carcinogens. Only a rough estimate is available, arrived at by comparing populations with very different cancer patterns. Perhaps a quarter of all cancers are "hard core"—in other words, they would develop even in a world free of external influences, simply because of the production of carcinogens within the body and the occurrence of unrepaired genetic mistakes.

Epidemiologists have shown, however, that in most cases, the environment (including lifestyle factors) plays a profound role. How strong are these data? The weak link in cancer epidemiology is the inability to conduct trials in which groups of people, selected at random, are exposed to potential carcinogens or even to potential cancer-preventing compounds. Randomized studies of carcinogens are obviously unacceptable for ethical reasons; unfortunately, lack of

NINA BERMAN *SIPA*

FATTY FOODS such as these being consumed in a New York City restaurant can contribute to a variety of cancers.

such studies can seriously complicate the interpretation of the evidence.

Consequently, we can consider epidemiologic studies to have identified a cause of the disease only when people who have a given type of cancer are consistently found to have a history of unusually high exposure to a particular agent. Alternatively, a link can be declared when a weak relation between an agent and a form of cancer is consistently reported in a variety of circumstances and backed by persuasive biological plausibility.

Accordingly, we have based our assessment of the evidence for what causes cancer either on overwhelming epidemiologic data for which the precise biological mechanisms remain speculative or on weak but consistent epidemiologic findings that are also biologically credible. The role of vegetables and fruits in cancer prevention, for example, tends to be in the former category, whereas the carcinogenic potential of secondhand smoke fits into the latter: relatively few people are afflicted with lung cancer after exposure to secondhand smoke alone, but the connection has been documented consistently and credibly explained.

We have culled the data presented here from hundreds of studies, and the views we offer are shared by many, if not most, researchers and health professionals. In keeping with the standard practice in cancer epidemiology, our focus is on fatal rather than all cancer cases, to avoid distortions introduced by common cancers that only rarely become lethal. All the results we discuss apply to the U.S. and to other industrial nations unless we indicate otherwise. The data for developed countries do not necessarily apply to developing countries, in which cancer-causing infections and, increasingly, some occupational carcinogens tend to be more prevalent.

Tobacco Smoke Is Top Carcinogen

More than half the cancer deaths in the U.S.—perhaps even 60 percent—can be attributed to tobacco smoke and diet. Smoking causes 30 percent of cancer deaths, making tobacco smoke the single most lethal carcinogen in the U.S. Apart from smoking and diet, other environmental factors each contribute to only a few percent of total deaths.

Smoking, mainly of cigarettes, causes cancer of the lung, upper respiratory tract, esophagus, bladder and pancreas and probably of the stomach, liver and kidney. Smoking is implicated in chronic myelocytic leukemia and may also cause cancer of the colon and rectum and other organs. Whether smoking will result in malignancy depends on several factors, including the frequency of smoking, the cigarettes' tar content and—most important—the duration of the habit. Taking up the habit while very young substantially amplifies the risk. The risks vary from one type of cancer to another; thus, on average, smokers are twice as likely to be afflicted with cancer of the bladder but eight times more likely to contract cancer of the lung.

Passive smoking, or inhalation of tobacco smoke in the environment, causes much less lung cancer than active smok-

ing does. Nevertheless, a few thousand people die every year in the U.S. from cancers attributable mainly to secondhand smoke. Thus, passive smoking is as much a killer as general outdoor air pollution or household exposure to the radioactive gas radon (which is emitted naturally from the earth in some areas).

Eat Right, Live Longer

Only diet rivals tobacco smoke as a cause of cancer in the U.S., accounting for a comparable number of fatalities each year. Animal (saturated) fat in general and red meat in particular are associated with several cancers; both are strongly linked to malignancies of the colon and rectum; saturated fats have been implicated in prostate cancer as well.

A few issues concerning dietary fat still puzzle researchers. Investigations with animals have indicated that under specific conditions certain types of polyunsaturated fat increase the risk for cancer at some bodily sites, but we have little supportive human evidence. Also, rigorous epidemiologic studies have not supported some of the early and still popular hypotheses concerning dietary fat and cancer. For example, high intake of fats (typically, animal fat) in adults has not been shown to increase risk for breast cancer in most investigations that have followed large groups of women for up to a dozen years.

Among nonnutrient food additives, only salt appears to be a significant contributor to cancer. Studies of populations outside the U.S. suggest that high intake can lead to stomach cancer. Also, in Southeast Asia, very young children who eat a great deal of salty fish tend to have excessive rates of cancer of the nasopharynx (the upper part of the pharynx, which reaches the nasal passages). Similarly, drinking beverages while they are very hot, including maté, a South American tea-like drink, has been shown to increase the risk of esophageal cancer.

In contrast, most investigations of coffee (with or without caffeine) have not linked it to human cancer. Moreover, it does not seem to matter how the beverage is sweetened: there is ample evidence that artificial sweeteners, in reasonable quantities, do not cause cancer.

The links between diet and cancer, however, may have as much to do with what is *not* in a diet as with what is. Skimping on vegetables and fruits can be a significant contributor to many different kinds of cancer, for reasons that are not fully known. The protective effects of these foods may derive from specific constituents that block the carcinogenic activities of substances made in our own bodies. For instance, antioxidants in foods are believed to neutralize free radicals. Other chemicals in healthful foods, it has been suggested, block the signals that such steroids as estrogen send—signals that cause cells in the breast and elsewhere to proliferate. Yet foods contain thousands of chemicals, and investigators remain unsure of which ones, and which combinations, are most potent as cancer blockers.

Diet can exert its effects not only through the type of calories consumed but also through their quantity. Researchers believe that taking in more energy than is expended can be harmful throughout life, probably through different mechanisms at different ages. Children who overeat and exercise too little often grow more and seem to be at a higher risk of acquiring certain cancers.

SLIM FILMS

These findings have been most striking for breast cancer. Excessive childhood growth, as reflected in attained height and weight, seems to push girls into menstruating when they are relatively young, and early menstruation is a major risk factor for breast cancer (it may contribute to other cancers as well). Such early-life factors as excessive growth caused by overeating and insufficient exercise could be a component cause in perhaps 5 percent of cancers of the breast and prostate, which become fatal relatively frequently.

Obesity in adult life is an important cause of cancer of the endometrium (the lining of the uterus) and an established but relatively weak cause of postmenopausal breast cancer. For unknown reasons, obesity also appears to increase the risk for cancers of the colon, kidney and gallbladder.

Consumption of large quantities of alcoholic beverages, particularly by smok-

Microbes That Cause Cancer

More than 100 years ago researchers began considering the possibility that cancerous tumors were caused by viruses and other infectious agents. In the decades that followed, though, their attempts to verify this theory failed. Introduction of various infections into animals usually did not yield cancer. Gradually, the theory fell out of favor.

Over the past 20 years, however, investigators have not only proved that many different types of cancer indeed stem from viruses, bacteria or parasites, they have also learned that perhaps as many as 15 percent of the world's cancer deaths can be traced to them. The vast majority of these cases occur in developing countries, where communicable diseases are much more prevalent. Yet even in such developed countries as the U.S., about 5 percent of cancer fatalities result from diseases brought on by infections. Determining exact numbers has been difficult because it often takes several decades for an infection to lead to cancer.

The most common cancer-causing pathogens are the DNA viruses, which propagate by invading the living cells of a host and using the cells' DNA-synthesizing and protein-making machinery to generate copies of themselves. Of these carcinogenic agents, the two most important are the human papillomaviruses types 16 and 18, which are sexually transmitted, and the hepatitis B virus. The papillomaviruses can lead to cancer of the cervix, among other types of cancer, and the hepatitis B virus can cause liver cancer.

Although papillomavirus types 16 and 18 are responsible for 70 to 80 percent of the world's cases of cancer of the genitals and anus, as many as 30 other papillomavirus types may be involved in these cancers, which affect women far more often than men. And in certain places—notably Japan—the hepatitis C virus causes almost as many cases of liver cancer as hepatitis B does. All told, viral infec-

tions, mainly hepatitis, cause as many as 80 percent of liver cancer cases around the globe.

Several other viruses have also been found to cause various kinds of cancer, some of which are fairly rare. For instance, Epstein-Barr virus, which is best known for producing mononucleosis, at times becomes carcinogenic as well. It is believed to contribute worldwide to approximately half the cancers of the upper pharynx, as well as to more than 30 percent of all cases of Hodgkin's disease, 10 percent of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and some gastric cancers. The human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) can cause the soft-tissue cancer known as Kaposi's sarcoma and also lymphoma, a type of cancer characterized by an abnormal proliferation of lymphoid tissue.

EM UNIT, CVL WEYBRIDGE *Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.*

PAPILLOMAVIRUS is a significant cause of cancer.

Helicobacter pylori, the only bacterium linked to cancer, apparently gives rise to the disease in part by causing stomach ulcers [see "The Bacteria behind Ulcers," by Martin J. Blaser; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, February]. *H. pylori* is strongly associated with the occurrence of stomach cancer, although the proportion of cases attributable to the bacterium remains to be determined.

Researchers are now trying to understand why these pathogens give rise to cancer in some infected people but not in others. Lately experimental evidence has pointed to secondary occurrences in the body, which can interfere with the host's immune system before an infection becomes cancerous. More knowledge about the details of this chain of events may lead to such new preventive measures as vaccines that block the secondary events, prohibiting a disease from becoming cancerous.

—D.T., F.P.L. and D.J.H.

ers, increases the risk of cancer of the upper respiratory and digestive tracts, and alcoholic cirrhosis frequently leads to liver cancer. Although modest drinking does seem to reduce the risk of heart disease, converging data suggest that intake of as few as one or two drinks a day may contribute to breast and perhaps colon and rectal cancer.

Alcoholic beverages have been estimated to contribute to about 3 percent (beyond the 30 percent attributed to diet) of total cancer mortality in the developed world. A sedentary way of life contributes to an additional 3 percent. And food additives, mainly salt, may contribute to another 1 percent.

Radiation and You

Unlike smoking and the dietary practices we have discussed, many other threats, albeit less consequential ones, are rather difficult to avoid. Various forms of radiation—from the sun, electric power lines, household appliances, cellular telephones and naturally occurring, radioactive radon gas—are the most highly publicized of the threats that have been proposed. Radiation causes perhaps 2 percent of all cancer deaths. Most of these fatalities result from natural sources of radiation—the majority can be attributed to melanoma skin cancer triggered by the sun's ultraviolet rays.

Within the ultraviolet spectrum that reaches the earth's surface, the most troubling component consists of the higher-frequency ultraviolet B rays, which can damage DNA. Ultraviolet B rays alone cause more than 90 percent of skin cancers, including melanomas, which are much more frequently fatal than all other forms of skin cancer [see "Sunlight and Skin Cancer," by David J. Leffell and Douglas E. Brash; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, July]. Many researchers now believe that the frequency of sunburns during childhood, rather than the cumulative exposure to sunlight, is the key factor in bringing about melanoma. People who tan but do not burn, therefore, are at much less risk.

Another natural source of radiation is radon, a colorless, odorless and radioactive gas that is emitted from the earth in some regions. It can seep into buildings and collect in ground-floor or basement areas. Prolonged breathing of the gas at very high levels, found mostly in underground mines, has been tied to increased incidence of lung cancer. This is not a significant cause of cancer in the general population, however, and radon levels are usually lowered by improving the ventilation of a building or mine.

The electric and magnetic fields generated by power lines and electric household appliances, which oscillate at 60 cycles per second in the U.S., are known as extremely low frequency fields. They have been intensively studied for possible cancer-causing effects. So far the collective evidence is confusing, selectively propagated and generally incorrectly perceived. Too often these accounts sow fear by discounting basic science. A cancer-causing genetic mutation cannot be induced by radiation, as far as anyone can discern, unless molecules in the body become charged by gaining or losing one or more electrons—in other words, unless they become ionized. And the photons associated with extremely low frequency fields would have to be a million times more energetic before they could ionize molecules.

Epidemiologic studies have indicated, however, that these fields may somehow increase to a marginal degree the risk of childhood leukemia; the evidence for other cancers is considerably weaker. It is not possible to discount completely the possibility that power lines contribute to some forms of cancer, but the evidence, in our view, is scant. Even for childhood leukemia, the collective evidence is so thin that it can be interpreted either way—as showing a genuine link with the disease or merely as reflecting flaws in the epidemiologic data.

The fear of extremely low frequency fields seems to have several underlying causes. One is the incorrect association made between such fields and other forms of radiation. Another is the wide publicity that has been given to relatively small and preliminary studies.

Radio-frequency electromagnetic radiation, which is emitted by cellular telephones, microwave and other wireless systems and even living creatures, is quite distinct from extremely low frequency fields. Even at the much higher radio frequencies, though, photon energy is still several orders of magnitude below the level required to ionize a molecule. In urban settings, where radio-frequency fields are strongest, ambient energy levels are less than one one-hundredth of those emitted by a human be-

Carcinogens in the Workplace

Chemical/ Physical Agent	Cancer Type	Exposure of General Population	Examples of Workers Frequently Exposed or Exposure Sources
Arsenic	Lung, skin	Rare	Insecticide and herbicide sprayers; tanners; oil refinery workers
Asbestos	Mesothelioma, lung	Uncommon	Brake-lining, shipyard, insulation and demolition workers
Benzene	Myelogenous leukemia	Common	Painters; distillers and petrochemical workers; dye users; furniture finishers; rubber workers
Diesel exhaust	Lung	Common	Railroad and bus-garage workers; truck operators; miners
Formaldehyde	Nose, nasopharynx	Rare	Hospital and laboratory workers; manufacture of wood products, paper, textiles, garments and metal products
Man-made mineral fibers	Lung	Uncommon	Wall and pipe insulation; duct wrapping
Hair dyes	Bladder	Uncommon	Hairdressers and barbers (inadequate evidence for customers)
Ionizing radiation	Bone marrow, several others	Common	Nuclear materials; medicinal products and procedures
Mineral oils	Skin	Common	Metal machining
Nonarsenical pesticides	Lung	Common	Sprayers; agricultural workers
Painting materials	Lung	Uncommon	Professional painters
Polychlorinated biphenyls	Liver, skin	Uncommon	Heat-transfer and hydraulic fluids and lubricants; inks; adhesives; insecticides
Radon (alpha particles)	Lung	Uncommon	Mines; underground structures
Soot	Skin	Uncommon	Chimney sweeps and cleaners; bricklayers; insulators; firefighters; heating-unit service workers

MARIA SUTTON

ing. Investigators are currently studying the radio emanations associated with cellular telephones for a possible link to brain cancer, but so far no empirical evidence supports such a connection. (The only major study so far did not establish a connection.)

On the other hand, the radiation that comes from nuclear materials and reactions is sufficiently energetic to ionize molecules and is unquestionably carcinogenic. But, again, the general public tends to overestimate the risk posed by low levels of radiation. Among Japanese residents of Hiroshima and Nagasaki who survived longer than approximately one year after the atomic bomb blasts—and who were exposed to radiation levels far higher than most people will ever encounter—only 1 percent have died from cancers known to be related to radiation. Epidemiologic studies have failed to validate claims that the incidence of leukemia is higher among those living near nuclear plants and among children of nuclear reactor workers.

Of Work, Medications and Microbes

A number of substances now known to be carcinogenic, including asbestos, benzene, formaldehyde, diesel exhaust and radon, were initially revealed to be dangerous in unfortunate "natural experiments" involving exposures to very high concentrations in the workplace [*see table at left*]. In recent years, however, the control of such occupational carcinogens, at least in the developed world, has brought about a little known success story in public health.

Strict control measures in the workplace over the past 50 years have shrunk the proportion of fatal cancer cases caused by occupational exposures to perhaps less than 5 percent. Before 1950 the proportion may have been twice as great. Unfortunately, though, occupation-associated cancers, which occur mostly in the lung, skin, bladder and the blood-forming (hematopoietic) system, are likely to increase in developing countries as they rapidly industrialize.

Medical treatment, like workplace exposure, has generated unintended insights into cancer causation, as some procedures or medications have turned out to have carcinogenic effects. Ironic as it may seem, medical products and procedures may be responsible for about 1 percent of all cancers. Still, their overall clinical usefulness far outweighs the risks. This is true of many cancer therapies, including radiation and chemotherapy. Some effective drugs or combinations of such drugs used to treat cancers such as Hodgkin's disease can cause acute leukemia in about 5 percent of survivors and, in rare cases, bladder cancer.

Immunosuppressive drugs can also be carcinogenic, causing certain types of lymphomas; supplemental estrogens taken to offset menopausal symptoms have been linked to endometrial and breast cancer. And steroids used for treatment of aplastic anemia have been associated with rare cases of liver cancer.

Early reports indicated that tamoxifen, an experimental breast cancer drug, could occasionally cause endometrial cancer, although recent studies are more equivocal. Fertility drugs that mimic the effects of gonadotropins, including Pergonal, are suspected of increasing the risk of ovarian cancer. Growth hor-

mones administered to children might elevate their risk of leukemia. Some diuretics could increase the risk of kidney cancer, and some cholesterol-lowering drugs may heighten the risk of colon and rectal cancer, but for these, too, the evidence is very tenuous.

Oral contraceptives slightly increase the risk of some types of liver tumors and, under certain conditions, of premenopausal breast cancer. Yet birth-control pills also reduce the risk of ovarian and endometrial cancer and perhaps that of colon and rectal cancer as well.

Viruses and other infectious agents, overlooked as causes of cancer only 30 years ago, may contribute to about 5 percent of all fatal cases in developed countries [*see box on pages 52 and 53*].

Pollution's Share

Environmental pollution in the air, water and soil plays an infrequent and difficult-to-document role in human cancer. Harmful effects are hard to verify because they generally result from exposure to several carcinogens at very low levels. Nevertheless, it is reasonable to assume that pollutants could contribute to about 2 percent of fatal cancers, mainly of the lung and bladder.

Ecological studies, which are similar to epidemiologic ones but with less specificity and detail, indicate that lung cancer rates in polluted cities exceed those in rural areas. And, in fact, data do suggest that urban smokers are more likely to develop lung cancer than rural smokers—even after accounting for smoking behavior (how heavily a person smokes, what kind of cigarettes are smoked and so on). Yet urban nonsmokers do not appear to be at increased risk for lung cancer.

SLIM FILMS

Taken together, such studies, emission inventories and chemical analyses of air samples from urban areas suggest that long-term exposure to high levels of air pollution could increase lung cancer risk by about 50 percent, especially among smokers. (Although this figure may seem like a great increase in risk, heavy smoking, by itself, increases risk by about 2,000 percent.) Diesel exhaust, which is probably more carcinogenic than nondiesel exhaust, has been proposed as a likely carcinogenic factor.

Some researchers maintain that organic compounds whose molecules contain chlorine and ring-shaped components increase the risk of breast cancer and, perhaps, other malignancies related to the female hormone estrogen. Among these compounds are ones produced when certain pesticides, such as DDT, have been altered in the body. The underlying hypothesis is that these substances, called xenoestrogens, mimic the body's own (endogenous) estrogens and thus stimulate cell division in the breast and other reproductive organs. The empirical evidence in humans is scant, however, and the estrogenic potency of xenoestrogens is much weaker than that of endogenous estrogens.

Proximity to hazardous-waste sites or contaminated wells may have health effects, but it has not been shown to impart a measurable excess risk for cancer. It is not certain whether the lack of association is genuine or a reflection of the limited capacity of statistical methods to document a very weak correlation.

A few studies have suggested—without convincingly demonstrating—a tenuous positive association between water chlorination and cancer of the bladder. All over the world, but especially in developed countries, chlorination is used to kill germs in drinking water. Even if

Why Community Cancer Clusters Are Often Ignored

The 10-foot-long map of Lorraine Pace's Long Island community of West Islip is spread out on her dining-room table. Pace, a 55-year-old breast cancer survivor and the 20th of her neighbors to be diagnosed with the disease, points out patches of yellow-highlighted squares scattered across the map. "These are the breast cancer cases," she explains. Within days of undergoing a lumpectomy in 1992, Pace had galvanized some of the women represented by these squares, and the group—the West Islip Breast Cancer Coalition—spent the next year and a half mapping breast cancer cases in an effort to pinpoint "hot spots" of the disease. They hoped these spots could be correlated with potential environmental threats—and their illness linked to a cause.

At first glance, such community cancer clusters would appear to be the perfect vehicle for identifying cancer-causing agents: by tracing factors to which all the individuals were exposed, investigators should in theory be able to spot a culprit. And the public certainly views clusters that way. State health departments in the U.S. received about 1,500 requests for cancer cluster investigations in 1989, according to a survey by Daniel Wartenberg of the Robert Wood Johnson Medical School in New Jersey, and that number has continued to increase.

But most cancer clusters appear to happen by chance. It is largely for this reason that health officials these days are usually reluctant to investigate reports of localized excesses in cancer incidence—even the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention gave up routinely investigating cancer clusters in 1990 because they required such intensive resources and yielded so little information in return.

Indeed, although several known carcinogens have been discovered through occupational or medical clusters (for instance, vinyl chloride's link to angiosarcoma in workers who make polyvinyl chloride or the connection of diethylstilbestrol, or DES, to gynecologic cancers in daughters of women who took the drug during pregnancy), only one community cancer cluster has ever been traced to an environmental cause. In that case, researchers linked an epidemic of a rare respiratory cancer called mesothelioma in a Turkish village to an asbestoslike mineral, erionite, that was abundant in the soil.

Among the reasons for which health officials may discount a community's suspicion of common cause is that local groups often lump together different types of cancers (which are unlikely to be triggered by the same carcinogen). These citizens tend to include cases that were diagnosed before the afflicted individuals moved into the neighborhood, or they conduct what the epidemiologist Robert W. Miller of the National Cancer Institute calls epidemiologic gerrymandering: "They find the cas-

Continued on page 56

chlorination did present an extremely small cancer risk—which is by no means certain—the danger would be more than outweighed by chlorine's capacity to prevent the spread of such waterborne diseases as cholera, dysentery and typhoid fever. Investigations of water fluoridation have been reassuring.

Reproductive and Gynecologic Factors

Among the body's natural processes, those related to reproduction are most closely linked, epidemiologically, to cancer. For women, early age at menarche, late age at first pregnancy and late age at menopause tend to increase the risk for breast cancer; the more offspring a woman has had, the less likely she is to develop cancer of the endometrium, ovary or breast.

Physiological rationales for these observations are elusive, for the most part. No one knows exactly why, for example, early menarche and late menopause are associated with breast cancer. Both may simply extend the period in a woman's life when she is exposed to her own sex hormones, especially estrogen.

The protective effects of having children early in life, on the other hand, may accrue by causing breast cells to become more differentiated. Differentiation restricts the ability of a cell to grow abnormally, change its type and survive in other types of tissue. A first pregnancy at a young age may differentiate breast cells early in life, after which they would be much less susceptible to carcinogens.

In developed countries, reproductive behavior is determined mainly by social and economic forces. Thus, for educational, career-related and other reasons, millions of women in these countries are putting off childbearing and are also having fewer children, in general, than their mothers and grandmothers did. Unfortunately, such life decisions will lead to higher rates of breast and ovarian cancer. The postponing of first pregnancies by younger women in the U.S. that has already occurred will increase their breast cancer rates by about 5 to 10 percent within the next 25 years.

Induced abortions have been associated in some studies with a slight increase in breast cancer risk, but the data are not conclusive. Several other associations between cancers of the reproductive tract and certain conditions or behaviors have been noted, but they, too, are not conclusive, are of marginal importance or are thought to be surrogates for actual causes. For example, having multiple sexual partners was once believed to increase a woman's risk of acquiring cancer of the cervix. Instead the increased risk probably reflects greater exposure to sexually transmitted, and potentially carcinogenic, human viruses.

Taking all these considerations into account, we might attribute around 4 percent of cancer deaths to reproduction-related factors.

Socioeconomic Differences

Differences in cancer rates among socioeconomic groups can usually be attributed to differences in lifestyle. Underprivileged people have higher rates of cancers of the mouth, stomach, lung, cervix and liver and of a type of esophageal cancer (squamous cell cancer). Pov-

---

es, draw boundaries around the cases, and say, 'Aha, we've found a cluster.'"

Even when such assemblages are ruled out, most clustered cases that initially appear to be statistically significant turn out to be simply naturally occurring spikes in cancer incidence. According to Raymond R. Neutra of the California Department of Health Services, probability theory suggests that 17 percent of the 29,000 towns or census tracts in the U.S. will have at least one of the 80 recognized types of cancer elevated in any given decade, producing 4,930 chance clusters. This high false positive rate is further compounded by the problem of statistical legitimacy—most reported cancer clusters are too small (often fewer than 10 cases) to be judged conclusively.

ADAM J. FERNANDEZ

LORRAINE PACE mapped a Long Island breast cancer cluster.

Even when there is a potential cause in the environment—and a biologically plausible hypothesis of how it might contribute to cancer—trying to trace cancer cases to a specific cause still poses unique challenges. "Cancer cases are clinically nonspecific—you can't look at a leukemia case clinically and say, 'Ah, this is radiation-caused leukemia,'" explains Clark W. Heath of the American Cancer Society. This problem is exacerbated by cancer's latency. Unlike outbreaks of infectious diseases, which can be linked to some recent exposure, a cluster of cancer cases might have its roots in an exposure that occurred 10 to 20 years earlier.

"Reconstructing a person's exposure history is a tremendous scientific challenge," says G. Iris Obrams of the NCI. "For one thing, none of us can reliably recall all the things we've been exposed to. And the further back we go, the more uncertain we are about the accuracy of exposure information and the more likely it is that measurement techniques have changed as well." Obrams also notes that one has to take into account many known cancer risk factors when trying to assess the impact of environmental agents, in part because the disease may be triggered by a combination of environmental, genetic and other factors.

In conducting its own crude version of a cancer cluster investigation, the West Islip Breast Cancer Coalition could never have overcome all these obstacles. But together with many other reports of breast cancer clusters on Long Island, the West Islip situation managed to point epidemiologists in the right direction. Subsequent studies revealed that Long Island did indeed have higher than expected rates of breast cancer incidence and mortality and was, in fact, part of a broad breast cancer cluster extending all the way to Philadelphia. They also helped to establish Long Island as the setting for the largest epidemiologic study ever to be conducted on the link between environmental contaminants and breast cancer.

"We tend to move beyond cluster analysis as quickly as we can," says Obrams, explaining public health officials' decision not to follow up on every reported cluster in Long Island. "We get whatever information we can about clusters to see if there is any lead that we can develop for scientific study, but we know we can get more conclusive data from a larger, well-designed scientific project."

—Lori Miller Kase is a science and health writer based in Virginia.

erty may be thought of as the underlying cause, because it is almost universally associated with higher rates of tobacco smoking, alcohol consumption, poor nutrition and exposure to certain infectious agents—which, together, can explain most of the cancer-risk propensities listed above.

In contrast, for reasons that remain largely unknown, cancers of the breast, prostate and some other sites are more common among higher socioeconomic groups. Some scientists have speculated that excessive growth in early life, presumably because of reduced physical activity and abundant nourishment, may in some way increase the risk of these cancers. But this hypothesis has not been evaluated rigorously.

Most of the differences in cancer incidence between races, too, can be attributed to socioeconomic factors. Some of the differences between races might have a genetic basis, but genetic variability is higher within than between races. In general, most differences among blacks, whites and Asians can be traced to diet, way of life and environmental exposure. For example, Japanese women in Japan have 25 percent of the risk for breast cancer that white women in the U.S. have. Yet third-generation Japanese-American women contract breast cancer almost as frequently as other American women do.

Elusive Mechanisms

Although many of the specific physiological and genetic mechanisms by which environmental carcinogens cause cancer remain elusive, scientists now have a good sense of the extent to which various categories of agents contribute to lethal cancers. By and large, in industrial nations tobacco consumption and dietary habits are the dominant cancer-causing behaviors. In developing nations, cancer cases stemming from infectious agents are more common. But the rapid worldwide spread of the tobacco habit promises to push smoking to the forefront of causes of cancer deaths in these regions, too.

Useful though they are for establishing preventive guidelines and setting health policy objectives, epidemiologic data on the relative significance of environmental carcinogens cannot predict the fate of any given individual. A heavy smoker might avoid lung cancer, a long-term carrier of hepatitis B virus may remain free from liver cancer, and many healthy elderly people have lived long lives on terrible diets. For many of the other factors considered in this article, such as ionizing radiation or some occupational factors, only extreme exposures (or carrying mutant genes) put an individual at substantial risk. This is because multiple, interacting factors are almost always necessary for cancer to develop.

At present, we have a very limited understanding of how these interactions allow potential carcinogens to cause cancer. But in time, research may reveal this crucial link, giving us a more complete picture of what cancer is—and how it can be stopped.

Genes and Cancer Risk

Inherited mutations in these genes confer a very high cancer risk. Red type indicates cancer most often associated with mutation in the listed gene.

Gene	Tumor Type	Gene Class
Breast cancer		
BRCA1	Breast, ovary	Tumor suppressor
BRCA2	Breast (both sexes)	Tumor suppressor
p53	Breast, sarcoma	Tumor suppressor
Colon cancer		
MSH2	Colon, endometrium, other	Mismatch repair
MLH1	Colon, endometrium, other	Mismatch repair
PMS1,2	Colon, other	Mismatch repair
APC	Colon	Tumor suppressor
Melanoma		
MTS1 (CDKN2)	Skin, pancreas	Tumor suppressor
CDK4	Skin	Tumor suppressor
Neuroendocrine cancer		
NF-1	Brain, other	Tumor suppressor
NF-2	Brain, other	Tumor suppressor
RET	Thyroid, other	Oncogene
Kidney cancer		
WT1	Wilms' tumor	Tumor suppressor
VHL	Kidney, other	Tumor suppressor
Retinoblastoma		
RB	Retinoblastoma, sarcoma, other	Tumor suppressor

MARIA SUTTON

The Authors

DIMITRIOS TRICHOPOULOS, FREDERICK P. LI and DAVID J. HUNTER are colleagues at Harvard University. Trichopoulos is director of the Harvard Center for Cancer Prevention at the School of Public Health, professor of epidemiology and the Vincent L. Gregory Professor of Cancer Prevention. He was born in Athens, Greece. Li, who was born in China, is professor of medicine at Harvard Medical School and professor of clinical cancer epidemiology at the School of Public Health. Hunter, a native of Australia, is associate professor of epidemiology at the School of Public Health and executive director of the Center for Cancer Prevention. The authors wish to acknowledge the assistance in the preparation of this article of the many scientists at the Harvard Center for Cancer Prevention.

Further Reading

CANCER: CAUSES, OCCURRENCE AND CONTROL. Edited by L. Tomatis. Oxford University Press, 1990.

CANCER EPIDEMIOLOGY AND PREVENTION. Edited by D. Schottenfeld and J. F. Fraumeni, Jr., Oxford University Press, 1996.

EPIDEMIOLOGY OF CANCER. Dimitrios Trichopoulos, L. Lipworth, E. Petridou and H.-O. Adami in *Cancer: Principles and Practice of Oncology*. J. B. Lippincott (in press).

Strategies for Minimizing Cancer Risk

Simple, realistic preventive measures could save hundreds of thousands of lives every year in developed countries alone

by Walter C. Willett, Graham A. Colditz and Nancy E. Mueller

During 1996, more than 550,000 people will die of cancer in the U.S. In Europe, there will be at least 840,000 cancer fatalities. Yet accumulating evidence indicates that in these two parts of the world, which have relatively high and closely tracked cancer mortality rates, more than half these deaths could theoretically have been prevented.

The notion that we can modify cancer risk emerges from decades of investigation. One laboratory experiment after another has demonstrated that a variety of chemicals and other environmental agents can cause cancer in animals, and studies of people have linked heavy exposure to certain substances in the workplace with high risks of specific types of cancer. Also, international studies of migrants repeatedly confirm that they tend to adopt the cancer pattern of their new country within a period that varies from about a decade (for cancer of the colon and rectum) to a few generations (for breast cancer)—a sign that something in the environment, such as changes in diet or exercise patterns, is implicated. If outside factors can increase cancer risk, avoiding those factors should decrease it.

How did we determine the extent to which mortality can be reduced? We began by identifying the lowest rates for various types of cancer among large international populations that keep reliable figures on death from cancer. The incidence of many of the most common cancers in the U.S. and Europe is much lower in Japan and China. To compile a list of estimated "baseline" cancer incidences, then, we chose the lowest rate for each type of cancer from among the data for the U.S., Japan and China. Then we calculated the difference between the highest rate and the baseline. From these comparisons, we conclude that it should be possible to reduce cancer mortality by approximately 60 percent in the U.S.—perhaps slightly less for black American women, because their incidence rate is already a bit lower. The figures for most Europeans would be similar.

Although we are confident that the death rates of most types of cancer could be substantially cut, there are two notable exceptions. For breast cancer in women and prostate cancer in men, there are no established preventive measures that are likely to have a major impact.

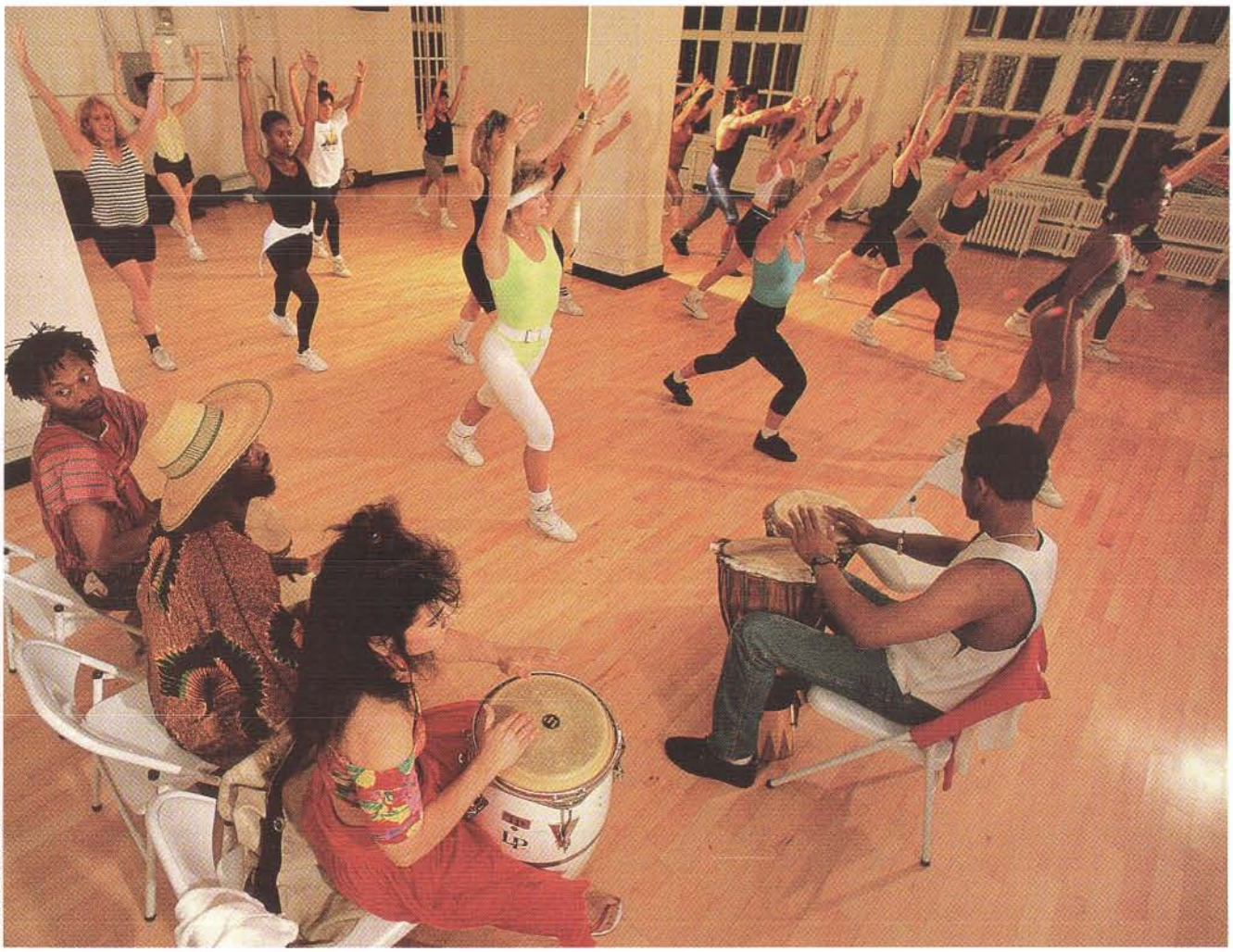
These figures are of interest to more than policy experts and actuaries. For millions of individuals, the results mean that changes in lifestyle can lengthen life—for several years, on average, but several decades for those who would have been stricken in midlife. For most of these people, minimizing the risk of cancer would require a good many changes to address a broad spectrum of causes. For the few people who have inherited mutant genes that dramatically increase the risk of particular types of cancer or for those who have been exposed to unusual occupational hazards, the strategies would be focused mainly on avoiding that specific cancer.

An Ounce of Prevention

A cancer death can be avoided through prevention of cancer, through detection of the disease early enough to treat it successfully, or through a combination of the two (trying to prevent the disease but being vigilant enough to catch it and treat it early if it develops). Examples of prevention strategies include never smoking and, if it is too late for that, giving up the practice. Kicking the habit enables a former smoker to enjoy a nonsmoker's lower risk for lung cancer after about a decade. Another prevention tactic is eating certain vegetables and other foods that counteract the activity of cancer-causing agents (carcinogens) in the body. In theory, vaccination against the various infectious agents that are known to cause cancer could help as well, although at the moment the only vaccine that can serve this purpose prevents hepatitis B infections.

Early detection relies on the diagnosis of disease at a more treatable stage, before the onset of symptoms that would bring the patient to medical attention [see "Advances in Cancer Detection," by David Sidransky, page 70]. This approach has been applied to some cancers, such as cervical and colorectal cancer. Epidemiologic studies indicate that death rates from these two diseases could be reduced by at least 50 percent if screening were widely applied, making it possible to remove precancerous growths and to detect malignancies earlier. The test for cervical cancer is the well-known Pap smear; the most effective procedures for detecting cancer of the colon and rectum are sigmoidoscopy and colonoscopy.

No matter how effective they may be, early detection and treatment are less desirable than primary prevention, for many reasons. Most obviously, prevention avoids the shock and pain of being diagnosed and treated for cancer. In addition, many methods for cancer prevention, such as regular exercise and a sensible diet, have side benefits, such as reducing the risk of cardiovascular and other diseases—which makes them even more cost-effective in comparison with treatment. Moreover, the ability of med-



JIM LUKOSKI *Black Star*

PHYSICAL ACTIVITY throughout one's life helps to ward off several types of cancer.

ical science to treat many forms of cancer is limited by the disease's tendency to spread to other parts of the body, the phenomenon of metastasis. And of course, the failure of prevention still leaves treatment as a last resort.

These advantages notwithstanding, the power of prevention as a defense against cancer has never been fully appreciated by the public at large, if the widespread persistence of unhealthy habits is any indication. This disappointing observation is perhaps understandable. It is, after all, impossible to tell whether a healthy lifestyle warded off cancer in an individual. Conversely, successful treatment invariably becomes a landmark event. Moreover, the results of effective treatment become apparent quickly, whereas the impact of a prevention regime—quitting smoking, say—may take years to emerge.

As in our colleagues' article on causes of cancer, we focus here on fatal kinds of cancer rather than all cases to avoid distortions introduced by the large number of highly localized cancers and those forms of skin cancer that are seldom fatal. For each major cause, we estimate how much mortality could be reduced for people living in the U.S. or a similar developed country.

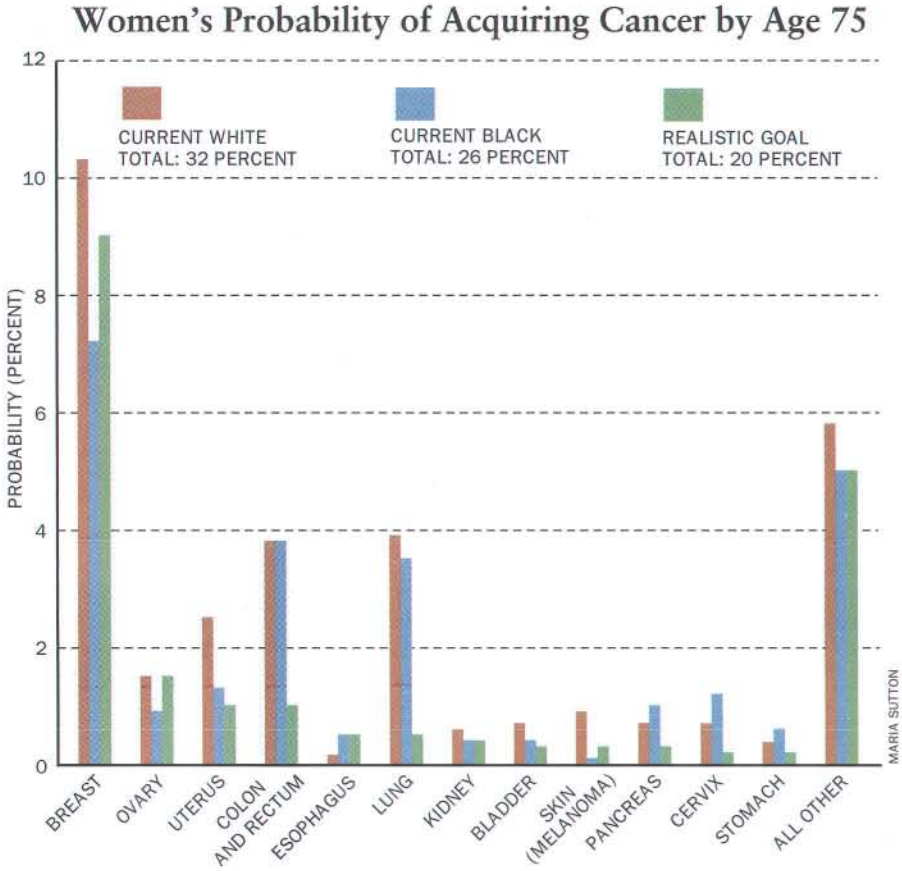
Potent Mix: Tobacco and Alcohol

Most cancer prevention campaigns rightly focus on controlling the tobacco smoking epidemic. But the goal has proved to be an elusive one. The decline of smoking in most developed countries has been more than offset in recent years by a rapid increase elsewhere in the world. Small-scale programs and traditional health education efforts are no match for the addictive power of nicotine and the marketing clout of the tobacco industry.

In democratic societies, three complementary approaches appear most promising: improved general education, taxation, and cultivation of an antismoking social ethos. The strong inverse association between educational achievement and smoking reinforces the importance of health education for all segments of society. High taxes on tobacco products, as well as social disapproval or regulation of smoking in office buildings, airplanes and public places, have been shown to reduce smoking rates.

Perhaps, too, we could do more to bring people's perceptions of risk in line with reality. It is not uncommon to meet heavy smokers who are genuinely concerned about the health effects of unproved or possibly trivial environmental agents, such as magnetic fields or chlorinated water.

Tobacco smoking cannot be completely eradicated; hardly any vices ever have been. But on the basis of the dramatic decline in smoking among the



REALISTIC GOAL for reducing the chances of being stricken with any kind of cancer during a normal life span is, for white women, about one third (*left*). The corresponding goal for black women is less because their rates are already lower than those of white women. Men should be able to cut their risk at least in half (*right*). Almost anyone can achieve such a reduction in cancer risk by adopting prudent habits, such as not smoking, exercising regularly, eating plenty of fruits, veg-

more educated adults in the U.S. over the past few decades and the increasingly pervasive sentiments against smoking, it would not be unrealistic to hope that tobacco smoking—and, eventually, deaths related to tobacco—can be reduced by about two thirds within a few decades. Such a reduction would of course require that the trend not only continue but also spread to less educated groups.

The moderate intake of alcoholic beverages, at about one or two a day, reduces mortality from cardiovascular causes. At the same time, alcohol has been linked with several forms of cancer. Effects of alcohol consumption and tobacco smoking are also believed to interact to cause cancer in the upper respiratory and gastrointestinal tracts.

Clearly, on many grounds, heavy alcohol consumption should be avoided. Anyone considering drinking moderately for the good of the heart should consult a physician and take into account any family history of alcoholism while weighing the risk of cancer against that of cardiovascular disease. Also, for women younger than 50 years, who are at relatively low risk of cardiovascular disease, there does not appear to be any reduction in mortality from moderate alcohol use. Overall, alcohol-related cancer mortality could probably be decreased by about one third if a realistically smaller number of people had more than two drinks a day.

Preventing Diet-Related Cancer

Although we know little about the specific beneficial or harmful constituents of food, we have a good idea of what people should eat if they want to improve their odds of avoiding cancer. Their diet should be high in vegetables, fruits and legumes (such as peas and beans) and low in red meat, saturated fat, salt and sugar. Carbohydrates should be consumed as whole grains—whole-wheat bread and brown rice as opposed to white bread and rice, for example. Added fats should come mainly from plants and should be unhydrogenated; olive oil, especially, appears potentially beneficial.

Everyone should work assiduously to avoid being overweight, ideally in part through physical activity. In addition to helping to control weight, exercise reduces the incidence of colon cancer and, perhaps, of other types as well. Regular physical activity during childhood and adolescence may also slow down excessive growth and avoid an early onset of menstrual cycles, both of which have been implicated in malignancy.

Some evidence links increased risk of breast and prostate cancer with high birth weight and other factors dating to around the time of birth. Although this information is of interest to scientists, it does not readily translate into practical means of prevention. This situation contrasts with that in most other forms of cancer, for which prevention strategies became apparent when causes were established. The implication is that in the near future, in developed countries, the incidence of cancers of the breast and prostate will prove more difficult to reduce—and that, therefore, these cancers could be responsible for an increasing percentage of all cancer mortality as deaths from many other kinds of cancer decline [*see illustrations on these two pages*].

Although the benefits of exercise and dietary moderation have been known for decades, the proportion of overweight Americans has been increasing. Between 1980 and 1991 the prevalence of obesity rose by 33 percent in the U.S. Nevertheless, many people, particularly those with higher education and income, have learned how to avoid age-related weight gain, so it is not unrealistic to hope for some improvement among other groups in the foreseeable future.

Similarly, modest shifts toward more healthy habits by the population as a whole should be possible. If a majority of people were to make two or more wise changes—exercising vigorously for 20 minutes a day, eating one more serving of leafy vegetables each day or con-

etables and whole grains and by avoiding animal fats, red meat, refined starches and alcohol. That such reductions in risk are realistic is supported by the fact that they have already been largely achieved by Seventh-Day Adventists, many of whom follow these practices. As the incidence of many cancers declines, the proportion of breast and prostate cancer cases will increase, because no established preventive measures are likely to have a major impact in the near future.

suming no more than one serving of red meat a week, for example—both diet-related and sedentary-life-related cancer mortality might be reduced by about one quarter. Taken together, such changes could prevent an estimated 40,000 premature cancer deaths annually in the U.S. The same measures would also lessen the incidence of cardiovascular disease, saving additional lives. Further knowledge of the specific cancer-fighting components of vegetables and fruits, which scientists are now striving to uncover, could allow more focused and effective dietary strategies [see "Chemoprevention of Cancer," by Peter Greenwald, page 64].

A great deal of evidence already suggests that most Americans do not get enough folic acid in their diets. Lack of this nutrient may contribute to colon cancer and heart disease, so multivitamins that include folic acid, also called folate, might prove beneficial. Regarding so-called megavitamins, little reliable research indicates that these highly concentrated supplements are any more protective against cancer than plain old multivitamins (and even for these, a benefit has not been established).

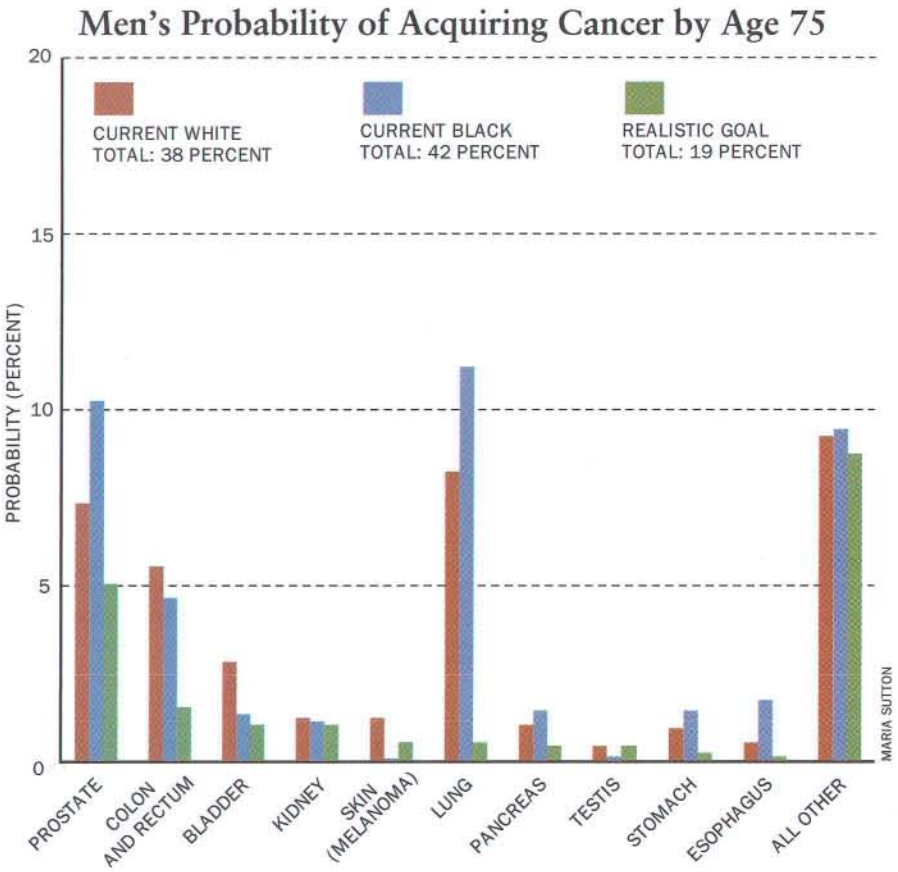
Avoiding Viruses

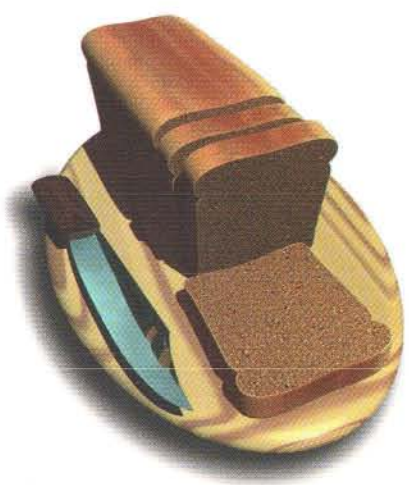
The human papillomavirus is the most common cancer-causing infection in the U.S. The sexually transmitted strains, which can lead to cervical cancer, are the most lethal. They can be combated, however, by the same measures directed against transmission of the AIDS-causing human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)—such as delaying initial sexual activity, reducing casual sexual contact and using latex condoms. More widespread application of these precautions could lead to a further modest decline in deaths from cervical cancer and from other genital tumors traceable to papillomavirus. Pap screening, which enables doctors to detect incipient tumors early enough to cure them, has contributed over the past few decades to the dramatic decline in deaths from cervical cancer. Greater use of this technique could enhance this decrease.

In the U.S., the hepatitis B and C viruses cause a minority of the cases of hepatocellular carcinoma, a form of liver cancer. The recently introduced vaccines against the hepatitis B virus, improved screening of blood and blood products and more pervasive use of disposable syringes and needles by intravenous drug abusers are all expected to help reduce the spread of the viruses. Although common, the Epstein-Barr virus causes relatively few American cancer deaths. No immunization for this large, complex virus is available yet.

Mortality from stomach cancer in the U.S. has been declining for the past half century. A partial explanation may be that improved sanitation has delayed infection by *Helicobacter pylori*, a bacterium causing chronic stomach inflammation that can become cancerous. Later infection by this prevalent microbe gives the disease less time to develop. Also, people now tend to consume less salt and more fruits and vegetables that contain vitamin C than was common years ago; these dietary improvements also seem to interfere with the infection's ability to induce cancer. Use of antibiotics to treat the infection may lead to further reductions.

Barring a breakdown of the measures and policies currently in force, mortality from cancers of infectious origin is likely to decline over the next few de-





SLIM FILMS

cades in the U.S., and most other advanced countries, probably by about one fifth. In less developed countries, however, infections are likely to continue causing substantial cancer deaths.

Reproductive Factors

Considerable evidence links certain reproductive behavior with cancer, particularly for cancer of the breast or ovaries in women. Unfortunately, as with many other findings about the causes of breast cancer, the insights have not led to effective prevention strategies. Part of the problem is that reproductive behavior is driven mainly by social and economic forces, so that modifying it to prevent cancer is for the most part unrealistic.

Birth-control pills cause a small increase in breast cancer rates while they are being used, but this excess risk declines rapidly after their use is discontinued. Use before 35 years of age, when the incidence of breast cancer is low, has minimal impact on breast cancer mortality. On the other hand, use of oral contraceptives for five or more years substantially reduces the lifetime risk of ovarian and endometrial cancer. Thus, the overall impact on cancer mortality—if pill use is limited to earlier reproductive life—is beneficial. Some evidence suggests that tubal ligation may also reduce ovarian cancer risk but that vasectomy may increase risk of prostate cancer in men.

Hormonal contraceptives that simulate early pregnancy in women in their teens or early twenties—or an early menopause in women in their thirties or forties—could potentially reduce the risks for breast cancer. A modest amount of research and development is being done on such contraceptives. Although the first early-menopause preparations may be available within a decade, another 10 years or more may be needed for investigators to assess their effects on breast cancer risk.

Environment and Pollution

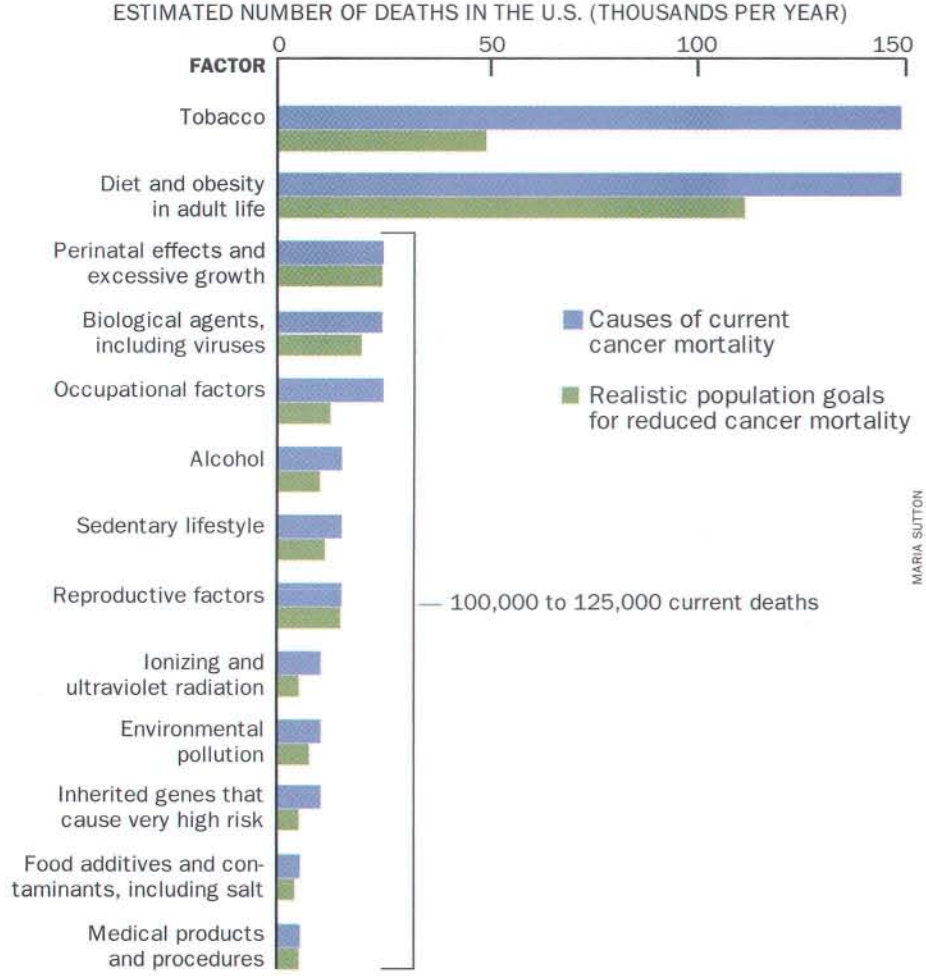
Over the past 20 years, no field of cancer epidemiology has seen as many new hypotheses as that concerned with environmental pollution. The candidate carcinogens are diverse enough to include extremely low frequency magnetic fields from electric power lines, radio-frequency electromagnetic radiation used in cellular telephones, proximity to nuclear plants or chemical-waste dumps, water fluoridation and even unseen, unspecified sources responsible for "clusters" of cancer cases within small geographic regions. Few of these hypotheses have been corroborated. But they all serve an important function: preserving the necessary vigilance in the face of the exploding pace of technological change.

With respect to radiation from nuclear or x-ray sources and workplace carcinogens, all any one citizen can do is demand that the authorities enforce regulations. Technological progress resulting in a shift away from traditional industrial employment, fewer workers in relatively high cancer risk jobs, and the phasing out of asbestos use in buildings justify an expectation that deaths from job-related cancers can be cut by about one half over the next several decades.

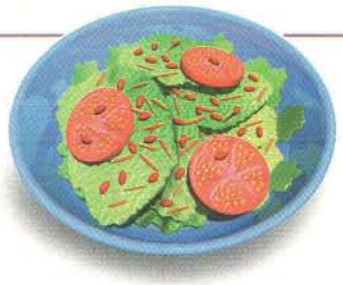
In addition, greater awareness of the risks of being in the sun between 11 A.M. and 3 P.M. and more widespread use of sunscreens could reduce deaths from melanoma, the most lethal form of skin cancer, by one half. The reduction will be less, however, if the depletion of the earth's ozone layer continues, allowing more of the sun's ultraviolet rays through. Part of the ultraviolet spectrum is responsible for most skin cancers.

Air pollution has declined over the

Realistic Goals for Reducing Cancer Mortality



TOBACCO AND DIET, including the latter's effects on obesity, account for about 300,000 cancer fatalities every year in the U.S.—or about 60 percent of the country's annual cancer mortality. Researchers hope these numbers, particularly those for tobacco-caused cancer deaths, can be significantly reduced. Other factors, however, such as those dating to around the time of birth (perinatal factors) or those related to reproduction, are expected to be much more resistant to improvement.



SLIM FILMS

past 30 years in the U.S. Although the measures that brought about the reduction were mostly aimed at short-term goals, such as providing relief for those suffering from asthma, some drop in pollution-related cancer mortality may occur. Yet any such benefit will be as difficult to document as the existence of the original link itself. A decline of one quarter in pollution-related cancer, corresponding to less than 1 percent of all cancer deaths, may be possible.

Mammography, menopausal estrogens and tamoxifen for preventing breast cancer have also come under scrutiny as possible cancer-causing agents. It is now generally recognized that mammography conveys a negligible risk and a substantial benefit. Menopausal estrogens can cause cancer of the endometrium and the breast, although preparations that include progestin are safer in relation to endometrial cancer.

Tamoxifen, a valuable drug for treating breast cancer, is now being evaluated to determine whether it can prevent breast cancer among healthy women who are at high risk for the disease. The catch is that considerable evidence indicates that tamoxifen can cause endometrial cancer. No doubt, medical products and procedures will continue to cause a small proportion of all cancers, but in general, their substantial benefits outweigh their risks.

What to Do

In sum, anyone can reduce his or her chances of being afflicted with cancer by following some sensible guidelines: eat plenty of vegetables and fruits; exercise regularly and avoid weight gain; and avoid tobacco smoke, animal fats and red meats, excessive alcohol consumption, the midday sun, risky sexual practices and known carcinogens in the environment or workplace. Of course, not everyone will follow this advice, and many others will not heed it consistently. Taking this reality into account, we estimate [*see illustration on opposite page*] that a reasonable medium-term objective of prevention programs in the U.S. or any other economically advantaged population is a reduction of cancer mortality by about one third, even without new discoveries or technological developments. This reduction is far less than the almost two thirds that is theoretically possible, but it is still considerable. With further research and new information about the causes of cancer, more reductions are likely.

For a small group of people, prevention strategies will be much more customized. Individuals born with mutant genes for various cancers, which greatly increase the probability that they will be afflicted, are commonly offered genetic counseling that focuses on preventing the kind of cancer they are facing. Assuming that such mutations are uncommon, that some high-risk births might be avoided and that prophylactic measures are taken in affected persons, it might be possible to reduce mortality from inherited cancer by about one half. Still, this is a very speculative estimate in a field that is rapidly changing and in which any impact would not be measurable for many years.

Because most of the actions to prevent cancer must be taken by individuals, the distribution of accurate information, together with peer support for the elimination of bad habits and for other behavioral changes, is critical. But effective cancer prevention requires activities at other levels, too, including counseling and screening by health care providers. At this level, dissemination of scientifically sound information to the providers themselves is crucial.

Another level involves regulation by government agencies to minimize the public's exposure to harmful agents, promote healthier products and ensure that industry provides safe working environments. In some cases, officials will have to deal with the displacement of workers whose livelihood depends on the production of toxic products. For example, the costs of subsidizing tobacco farmers to grow something other than tobacco may help avoid higher costs in the future if fewer people need to be treated for lung cancer. An additional level involves the implementation of policies to improve public health. Examples include providing community facilities for safe physical activity, such as bikeways for commuting and after-school gymnasium programs for children.

At the international level, the actions of developed countries affect cancer prevention worldwide. Unfortunately, tobacco exports are often promoted, and hazardous manufacturing processes are moved to unregulated Third World countries. Both trends will contribute to rising rates of cancers worldwide.

Most types of cancer are to a large extent preventable, even with today's knowledge and technologies. The "war on cancer," primarily fought by searching for improved cancer treatments, has met with limited success and should be better balanced by more extensive efforts in prevention. SA

The Authors

WALTER C. WILLETT, GRAHAM A. COLDITZ and NANCY E. MUELLER are colleagues at Harvard University. Willett is chairman of the department of nutrition and professor of epidemiology in the School of Public Health, professor in the Medical School and associate physician at Brigham and Women's Hospital in Boston. Colditz is associate professor in the Medical School and associate director for education at the Harvard Center for Cancer Prevention. Mueller is professor of epidemiology in the School of Public Health and a member of the board of scientific advisers for the National Cancer Institute.

Further Reading

THE TREATMENT OF DISEASES AND THE WAR AGAINST CANCER. John Cairns in *Scientific American,* Vol. 253, No. 5, pages 31–39; November 1985.

SMOKING AND HEALTH: A 25-YEAR EXPERIENCE. Kenneth Warner in *American Journal of Public Health,* Vol. 79, No. 2, pages 141–143; February 1989.

TOWARD THE PRIMARY PREVENTION OF CANCER. Brian E. Henderson, Ronald K. Ross and Malcolm C. Pike in *Science,* Vol. 254, pages 1131–1138; November 22, 1991.

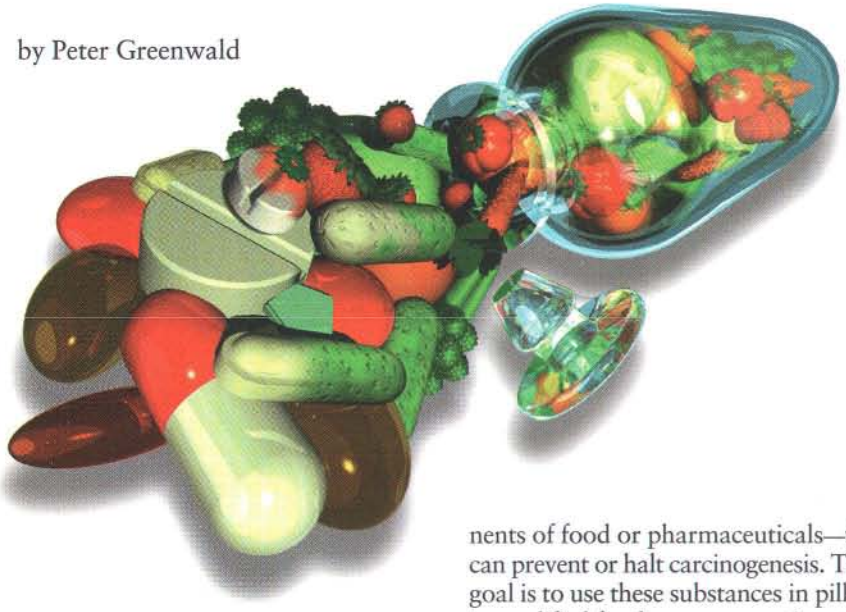
THE CAUSES AND PREVENTION OF CANCER. Bruce N. Ames, Lois Swirsky Gold and Walter C. Willett in *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences,* Vol. 92, No. 12, pages 5258–5265; June 6, 1995.

AVOIDABLE CAUSES OF CANCER. Special issue of *Environmental Health Perspectives,* Vol. 103, Supplement 8; November 1995.

Chemoprevention of Cancer

Someday people should be able to avoid cancer or delay its onset by taking specially formulated pills or foods

by Peter Greenwald



SLIM FILMS

For many years now, scientists have understood that the onset of cancer is a gradual, stepwise process that may unfold over the course of decades, rather than a single, fixed event that can be dated in a pathologist's report. Carcinogenesis encompasses a prolonged accumulation of injuries at several different biological levels and includes both genetic and biochemical changes in cells. At each of these levels there is an opportunity for intervention—a chance to prevent, slow or even halt the gradual march of healthy cells toward malignancy.

Chemoprevention is the attempt to use natural and synthetic compounds to intervene in the early precancerous stages of carcinogenesis, before invasive disease begins. The idea behind such intervention is simple. Certain foods, including many vegetables, fruits and grains, offer protection against various cancers. Chemoprevention researchers try to find substances—either components of food or pharmaceuticals—that can prevent or halt carcinogenesis. Their goal is to use these substances in pills or in modified foods, as a prevention strategy for people at high risk for cancer—much as drugs that reduce cholesterol, blood pressure and clotting of the blood benefit people at high risk for heart disease and stroke.

The endeavor began in the mid-1950s, when investigators first directed their knowledge of carcinogenesis toward a search for substances that could inhibit tumor formation. This approach to cancer prevention was named "chemoprevention" in the mid-1970s by Michael B. Sporn, an innovator in cancer prevention research [see box on page 67]. Since that time, researchers have identified hundreds of potential chemopreventive agents through animal research and cancer epidemiology (the study of specific groups of people, such as ethnic groups and postmenopausal women, to identify factors related to cancer incidence) and sometimes from studies of the medical treatments. More than two dozen of those chemopreventive agents are now being tested on people.

The quest for chemopreventive compounds, however, entails overcoming significant obstacles. For example, those who plan clinical trials of chemopreventive preparations face a constraint that is absent in trials of chemical therapies for disease. The criteria for selecting agents to be used in chemoprevention must be quite different from those used in chemotherapy because chemotherapeutic agents are often chosen for their ability to kill cells; they harm cancer cells more than healthy ones but can still be quite toxic and thus produce troubling side effects. In contrast, chemopreventive agents must be nontoxic and relatively free of side effects, because they are meant to be administered to healthy people for long periods. Thus, agents will be formulated to be taken orally, as pills or as foods or beverages modified to increase their protective constituents.

Furthermore, to be most effective, chemopreventive agents must be used within a broad context of prevention. Like cardioprevention programs, a preventive program for cancer would include sophisticated evaluation of a patient's risk, as well as recommendations for lifestyle changes. Many experts believe such programs could ultimately be among the most effective ways of reducing cancer mortality.

Vital Vegetables

Food is a source of some of the most promising chemopreventive compounds. Vegetables and fruits are likely to decrease cancer risk, but isolating the effects of individual food constituents has proved difficult. Nevertheless, investigations of so-called phytochemicals ("plant chemicals"), pioneered by Lee W. Wattenberg of the University of Minnesota, have identified many agents that protect against cancer in laboratory studies. They include such vitamins as A (and its analogues), C and E, as well as compounds without nutritional value, such as indoles, isothiocyanates, dithiolthiones and organosulfur compounds.

Dithiolthiones, for example, are potential chemopreventive agents found in cruciferous vegetables such as broccoli, cauliflower and cabbage. A synthetic dithiolthione called Oltipraz has been shown to inhibit the development of tumors of the lung, colon, mammary glands and bladder in laboratory animals. Like a number of other beneficial

substances, Oltipraz interferes with carcinogenesis in more than one way. For example, it activates liver enzymes that can detoxify carcinogens in the bloodstream. This effect may be related to the activity of dithiolthiones in cruciferous vegetables, which, along with other dithiolthiones, are thought to activate enzymes that produce natural pesticides that ward off or kill insects.

A host of chemicals derived from plants have demonstrated chemopreventive potential in the laboratory. Sulforaphane, an isothiocyanate, is also thought to work by activating detoxifying enzymes in the liver. Isolated from broccoli, sulforaphane is one of the chemicals responsible for the sharp taste of raw cruciferous vegetables. In rats, it blocks the formation of chemically induced mammary tumors. Adding soy to a rodent's diet also decreases the incidence of mammary tumors in rodents. Genistein, a compound in soy, may be one of several specific compounds responsible for that protection. It seems to prevent cancer through multiple mechanisms, among them the inhibition of angiogenesis—the formation of new blood vessels essential for the growth and spread of tumors.

Tea extracts show chemopreventive effects in animals as well. Researchers believe the principal chemopreventive agent in the extracts is epigallocatechin gallate, an antioxidant that accounts for about 50 percent of the solid materials in brewed green tea. Laboratory studies at the American Health Foundation in Valhalla, N.Y., are suggesting similar benefits from black tea.

Surprising Trials

Cancer researchers have screened hundreds of plant compounds to identify candidates for chemoprevention such as those mentioned; they must systematically and carefully evaluate voluminous evidence from laboratory experiments and epidemiologic studies to determine which of those compounds might be most beneficial for humans. A chosen few have already advanced to the next stage in evaluation: a clinical trial with human subjects. And some of those trials have yielded surprising results.

Beginning in 1985, for example, beta-carotene was included in two large, long-term chemoprevention trials sponsored by the National Cancer Institute: the Alpha-Tocopherol, Beta-Carotene Lung Cancer Prevention Study (ATBC) [*see table below*], conducted with Finnish subjects and scientists, and the Beta-Carotene and Retinol Efficacy Trial. In these studies, daily doses of beta-carotene and either vitamin E (alpha-tocopherol) or vitamin A (retinol) were administered for several years to tens of thousands of people at high risk for lung cancer. Epidemiologic evidence linking dietary levels of beta-carotene to reduced cancer risk had strongly supported the studies' hypothesis, namely, that administering the nutrients would protect against lung cancer.

Instead the rate of lung cancer in cigarette smokers taking beta-carotene increased slightly in both trials. Scientists have no ready explanation for the increase, but it seems likely that substances other than beta-carotene are responsible for the protective effects of vegetables and fruits. A long-term study of 22,000 U.S. physicians showed no evidence of harm or benefit from taking beta-carotene.

Also surprising in the ATBC study was the fact that the men who received doses of vitamin E (alone or with beta-carotene) experienced 34 percent fewer cases of prostate cancer and 16 percent fewer cases of colon and rectal cancer than their peers, whereas their rates of lung cancer were unaffected. This finding has not been confirmed, however, and the ATBC study was not designed to examine these correlations. The appar-

Some Clinical Chemoprevention Trials

A variety of drug, vitamin and mineral supplements have been tested for their ability to lower the dangers of cancer in populations at risk. Some of these chemoprevention protocols show promise, but others seem to be actively harmful or have not yet shown clear benefit. A few of the past and ongoing trials conducted by the National Cancer Institute are described below.

Alpha-Tocopherol, Beta-Carotene Lung Cancer Prevention Study (ATBC)

Would daily oral doses of alpha-tocopherol (vitamin E) or beta-carotene, or both, reduce rates of lung and other cancers in male smokers?

Tested on: 29,133 male smokers for five to eight years (beginning in 1985)

Findings:
- ▲ 18 percent increase in lung cancer in beta-carotene group
- ▼ 34 percent decrease in prostate cancer in vitamin E group
- ● Small but statistically insignificant decrease in colorectal cancer in vitamin E group

Isotretinoin Efficacy Trial

Would daily oral doses of the retinoid isotretinoin reduce rates of secondary tumors in high-risk people who have been initially treated for head and neck cancer?

Tested on: 100 cancer-free, high-risk people for one year (beginning in 1983)

Findings:
- ▼ 83 percent decrease in secondary tumors

Linxian General Population Trial

Would daily oral doses of four combinations of vitamins and minerals reduce rates of esophageal and stomach cancer in high-risk people in China?

Tested on: 29,584 people for six years (beginning in 1985)

Findings:
- ▼ 21 percent decrease in stomach cancer deaths for people taking beta-carotene, vitamin E and selenium; follow-up studies are ongoing

Breast Cancer Prevention Trial (BCPT)

Would daily oral doses of the drug tamoxifen reduce rates of breast cancer in women at high risk or older than 35 years?

Tested on: 16,000 women for five years (beginning in 1992)

Findings:
- ● Study is ongoing; no results yet available

MARIA SUTTON

ent decrease in prostate and colon and rectal cancers could either be a benefit of the vitamin E doses or just a chance occurrence. More trials are needed to explore this intriguing connection. Results from the two beta-carotene studies clearly illustrate the importance of human trials both in testing established hypotheses about chemoprevention and in generating new ones.

Promising Preventive Treatments

Vitamins and food-derived compounds are the focus of a large part of chemopreventive research, but a number of drugs being used for treatment may also be suitable for prevention. One such drug is tamoxifen, the antiestrogen medication that has demonstrated great potency in the treatment of breast cancer. First synthesized in 1966 for birth-control research, tamoxifen is thought to thwart cancer by blocking estrogen receptors that, when occupied, stimulate cell proliferation.

An ongoing, 10-year study by a national collaborative group of U.S. physicians and scientists—headquartered in Pittsburgh—and the National Cancer Institute is testing tamoxifen's ability to prevent breast cancer in thousands of healthy women who are at increased risk for the disease. In earlier studies of breast cancer patients, tamoxifen reduced the incidence of new tumors in the unaffected breast by about 40 percent. Those figures provided the rationale for investigating tamoxifen as a preventive agent. But although it has clearly been a boon to breast cancer patients, tamoxifen has side effects, the most serious of which are increased risks of uterine cancer and blood-clot formation. Because of those risks, some women's health advocates have questioned the use of the compound by healthy women for prevention.

Yet the knowledge gained from a large-scale preventive trial of tamoxifen could help researchers understand how to synthesize a second generation of antiestrogen drugs having greater potency and fewer risks than those associated with tamoxifen itself.

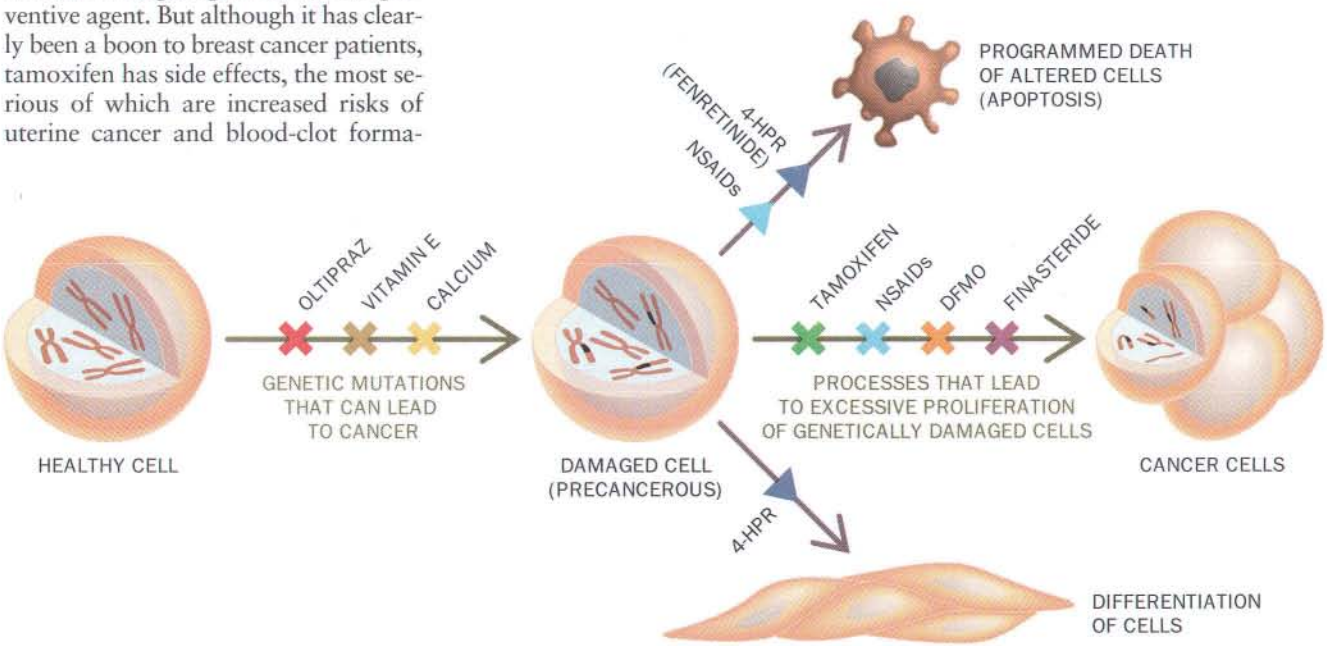
Retinoids, derived from vitamin A, also have been tested in treatment studies and can slow or prevent the development of many epithelial cancers, particularly those of the head and neck. Retinoids probably work by encouraging cell maturation and specialization, processes that essentially force cells to forsake proliferation. Over the past decade, researchers at the M. D. Anderson Cancer Center in Houston have conducted a careful series of chemoprevention trials using a synthetic retinoid called isotretinoin. In part because of the compound's toxicity, these trials have been confined to high-risk individuals: heavy smokers or drinkers who already have or have had head or neck tumors and who therefore have a good chance of developing more malignancies. For these people, the potential benefits of chemoprevention clearly outweigh the known disadvantages.

Many Trials Ahead

Over the next decade, numerous trials of potential chemopreventive agents will deepen our understanding of the mechanisms and practical benefits of chemoprevention. A synthetic compound called difluoromethylornithine (DFMO), for example, is being tested in groups of 40 to 120 people for the prevention of many different types of cancer, including breast, cervical, prostate, bladder, colon and skin. DFMO interferes with the activity of an enzyme (ornithine decarboxylase) essential for cell proliferation. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) such as aspirin and ibuprofen seem to inhibit this same enzyme and are also being studied in small chemoprevention trials for colon cancer. In general, these anti-inflammatories protect the body from disease in a number of ways that go beyond inhibiting cell proliferation. But prolonged use of NSAIDs may cause gastrointestinal side effects, such as bleeding or ulcers.

The "gold standard" of chemopreven-

PROGRESSION TO CANCER can be avoided in two basic ways. Some chemopreventive supplements, represented by colored Xs in this diagram, are intended to halt the progression, either before or after genetic mutations cause a cell to become precancerous. Another approach relies on agents (*shown as colored triangles*) that divert the progression to a benign outcome, such as the death or differentiation of precancerous cells (differentiation steers affected cells back toward their normal, noncancerous state).



JARED SCHNEIDMAN DESIGN

tion trials is still the large, prospective study, which monitors future development of disease in either high-risk individuals or the general population. In these trials, the experimental agent may need to be administered for many years, after which a number of years are required to assess the effects fully. One such trial now under way is examining the ability of finasteride to prevent prostate cancer. Finasteride, which is already used to treat benign enlargement of the prostate, inhibits the conversion of testosterone in the prostate to a more potent androgen that is thought to promote cancer. In the Prostate Cancer Prevention Trial, finasteride or a placebo is being given daily to 18,000 men for seven years; follow-up could take a decade or more.

To help speed results of prospective chemoprevention trials, researchers are investigating the use of biomarkers as surrogate measures of a compound's success. Biomarkers are physiological manifestations of changes that may occur on the pathway to cancer; if an intervention reduces the incidence of these signs in a population, chances are that the agent will lower the incidence of cancer as well. Ongoing trials of chemopreventive agents for colon cancer, for example, will determine the efficacy of calcium, NSAIDs and other compounds based on the incidence of intestinal polyps, a benign precursor to colon cancer, rather than the incidence of the cancer itself. Other biomarkers under investigation include specific genetic mutations, altered levels or forms of certain proteins in blood serum and urine, and tissue pathologies such as precancerous lesions.

Biomarkers could also aid physicians in evaluating a patient's risk of acquiring cancer, much as blood lipid levels are used in standard medical practice to monitor heart disease risk. Such evaluations will be an integral part of future chemoprevention programs.

Informed by such profiles, physicians could tailor to each patient a chemopreventive strategy that would stall carcinogenesis long before it progressed to invasive disease. The power of this approach is sure to grow as researchers continue to identify promising new chemoprevention agents and clinical trials begin to provide insight into these substances' effects in humans. With the advance of these investigations and our greater understanding of cancer, chemoprevention will undoubtedly play a major role in reducing cancer incidence as well as the number of deaths caused by the disease.

DARTMOUTH MEDICAL SCHOOL

MICHAEL B. SPORN argues for early intervention.

A Plea for Prevention

Michael B. Sporn, professor of pharmacology and medicine at Dartmouth Medical School, has argued repeatedly, in print and at the podium, that an "obsession" with curing advanced disease has blinded cancer researchers to the promise of prevention. Like heart disease, he says, cancer is the culmination of years of subtle pathology. It is never too soon to intervene—but it is often too late.

"The concept that people with cancer were healthy until a doctor told them that they've got an invasive lesion makes no sense at all," Sporn says. "And nobody in the oncology community is doing anything to change that viewpoint—except for a few believers in chemoprevention."

Sporn is among the most prominent of chemopreventionists, who seek to develop substances that can block the onset of cancer. He led the National Cancer Institute's laboratory of chemoprevention from its inception in 1978 until 1995, when he moved to Dartmouth. And he pioneered chemoprevention research in the mid-1970s with laboratory studies of retinoids, vitamin A analogues that can inhibit tumor development. Noting the success of cardiovascular intervention strategies in reducing deaths from heart disease, he has long called for a revision in cancer research priorities that would emphasize the disease's beginnings rather than its terminal stages.

"We haven't wanted to deal with precancerous states, because there's been nothing you could do about them," Sporn states. But he is confident that this predicament will change, if enough resources are brought to bear on it. The ideal result, he speculates, would be one or several nontoxic, low-cost chemopreventive agents that could be supplied universally, like fluoride in drinking water—easy pills to swallow.

—Karen Wright is a science and health writer based in New Hampshire.

The Author

PETER GREENWALD has been director of the National Cancer Institute's division of cancer prevention and control since its inception in 1981. Previously, he directed the cancer control bureau and then the division of epidemiology in the New York State Department of Health. He has held appointments at Albany Medical College, Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute and Memorial Sloan-Kettering Institute for Cancer Research.

Further Reading

POTENTIAL ROLE OF TAMOXIFEN IN PREVENTION OF BREAST CANCER. S. G. Nayfield, J. E. Karp, L. G. Ford, A. Dorr and B. S. Kramer in *Journal of the National Cancer Institute,* Vol. 83, No. 20, pages 1450–1459; October 16, 1991.

NATURAL HISTORY OF INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA IN HUMANS WITH IMPLICATIONS FOR CANCER CHEMOPREVENTIVE STRATEGY. C. W. Boone, G. J. Kelloff and V. E. Steele in *Cancer Research,* Vol. 52, No. 7, pages 1651–1659; April 1, 1992.

EVALUATION OF CHEMOPREVENTIVE AGENTS AGAINST BREAST CANCER AND PROPOSED STRATEGIES FOR FUTURE CLINICAL INTERVENTION TRIALS. K. El-Bayoumy in *Carcinogenesis,* Vol. 15, No. 11, pages 2395–2420; November 1994.

APPROACHES TO THE DEVELOPMENT AND MARKETING APPROVAL OF DRUGS THAT PREVENT CANCER. G. J. Kelloff et al. in *Cancer Epidemiology, Biomarkers and Prevention,* Vol. 4, No. 1, pages 1–10; January 1995.

CHEMOPREVENTION. P. Greenwald, G. Kelloff, C. Burch-Whitman and B. S. Kramer in *CA Cancer Journal for Clinicians,* Vol. 45, No. 1, pages 31–49; January 1995.

Is Hormone Replacement Therapy a Risk?

Thanks to advances in public health and medicine, the average American woman will be postmenopausal for about one third of her life. As a result, she will ultimately need to make a decision about hormone replacement therapy. During the 1960s, doctors began to prescribe a short-term regimen of estrogen to control menopausal symptoms such as hot flashes and vaginal dryness. More recently, physicians have realized that long-term use can reduce illness and death from heart disease and bone loss (osteoporosis). These potential benefits, however, are balanced to some extent by a possible increased risk of cancer, especially of the breast and uterus.

Indeed, it is largely fear of breast cancer, the most common cancer in women in the U.S., that fuels the debate about hormone replacement. But in weighing the risks and benefits, we must recall that heart disease is the most prevalent cause of death for American women. In 1992 approximately 250,000 women died of coronary disease. Cancer ran a close second at 245,000 deaths for all types; the top three—lung, breast and colorectal cancer—account for 55,000, 43,000 and 29,000 deaths, respectively.

How much do we know about the impact of hormone replacement therapy on heart disease, osteoporosis and cancer? A number of studies have suggested that the use of estrogen for several years decreases risk of heart disease by up to 50 percent—a critical finding in view of the prevalence of coronary disease among women in this country. Long-term hormone therapy also appears to be valuable in preventing the bone fractures that stem from osteoporosis. Hip fractures, which afflict over 175,000 women in the U.S. every year, can destroy vitality, lower the quality of life and lead to death. Sustained use of estrogen appears to reduce hip fractures by 30 to 40 percent; fractures at other sites seem to decrease as well. Furthermore, preliminary evidence hints that the therapy may offer some degree of protection against Alzheimer's disease. Its usefulness in preserving function of the genitourinary tract and in preventing tissue atrophy is well documented.

Most research shows that the greatest benefits of estrogen replacement come with continuous use that begins shortly after menopause. The bone-protecting effects, in particular, diminish rapidly within a few years of stopping medication. Unfortunately, this need for long-term use raises the fear that estrogen replacement might also be linked to the development of two hormonally related cancers, uterine and breast cancer.

Unequivocal evidence suggests that estrogen therapy increases the risk of uterine cancer by up to sixfold over that seen in women who do not take estrogens. Uterine cancer, however, is usually diagnosed early, and thus many deaths from the disease can be prevented (about 6,000 women die from this type of cancer every year). Even more important, the addition of another hormone, a progestin, markedly lessens the possibility of uterine cancer. This finding has led to the frequent prescription of estrogen and progestin together as a means of trying to maintain the cardiac and bone benefits of estrogen without increasing the likelihood of uterine cancer.

It is largely fear of breast cancer that fuels the debate about hormone replacement.

What about the effects of hormone replacement on breast cancer? That breast cancer is in part hormonally mediated is known from extensive epidemiologic studies. But the connection between breast cancer and hormonal therapy is not clear. Several dozen studies of various types have yielded mixed results. In aggregate, they suggest that less than five years of estrogen therapy has no impact on breast cancer. Some studies, however, show that the risk of breast cancer increases by 15 to 40 percent after longer durations of estrogen replacement, with or without progestin. Thus, long-term replacement, which has optimal effects on heart disease and osteoporosis, may well be linked to a small increase in the incidence of breast cancer.

A little known finding is that hormone replacement therapy appears to offer some protection against another deadly malignancy, colon cancer. Several studies now indicate that women taking hormone replacement therapy have half the chance of dying from colon cancer when compared with those who are not taking hormones.

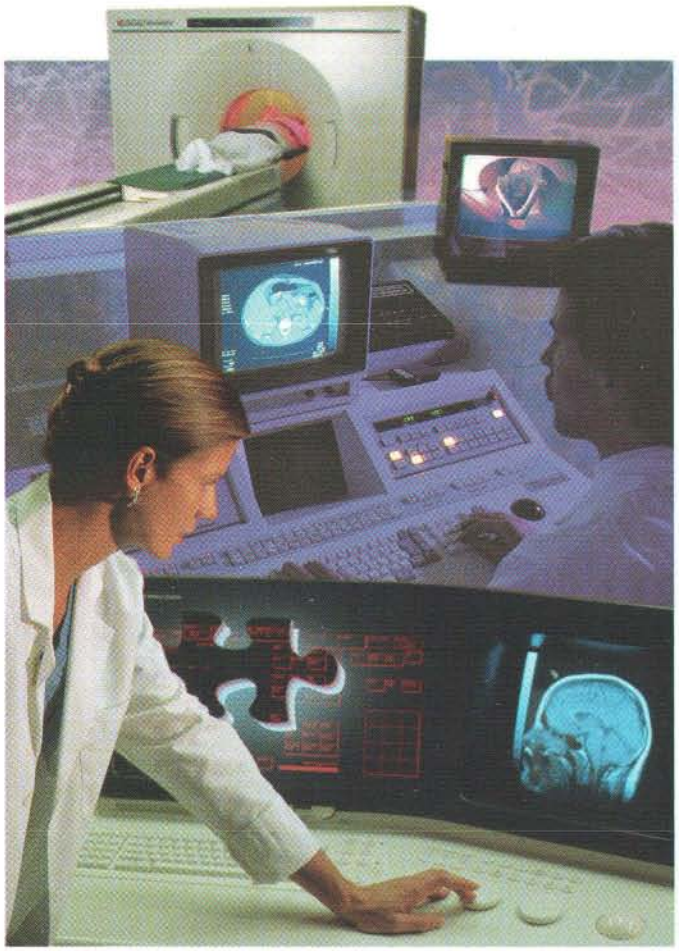
Given the uncertainty about the exact impact of this therapy, the National Institutes of Health has launched a 15-year, nationwide clinical trial involving postmenopausal women. Called the Women's Health Initiative, it will evaluate the total health effects of hormone replacement therapy. Women who have had a hysterectomy and therefore have no risk of uterine cancer will be randomly assigned to daily estrogen or a placebo; those with an intact uterus will be assigned to daily estrogen plus progestin or will be given a placebo. This trial will focus on heart disease and osteoporotic fractures, but information about breast and colon cancer may also emerge, with the earliest findings expected at the beginning of the next century. [For information on how to participate, call (800) 549-6636.]

In the meantime, women must be guided by their own concerns and personal health histories, as well as by the relative impact of heart disease, osteoporosis and cancer of the breast, colon and uterus on women's health in general. Doctors should advise women who choose not to take hormones of other ways to minimize heart disease and osteoporosis. Alternative approaches to protecting the heart include not smoking; following a regular exercise program; taking aspirin; and getting treatment for high blood pressure, high cholesterol and diabetes. Women can minimize bone loss through exercise, calcium intake and the judicious use of anti-osteoporotic medications. For many women, however, the potential benefits of hormone therapy on heart, bone, colon and quality of life will outweigh the risk of breast cancer.

NANCY E. DAVIDSON holds the Breast Cancer Research Chair in Oncology at the Johns Hopkins Oncology Center.

New technology promises not only to detect cancers earlier and more accurately but also to catch tumors in their precancerous state, when the disease still might be prevented outright. The same basic instruments should help physicians to distinguish patients who need minimal treatment from those who need the most aggressive interventions.

Toward Earlier Detection



CONTENTS

PHOTOMONTAGE BY PATRICIA McDERMOND
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF PHOTO RESEARCHERS, INC.

Advances in Cancer Detection

Tests to look for the presence of a tumor before any symptoms appear may save more lives than new drug therapies do

by David Sidransky

A woman walks into a doctor's office after having felt a lump in her breast. The doctor feels the mass and an all too familiar story ensues. A biopsy confirms a diagnosis of breast cancer. Surgery and perhaps radiation or chemotherapy are prescribed. This scenario frequently results in a poor outcome simply because the tumor is found only after symptoms appear.

Many people have come to know the early symptoms of cancer through the American Cancer Society's self-screening guidelines. But by the time symptoms occur—usually pain or bleeding from an organ or a noticeable mass or lump—many tumors have already grown quite large. Despite aggressive surgery to remove the tumor, many advanced cancers recur or have metastasized and may end a patient's life. Tumors that are small, in contrast, are less apt to have spread and more likely to be eradicated.

A recent revolution in molecular biology and our understanding of cancer genetics has contributed to the development of a series of promising tests both for assessing one's risk of getting cancer and for discovering tumors while they are small enough for surgery to be effective. Still other assays may determine the best form of chemotherapy for a given patient or the likelihood that a cancer will recur after surgery. Instead of using invasive probes, the tests can be conducted with a small sample of urine or a pinprick of blood. Despite the long-standing emphasis on new treatments for cancer, such as gene therapy, many of us believe that early detection and improved monitoring will save the

ELI REICHMAN

most lives in the years to come, by making it possible for existing therapies to be applied at a time when they can be most effective.

A Genetic Legacy

As is true of many other diseases, the tendency to contract a particular cancer can be inherited. Mutations in specific genes passed from parent to child determine susceptibility to a number of breast and colon cancers, melanomas and other, rarer tumor types. Simple blood tests are now under development to hunt for DNA mutations in the two known breast cancer susceptibility genes (*BRCA1* and *BRCA2*). The tests will help assess risk for early-onset breast cancer. If a woman carries this mutation she faces a high likelihood, though not a certainty, of developing breast cancer, usually before her 40th birthday. (Men are confronted with a degree of increased risk for breast and possibly prostate cancer.)

Conversely, if a woman is not a carrier of the mutation, her risk of breast cancer may be no higher than that for the general population (about one in eight women will get the disease during their lifetime). The new tests will allow physicians to monitor closely members of genetically susceptible families. Mammography and other conventional surveillance may then detect tumors that are still tiny. But because only a small proportion of cancers are thought to be inherited—about 10 percent of all cases—these tests may be of value only in high-risk families. Besides breast cancer, other genetic tests for cancer susceptibility will become available—for colon cancer, for example.

The ability to determine a person's risk for cancer decades in advance of the possible onset of the disease itself raises an array of social and even psychological issues. Legislators have already begun to pass laws to prevent discrimination by insurers against carriers of gene mutations. Knowledge of one's genetic legacy can also become a terrible psychological burden that must be borne by entire families. Even members of a family who are not carriers of the mutation must cope with associated guilt feelings [*see box on page 73*].

In addition to the social problems, a number of technical hurdles must be overcome before testing becomes widely practiced. Despite significant advances in genetic techniques, the ability to devise reliable tests that will detect cancer-related mutations remains a challenge. Cases will be missed if a test does not find all mutations that may lead to malignancies. Besides being accurate, any test must help improve survival rates—a goal that has yet to be decisively demonstrated. Some critics of susceptibility tests assert that intensive monitoring following a positive test—a routine schedule of mammograms, for example—may fail to turn up tumors early enough to improve a patient's chances of recovery. Still, evidence from studies of families that carry a high risk of contracting cancer of the colon suggests that close surveillance, medication with chemical agents that prevent cancer and, in some cases, removal of the colon can dramatically reduce mortality.

The preemptive option of excising an organ such as the colon or breast may not be fully preventive. For example, after a mastectomy, some cancerous breast tissue may be left behind, although the risk that a tumor may still arise is diminished. The inherent shortfalls of testing for susceptibility highlight the need to develop better strategies for early detection—the discovery of tumors when they are quite small or just beginning to become malignant. Improved detection should help not only families with inherited susceptibility but also the population at large.

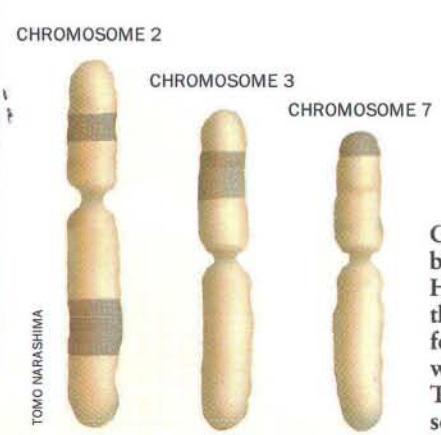
Whether genetic changes are inherited, as in family cancer syndromes, or entirely acquired in the course of a lifetime, cancer ultimately results from alterations to DNA, our genetic code. To become aggressively malignant—proliferating uncontrollably, infiltrating other tissues and metastasizing—cells must sustain damage to a number of cancer-related genes [see "How Cancer Arises," by Robert A. Weinberg, page 32]. From our broadening understanding of the disease, we now know that small clusters of precancerous cells (still considered benign but on their way to developing into cancer) and early cancers frequently harbor detectable genetic changes—a finding that opens new approaches to testing.

Molecular Probes

Existing cytological analyses—examination under a microscope of cells from a Pap smear, for instance—are often insufficient for identifying a small number of abnormal cells by size and shape alone. DNA analysis, however, can detect tiny groups of mutated cells that are shed from a newly cancerous organ into bodily fluids—ranging from urine to sputum or even fluids excreted from the nipples. A technique called polymerase chain reaction (PCR) permits more than a million copies to be made from a single strand of DNA present in a precancerous or cancerous cell. This molecular reproduction biotechnology allows testing to be conducted on clinical samples as small as a single drop of fluid.

The DNA copied through PCR can then be hybridized: the two strands of the familiar DNA "ladder" are separated, then exposed to genetic probes consisting of a single strand of DNA that contains a specific mutation commonly found in a cancer cell. Any DNA in a sample of fluid that has the same mutation binds to the probe, which can be tagged with a fluorescent dye or radioactive material [*see box on pages 74 and 75*].

Much of the work on DNA analysis for cancer detection has been carried out at my laboratory at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine. Using these molecular-based methods, my colleagues and I have found telltale can-



CANCER SUSCEPTIBILITY can sometimes be tracked by testing for genetic mutations. Scientists at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine are searching through the genes of the Lueder family of Omaha, Neb., for a mutation linked to a colon cancer syndrome, which is also implicated in cancers of the urinary tract. The genes involved reside in sections of three chromosomes (*gray in diagram*).

Some Family Cancer Syndromes

Syndrome*	Cancers	Gene	DNA Testing Cost†
Familial melanoma	Melanoma, pancreatic	*MTS1/p16* (tumor suppressor gene)	$400–$600
Hereditary breast or ovarian cancer	Breast, ovarian, others	*BRCA1* (tumor suppressor gene)	$400–$2,000
Hereditary breast cancer	Breast, others	*BRCA2* (tumor suppressor gene)	$400–$2,000
Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer	Colon, uterine, others	*MSH2, MLH1, PMS1, PMS2* (tumor suppressor genes)	$400–$2,000
Li-Fraumeni syndrome	Brain, sarcomas, others	*p53* (tumor suppressor gene)	$500–$700
Multiple endocrine neoplasia	Medullary thyroid, others	*RET* (oncogene)	$350–$500

MARIA SUTTON

* Syndromes may encompass several types of cancer.

† Costs depend on amount of testing needed.

cer gene mutations—in the sputum for lung cancer, in the urine for bladder cancer and in the stool for colon cancer. Several years ago our team demonstrated that mutations could be detected in a cancer gene called *ras* by looking in the stool of patients with polyps—growths in the colon that are precursors of colon cancer. The mutations also appeared in patients in whom colon cancer had already developed.

These results have led to larger trials to determine if identification of *ras* gene mutations in the stool may become a general screening strategy. Such a test may find polyps before they show up through colonoscopy (inspection of the colon with a colonoscope). The simple removal of a polyp greatly diminishes a patient's chances of acquiring cancer.

A test for *ras* mutations may become routine in medical laboratories within a few years. But using this type of genetic assay may prove too time-consuming and costly when searching for the multiple mutations that can be found in some genes. A separate DNA probe must ferret out each mutation. An alternative approach to spotting malignancies employs small pieces of repetitive DNA called microsatellites. Because these repeating units contain no useful information for a cell, they are sometimes referred to as junk DNA. Still, microsatellites hold a wealth of information for the cancer diagnostician and also for forensics specialists who employ them as one of the DNA fingerprinting methods that received much attention during the O. J. Simpson trial.

Spread throughout the DNA in every chromosome, microsatellites have begun to prove their worth in cancer diagnosis. The absence of a cluster of these repetitive units indicates deletion of a region of a chromosome. And a change in size of the microsatellites also confirms a genetic alteration.

In one small trial, we at Johns Hopkins tested patients who showed symptoms of bladder cancer for the presence of abnormal microsatellites in their urine. We discovered microsatellite changes by comparing the DNA in the urine to that in blood. The bladder casts off cancer cells into the urine but leaves blood untainted. The blood acts as a control sample against which the urine can be tested.

In 19 of 20 of these patients, we found changes in microsatellite DNA pointing to the absence of an entire region of a chromosome. The same alterations were then documented in biopsies of tumors taken from the patients. In patients without cancer, we did not find abnormal microsatellites. Although the test missed one patient, the 95 percent detection rate compares favorably with the record of less sophisticated diagnostic techniques, such as the Pap smears that detect cervical cancer.

The simplicity and low cost of microsatellite testing give it an advantage over detection of specific genetic mutations such as *ras*. In fact, the whole technique can be automated: a technician will need only a drop of urine and blood. At the press of a button, a machine that performs PCR will make copies of DNA from a urine sample to identify a microsatellite pattern that confirms the presence of bladder cancer. Larger trials have now begun to validate our preliminary results. It still remains to be determined whether this approach will work for all cancers.

Other strategies for early detection have focused on monitoring the levels of proteins that are either the product of a mutated gene or are present as a consequence of the unique biochemistry of a particular cancer. An example is circulating PSA (prostate-specific antigen) in the blood of patients with prostate cancer [see "Does Screening for Prostate Cancer Make Sense?" by Gerald E. Hanks and Peter T. Scardino, page 80]. PSA testing has an established role in monitoring the progress of prostate cancer patients: high levels of the protein signify a recurrence of a malignancy. But the test may ultimately prove to be a reliable tool for early detection. Many doctors have already begun to use it routinely for detecting prostate tumors.

Enzyme Markers

A simple protein test that has shown promise for both detection and monitoring looks for an enzyme, called telomerase, that is active when cancer arises. The enzyme affects telomeres—the segments at the ends of chromosomes that grow progressively shorter each time a cell divides. When telomeres shorten to a certain length, they instruct the cell to self-destruct, providing a mechanism to rid the body of aging cells. In most normal cells, telomerase is absent, but in cancer, it is active and blocks telomere shortening. Consequently, the malignant cells do not die.

Because the enzyme is rarely present in normal cells, it can serve as a marker to signal the early presence of cancer cells. In theory, telomerase screening holds the prospect of providing a general strategy for detection of cancer in bodily fluids and tissue. Geron, a company based in Menlo Park, Calif., has begun development of a test for telomerase activity based on research carried out by Jerry W. Shay of the University of Texas Southwestern Medical Cen-

ion, clinicians must
a particular tumor
. This assessment—a
ng—becomes a criti-
letermining what ad-
t the patient will re-
y—either radiation or
n staging, doctors ex-
tissue to make sure that
is been removed. But tu-
mor cells also may drain into nearby lymph nodes. The number of nodes involved after tumor removal is important in establishing the prognosis.

Physicians have long been aware that the standard approach to staging—identifying abnormal cells under the light microscope—often fails to turn up very small populations of cancer cells. Recently our team at Johns Hopkins has

Testing Premature?

a broader range of mutations in both the known breast cancer genes, *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*. These tests are expected to come into routine clinical use in a few years.

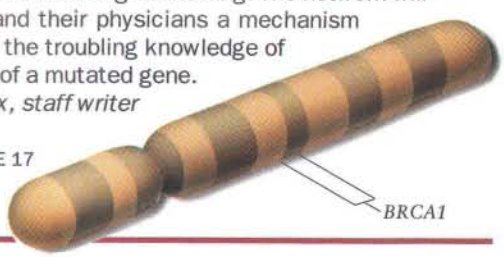
The medical establishment's consensus in opposing clinical testing outside a research study has already begun to weaken. In the May issue of the *Journal of Clinical Oncology*, the American Society of Clinical Oncology broke ranks with other groups by recommending that testing be permitted for anyone with a family history of breast cancer. Advocates of testing believe that ignoring available genetic information can place a patient at risk. The ambiguities and anxieties that accompany testing, they contend, can be addressed through proper counseling. David Sidransky, the author of the accompanying article, takes that view. Sidransky, who is affiliated with the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine and who advises OncorMed, points out that even without genetic susceptibility testing, aggressive surveillance of patients at high risk for colon cancer has led to a dramatic decrease in mortality.

Sidransky suggests that women with a breast cancer gene mutation might enter an intensive surveillance regimen and might be eligible for clinical trials of new types of chemoprevention compounds. Knowing that one harbors a mutation may cause stress to the patient and her family, Sidransky acknowledges. "These issues don't compare, though, to getting metastatic breast cancer and dying from the disease," he adds.

Other observers lack Sidransky's certitude. Francis S. Collins, who heads the National Center for Human Genome Research, collaborated on a response to the policy statement in the *Journal of Clinical Oncology*. "We are concerned," the statement noted, "that the ability to test for hereditary susceptibility will precede the ability to inform individuals of their best medical choices, to provide counseling and education that will help individuals and families make decisions that affect quality of life, and to protect families from various forms of discrimination." Collins submitted the reply on behalf of the National Action Plan on Breast Cancer, a public-private partnership.

Collins points to the National Cancer Institute's recently established National Cancer Genetics Network as a means for patients to enroll in a research study and thus learn of their genetic status while receiving counseling. The network will give patients and their physicians a mechanism for coping with the troubling knowledge of being a carrier of a mutated gene.

—Gary Stix, staff writer



TOMO NARASHIMA

Diagnosing Hubert H. Humphrey 27 Years Later

Excerpt from a letter from Muriel Humphrey Brown, Hubert H. Humphrey's widow, giving permission to the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine to use her late husband's medical samples. Her decision, she says, would have concurred with his wishes.

AP/WIDE WORLD PHOTOS

"This is what Hubert would have wanted; this is what kept him going, I believe, and this is why we wanted his records to be preserved for future use. Hubert and I had a philosophy that saw us through many hard times. It was 'Everything happens for the best.' Often, it takes a long time to know why. Through many years of grief and anger, I couldn't relate our philosophy to his suffering and death. Perhaps now I have the answer."

The power of the new molecula
ent in 1994, when our team of
University School of Medicine diagnc
der cancer from a 27-year-old urine s
case, one that underscores the need

In 1967, when he held the office o
in his urine. His doctors performed te
They could not, however, make a defi
aggressive treatment was delayed. A f
nosis was made, and in 1976 Humphre
and radical surgery. He eventually died

In the experiment (*diagram*), the rese
ter van der Riet, Yener S. Erozan and I—v
phrey's widow, Muriel Humphrey Brown
that were taken in 1967 and a sample of t

Today we know that certain mutation
signs of bladder cancer. But we wanted
had been detectable in 1967 in Humphrey
confirmed that the tumor carried a *p53* m
We extracted and made copies of DNA a
fied each nucleotide, or DNA building bloc
Sequencing revealed a point mutation: on
been replaced by another (thymine). We
consisting of a single strand of DNA that wo
DNA carrying the same mutation. A radioac
the DNA strands to keep track of the probe

Separately, we made copies of the DNA
urine sample (*top of diagram*) using a te
merase chain reaction (PCR). We then inse
ria, which grew into colonies that were place
In the colonies, the DNA strands were separ
be amenable to pairing with the right probe)
placed on the membrane (*far right*), they pai
teria that contained the mutation—indicating
indeed been present in Humphrey's urine as e

applied molecular technology to detect hidden malignant cells in patients with cancer of the voice box and other head and neck cancers. Despite aggressive surgery, these tumors often recur in the same area. In a pilot study, we examined patients whose tumors were known to harbor mutations in a gene known as *p53*. The *p53* gene is a tumor suppressor gene that normally inhibits unchecked cell growth; when it becomes inactive, cells often grow cancerous.

We developed molecular probes for *p53* that we used to test the lymph nodes and nearby tissue remaining after the tumor's ostensibly complete removal. In more than half the cases, there was at least one area surrounding the tumor that, though negative under the light microscope, contained cells with the same *p53* mutations as the tumor. These cancer cells had spread into tissue surrounding the lymph nodes and were left behind after the surgery was done.

In patients with a positive test, cancer often recurred—and the site of its reappearance was frequently the same area where we had originally detected the presence of malignant cells. In contrast, those patients who tested negative after surgery have yet to experience another episode of the disease. Other investigators have also identified these mutations in the lymph nodes of patients with colon cancer.

Such molecular markers as the *p53* gene may also help evaluate how patients will respond to various forms of chemotherapy. The normal function of *p53* is to sense genetic damage and then to lead a cell to its own death—the progression of cellular events called apoptosis. Many types of chemotherapy work by causing genetic damage to cells, which would usually trigger the *p53* gene to initiate apoptosis. But tumors in which the *p53* gene has been deleted or rendered inactive may not respond to cer-

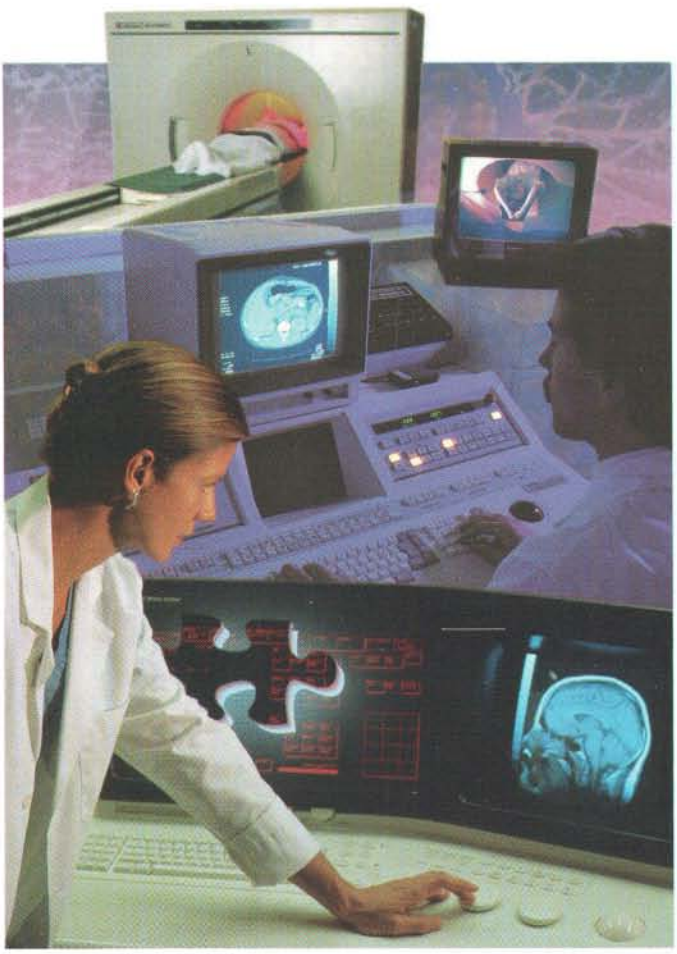
tain types of convention
apy. In breast cancer, alte
therapies, such as taxol, w
rely on *p53* to bring abo
are now being considere
with *p53* mutant tumors.

For genetic detection an
to fulfill its potential, mere
presence of a mutated ge
enough. It will be necessa
the location of a tiny clum
cells so they can be exci
ments in imaging techniq
resonance imaging or co
raphy—will help detect
These studies can be aug
ological" imaging—the in
level radioactive compo
of fluorescent technique
tion signals a tumor's wh

Despite the benefits o
tection, most of the stu
in this article are still q
and await final validati

New technology promises not only to detect cancers earlier and more accurately but also to catch tumors in their precancerous state, when the disease still might be prevented outright. The same basic instruments should help physicians to distinguish patients who need minimal treatment from those who need the most aggressive interventions.

Toward Earlier Detection



CONTENTS

PHOTOMONTAGE BY PATRICIA McDERMOND
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF PHOTO RESEARCHERS, INC.

Advances in Cancer Detection

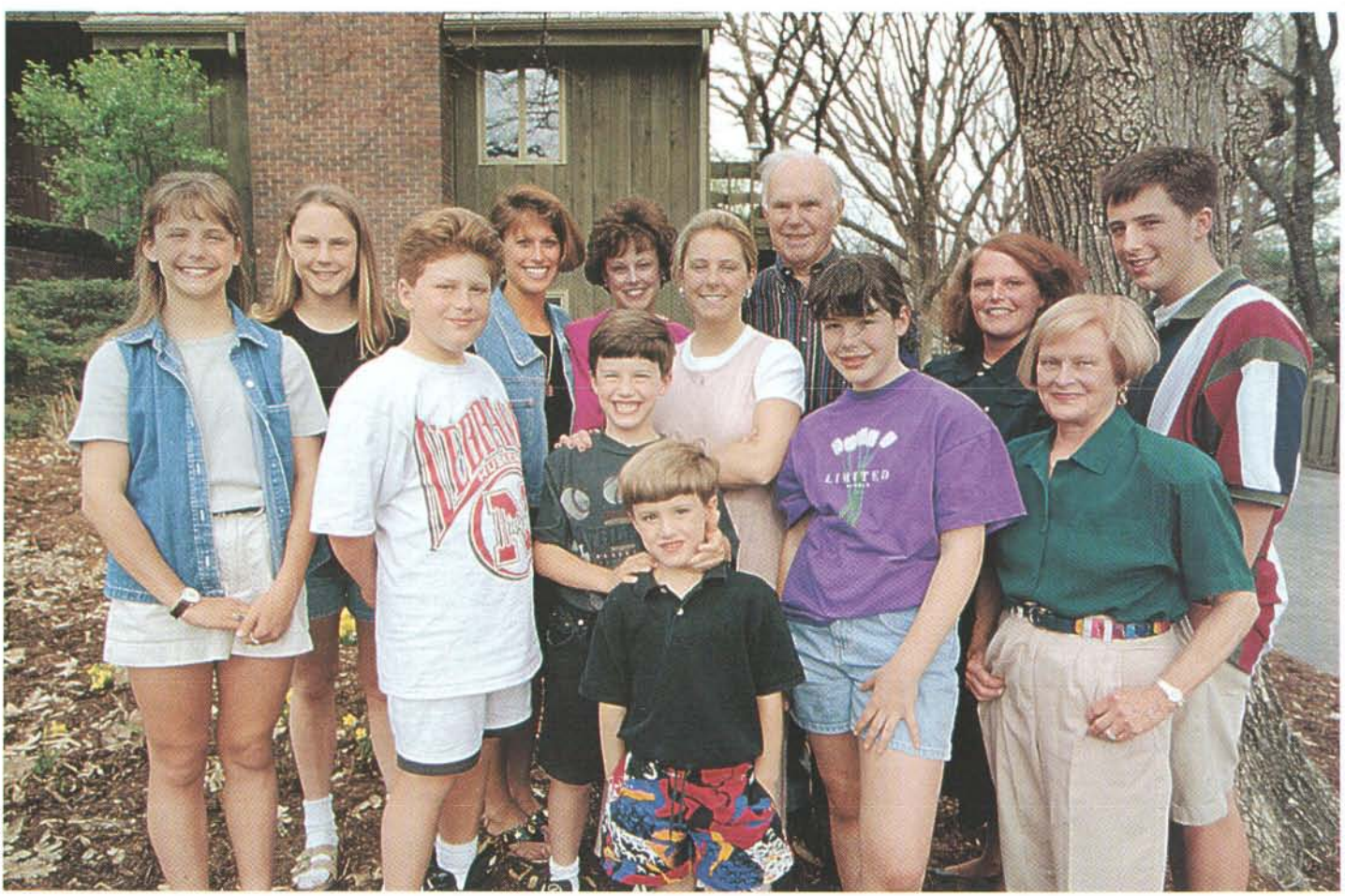
Tests to look for the presence of a tumor before any symptoms appear may save more lives than new drug therapies do

by David Sidransky

A woman walks into a doctor's office after having felt a lump in her breast. The doctor feels the mass and an all too familiar story ensues. A biopsy confirms a diagnosis of breast cancer. Surgery and perhaps radiation or chemotherapy are prescribed. This scenario frequently results in a poor outcome simply because the tumor is found only after symptoms appear.

Many people have come to know the early symptoms of cancer through the American Cancer Society's self-screening guidelines. But by the time symptoms occur—usually pain or bleeding from an organ or a noticeable mass or lump—many tumors have already grown quite large. Despite aggressive surgery to remove the tumor, many advanced cancers recur or have metastasized and may end a patient's life. Tumors that are small, in contrast, are less apt to have spread and more likely to be eradicated.

A recent revolution in molecular biology and our understanding of cancer genetics has contributed to the development of a series of promising tests both for assessing one's risk of getting cancer and for discovering tumors while they are small enough for surgery to be effective. Still other assays may determine the best form of chemotherapy for a given patient or the likelihood that a cancer will recur after surgery. Instead of using invasive probes, the tests can be conducted with a small sample of urine or a pinprick of blood. Despite the long-standing emphasis on new treatments for cancer, such as gene therapy, many of us believe that early detection and improved monitoring will save the



ELI REICHMAN

most lives in the years to come, by making it possible for existing therapies to be applied at a time when they can be most effective.

A Genetic Legacy

As is true of many other diseases, the tendency to contract a particular cancer can be inherited. Mutations in specific genes passed from parent to child determine susceptibility to a number of breast and colon cancers, melanomas and other, rarer tumor types. Simple blood tests are now under development to hunt for DNA mutations in the two known breast cancer susceptibility genes (*BRCA1* and *BRCA2*). The tests will help assess risk for early-onset breast cancer. If a woman carries this mutation she faces a high likelihood, though not a certainty, of developing breast cancer, usually before her 40th birthday. (Men are confronted with a degree of increased risk for breast and possibly prostate cancer.)

Conversely, if a woman is not a carrier of the mutation, her risk of breast cancer may be no higher than that for the general population (about one in eight women will get the disease during their lifetime). The new tests will allow physicians to monitor closely members of genetically susceptible families. Mammography and other conventional surveillance may then detect tumors that are still tiny. But because only a small proportion of cancers are thought to be inherited—about 10 percent of all cases—these tests may be of value only in high-risk families. Besides breast cancer, other genetic tests for cancer susceptibility will become available—for colon cancer, for example.

The ability to determine a person's risk for cancer decades in advance of the possible onset of the disease itself raises an array of social and even psychological issues. Legislators have already begun to pass laws to prevent discrimination by insurers against carriers of gene mutations. Knowledge of one's genetic legacy can also become a terrible psychological burden that must be borne by entire families. Even members of a family who are not carriers of the mutation must cope with associated guilt feelings [*see box on page 73*].

In addition to the social problems, a number of technical hurdles must be overcome before testing becomes widely practiced. Despite significant advances in genetic techniques, the ability to devise reliable tests that will detect cancer-related mutations remains a challenge. Cases will be missed if a test does not find all mutations that may lead to malignancies. Besides being accurate, any test must help improve survival rates—a goal that has yet to be decisively demonstrated. Some critics of susceptibility tests assert that intensive monitoring following a positive test—a routine schedule of mammograms, for example—may fail to turn up tumors early enough to improve a patient's chances of recovery. Still, evidence from studies of families that carry a high risk of contracting cancer of the colon suggests that close surveillance, medication with chemical agents that prevent cancer and, in some cases, removal of the colon can dramatically reduce mortality.

The preemptive option of excising an organ such as the colon or breast may not be fully preventive. For example, after a mastectomy, some cancerous breast tissue may be left behind, although the risk that a tumor may still arise is diminished. The inherent shortfalls of testing for susceptibility highlight the need to develop better strategies for early detection—the discovery of tumors when they are quite small or just beginning to become malignant. Improved detection should help not only families with inherited susceptibility but also the population at large.

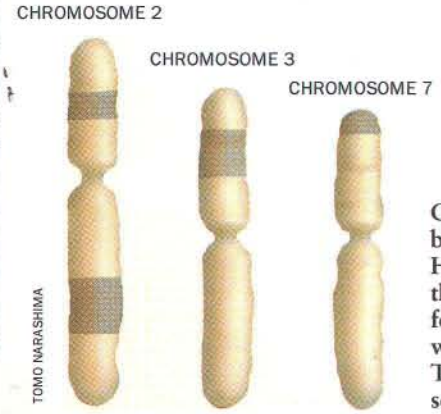
Whether genetic changes are inherited, as in family cancer syndromes, or entirely acquired in the course of a lifetime, cancer ultimately results from alterations to DNA, our genetic code. To become aggressively malignant—proliferating uncontrollably, infiltrating other tissues and metastasizing—cells must sustain damage to a number of cancer-related genes [see "How Cancer Arises," by Robert A. Weinberg, page 32]. From our broadening understanding of the disease, we now know that small clusters of precancerous cells (still considered benign but on their way to developing into cancer) and early cancers frequently harbor detectable genetic changes—a finding that opens new approaches to testing.

Molecular Probes

Existing cytological analyses—examination under a microscope of cells from a Pap smear, for instance—are often insufficient for identifying a small number of abnormal cells by size and shape alone. DNA analysis, however, can detect tiny groups of mutated cells that are shed from a newly cancerous organ into bodily fluids—ranging from urine to sputum or even fluids excreted from the nipples. A technique called polymerase chain reaction (PCR) permits more than a million copies to be made from a single strand of DNA present in a precancerous or cancerous cell. This molecular reproduction biotechnology allows testing to be conducted on clinical samples as small as a single drop of fluid.

The DNA copied through PCR can then be hybridized: the two strands of the familiar DNA "ladder" are separated, then exposed to genetic probes consisting of a single strand of DNA that contains a specific mutation commonly found in a cancer cell. Any DNA in a sample of fluid that has the same mutation binds to the probe, which can be tagged with a fluorescent dye or radioactive material [*see box on pages 74 and 75*].

Much of the work on DNA analysis for cancer detection has been carried out at my laboratory at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine. Using these molecular-based methods, my colleagues and I have found telltale can-



CANCER SUSCEPTIBILITY can sometimes be tracked by testing for genetic mutations. Scientists at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine are searching through the genes of the Lueder family of Omaha, Neb., for a mutation linked to a colon cancer syndrome, which is also implicated in cancers of the urinary tract. The genes involved reside in sections of three chromosomes (*gray in diagram*).

Some Family Cancer Syndromes

Syndrome*	Cancers	Gene	DNA Testing Cost†
Familial melanoma	Melanoma, pancreatic	*MTS1/p16* (tumor suppressor gene)	$400–$600
Hereditary breast or ovarian cancer	Breast, ovarian, others	*BRCA1* (tumor suppressor gene)	$400–$2,000
Hereditary breast cancer	Breast, others	*BRCA2* (tumor suppressor gene)	$400–$2,000
Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer	Colon, uterine, others	*MSH2, MLH1, PMS1, PMS2* (tumor suppressor genes)	$400–$2,000
Li-Fraumeni syndrome	Brain, sarcomas, others	*p53* (tumor suppressor gene)	$500–$700
Multiple endocrine neoplasia	Medullary thyroid, others	*RET* (oncogene)	$350–$500

MARIA SUTTON

* Syndromes may encompass several types of cancer.

†Costs depend on amount of testing needed.

cer gene mutations—in the sputum for lung cancer, in the urine for bladder cancer and in the stool for colon cancer. Several years ago our team demonstrated that mutations could be detected in a cancer gene called *ras* by looking in the stool of patients with polyps—growths in the colon that are precursors of colon cancer. The mutations also appeared in patients in whom colon cancer had already developed.

These results have led to larger trials to determine if identification of *ras* gene mutations in the stool may become a general screening strategy. Such a test may find polyps before they show up through colonoscopy (inspection of the colon with a colonoscope). The simple removal of a polyp greatly diminishes a patient's chances of acquiring cancer.

A test for *ras* mutations may become routine in medical laboratories within a few years. But using this type of genetic assay may prove too time-consuming and costly when searching for the multiple mutations that can be found in some genes. A separate DNA probe must ferret out each mutation. An alternative approach to spotting malignancies employs small pieces of repetitive DNA called microsatellites. Because these repeating units contain no useful information for a cell, they are sometimes referred to as junk DNA. Still, microsatellites hold a wealth of information for the cancer diagnostician and also for forensics specialists who employ them as one of the DNA fingerprinting methods that received much attention during the O. J. Simpson trial.

Spread throughout the DNA in every chromosome, microsatellites have begun to prove their worth in cancer diagnosis. The absence of a cluster of these repetitive units indicates deletion of a region of a chromosome. And a change in size of the microsatellites also confirms a genetic alteration.

In one small trial, we at Johns Hopkins tested patients who showed symptoms of bladder cancer for the presence of abnormal microsatellites in their urine. We discovered microsatellite changes by comparing the DNA in the urine to that in blood. The bladder casts off cancer cells into the urine but leaves blood untainted. The blood acts as a control sample against which the urine can be tested.

In 19 of 20 of these patients, we found changes in microsatellite DNA pointing to the absence of an entire region of a chromosome. The same alterations were then documented in biopsies of tumors taken from the patients. In patients without cancer, we did not find abnormal microsatellites. Although the test missed one patient, the 95 percent detection rate compares favorably with the record of less sophisticated diagnostic techniques, such as the Pap smears that detect cervical cancer.

The simplicity and low cost of microsatellite testing give it an advantage over detection of specific genetic mutations such as *ras*. In fact, the whole technique can be automated: a technician will need only a drop of urine and blood. At the press of a button, a machine that performs PCR will make copies of DNA from a urine sample to identify a microsatellite pattern that confirms the presence of bladder cancer. Larger trials have now begun to validate our preliminary results. It still remains to be determined whether this approach will work for all cancers.

Other strategies for early detection have focused on monitoring the levels of proteins that are either the product of a mutated gene or are present as a consequence of the unique biochemistry of a particular cancer. An example is circulating PSA (prostate-specific antigen) in the blood of patients with prostate cancer [see "Does Screening for Prostate Cancer Make Sense?" by Gerald E. Hanks and Peter T. Scardino, page 80]. PSA testing has an established role in monitoring the progress of prostate cancer patients: high levels of the protein signify a recurrence of a malignancy. But the test may ultimately prove to be a reliable tool for early detection. Many doctors have already begun to use it routinely for detecting prostate tumors.

Enzyme Markers

A simple protein test that has shown promise for both detection and monitoring looks for an enzyme, called telomerase, that is active when cancer arises. The enzyme affects telomeres—the segments at the ends of chromosomes that grow progressively shorter each time a cell divides. When telomeres shorten to a certain length, they instruct the cell to self-destruct, providing a mechanism to rid the body of aging cells. In most normal cells, telomerase is absent, but in cancer, it is active and blocks telomere shortening. Consequently, the malignant cells do not die.

Because the enzyme is rarely present in normal cells, it can serve as a marker to signal the early presence of cancer cells. In theory, telomerase screening holds the prospect of providing a general strategy for detection of cancer in bodily fluids and tissue. Geron, a company based in Menlo Park, Calif., has begun development of a test for telomerase activity based on research carried out by Jerry W. Shay of the University of Texas Southwestern Medical Cen-

ter and Carol Greider of Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory.

Research on protein tests actually predates the advent of testing for genetic markers. Many of the tests, however, have failed to live up to expectations because they produce too many false results. For this reason, recent efforts have tended to shift toward investigations into genetic pathways.

Besides early detection, clinicians must ascertain how readily a particular tumor will grow or spread. This assessment—a process called staging—becomes a critical component in determining what additional treatment the patient will receive after surgery—either radiation or chemotherapy. In staging, doctors examine pieces of tissue to make sure that all the tumor has been removed. But tumor cells also may drain into nearby lymph nodes. The number of nodes involved after tumor removal is important in establishing the prognosis.

Physicians have long been aware that the standard approach to staging—identifying abnormal cells under the light microscope—often fails to turn up very small populations of cancer cells. Recently our team at Johns Hopkins has

Is Genetic Testing Premature?

The ability to pinpoint inherited genetic mutations that predispose a person to cancer has generated a firestorm of controversy within the medical establishment. During the 1980s, researchers identified the first marker for cancer susceptibility—a genetic mutation that causes retinoblastoma, a malignancy of the eye. But it was the discovery during the mid-1990s of genes involved in breast cancer—and the subsequent development of tests that could assess susceptibility to the disease—that brought the issue to the forefront of public debate. The importance of finding the breast cancer genes goes beyond that illness alone, given that the genes can predispose both men or women to a variety of other malignancies, from ovarian to, possibly, prostate cancer.

The dilemma for both ethicists and physicians revolves around the still cloudy meaning of test results. If a test affirms the presence of a genetic mutation, a woman with a family history of breast cancer faces an 85 percent risk—not a certainty—of contracting the disease. But the risks are not yet known for a woman with the mutation who does not have any relatives who have had the disease.

Even with test results in hand, a woman will face difficult decisions about what to do with this knowledge. A negative test for an inherited genetic defect may give her an unwarranted sense of complacency, because about 85 percent of cancers are not inherited, and she remains at risk for acquiring the noninheritable type. She may also have inherited mutations that lead to the disease that have yet to be identified by researchers.

A positive test also provides less than clear-cut options. Increased monitoring may prove inadequate: mammography can overlook a tumor. And preventive removal of both breasts provides no guarantee that the tissue left after surgery will remain free of cancer.

Critics of testing worry about abuse of this information by insurers and employers. A number of states have already passed laws to prevent health insurance providers from using genetic tests to discriminate against patients. Moreover, federal legislation that would outlaw such discrimination has been working its way through Congress. Until some of these issues can be resolved, the National Breast Cancer Coalition, the American Society of Human Genetics and the National Advisory Council for Human Genome Research have recommended that testing be conducted only as part of an ongoing research effort.

Nevertheless, the rush to test outside the research environment has started. One clinic—Genetics & I.V.F. Institute in Fairfax, Va.—offers a test for a mutation found in Ashkenazi Jewish women. Two companies—Myriad Genetics and OncorMed—have developed more comprehensive tests that look for a broader range of mutations in both the known breast cancer genes, *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*. These tests are expected to come into routine clinical use in a few years.

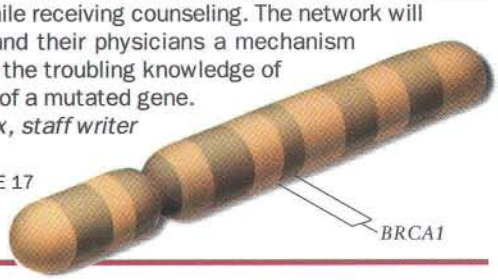
The medical establishment's consensus in opposing clinical testing outside a research study has already begun to weaken. In the May issue of the *Journal of Clinical Oncology,* the American Society of Clinical Oncology broke ranks with other groups by recommending that testing be permitted for anyone with a family history of breast cancer. Advocates of testing believe that ignoring available genetic information can place a patient at risk. The ambiguities and anxieties that accompany testing, they contend, can be addressed through proper counseling. David Sidransky, the author of the accompanying article, takes that view. Sidransky, who is affiliated with the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine and who advises OncorMed, points out that even without genetic susceptibility testing, aggressive surveillance of patients at high risk for colon cancer has led to a dramatic decrease in mortality.

Sidransky suggests that women with a breast cancer gene mutation might enter an intensive surveillance regimen and might be eligible for clinical trials of new types of chemoprevention compounds. Knowing that one harbors a mutation may cause stress to the patient and her family, Sidransky acknowledges. "These issues don't compare, though, to getting metastatic breast cancer and dying from the disease," he adds.

Other observers lack Sidransky's certitude. Francis S. Collins, who heads the National Center for Human Genome Research, collaborated on a response to the policy statement in the *Journal of Clinical Oncology.* "We are concerned," the statement noted, "that the ability to test for hereditary susceptibility will precede the ability to inform individuals of their best medical choices, to provide counseling and education that will help individuals and families make decisions that affect quality of life, and to protect families from various forms of discrimination." Collins submitted the reply on behalf of the National Action Plan on Breast Cancer, a public-private partnership.

Collins points to the National Cancer Institute's recently established National Cancer Genetics Network as a means for patients to enroll in a research study and thus learn of their genetic status while receiving counseling. The network will give patients and their physicians a mechanism for coping with the troubling knowledge of being a carrier of a mutated gene.

—Gary Stix, staff writer



TOMO NARASHIMA

Diagnosing Hubert H. Humphrey 27 Years Later

Excerpt from a letter from Muriel Humphrey Brown, Hubert H. Humphrey's widow, giving permission to the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine to use her late husband's medical samples. Her decision, she says, would have concurred with his wishes.

AP/WIDE WORLD PHOTOS

"This is what Hubert would have wanted; this is what kept him going, I believe, and this is why we wanted his records to be preserved for future use. Hubert and I had a philosophy that saw us through many hard times. It was 'Everything happens for the best.' Often, it takes a long time to know why. Through many years of grief and anger, I couldn't relate our philosophy to his suffering and death. Perhaps now I have the answer."

The power of the new molecular diagnostic tools became apparent in 1994, when our team of researchers at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine diagnosed Hubert H. Humphrey's bladder cancer from a 27-year-old urine sample. Humphrey had a classic case, one that underscores the need for early detection.

In 1967, when he held the office of vice president, he found blood in his urine. His doctors performed tests to look for abnormal cells. They could not, however, make a definitive finding of cancer, and so aggressive treatment was delayed. A few years later the correct diagnosis was made, and in 1976 Humphrey underwent radiation therapy and radical surgery. He eventually died when the disease recurred.

In the experiment (*diagram*), the researchers—Ralph H. Hruban, Peter van der Riet, Yener S. Erozan and I—were given permission by Humphrey's widow, Muriel Humphrey Brown, to work with urine samples that were taken in 1967 and a sample of the tumor removed years later.

Today we know that certain mutations in the *p53* gene constitute signs of bladder cancer. But we wanted to know if such a mutation had been detectable in 1967 in Humphrey's urine. To find out, we first confirmed that the tumor carried a *p53* mutation (*bottom of diagram*). We extracted and made copies of DNA and then sequenced (identified each nucleotide, or DNA building block) in a part of the *p53* gene. Sequencing revealed a point mutation: one nucleotide (adenine) had been replaced by another (thymine). We then synthesized a probe consisting of a single strand of DNA that would recognize, or pair with, DNA carrying the same mutation. A radioactive label was attached to the DNA strands to keep track of the probe.

Separately, we made copies of the DNA from the *p53* gene in the urine sample (*top of diagram*) using a technique called the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). We then inserted the DNA into bacteria, which grew into colonies that were placed on a nylon membrane. In the colonies, the DNA strands were separated (so that they would be amenable to pairing with the right probe). When the probes were placed on the membrane (*far right*), they paired with DNA in the bacteria that contained the mutation—indicating that the mutation had indeed been present in Humphrey's urine as early as 1967.

applied molecular technology to detect hidden malignant cells in patients with cancer of the voice box and other head and neck cancers. Despite aggressive surgery, these tumors often recur in the same area. In a pilot study, we examined patients whose tumors were known to harbor mutations in a gene known as *p53*. The *p53* gene is a tumor suppressor gene that normally inhibits unchecked cell growth; when it becomes inactive, cells often grow cancerous.

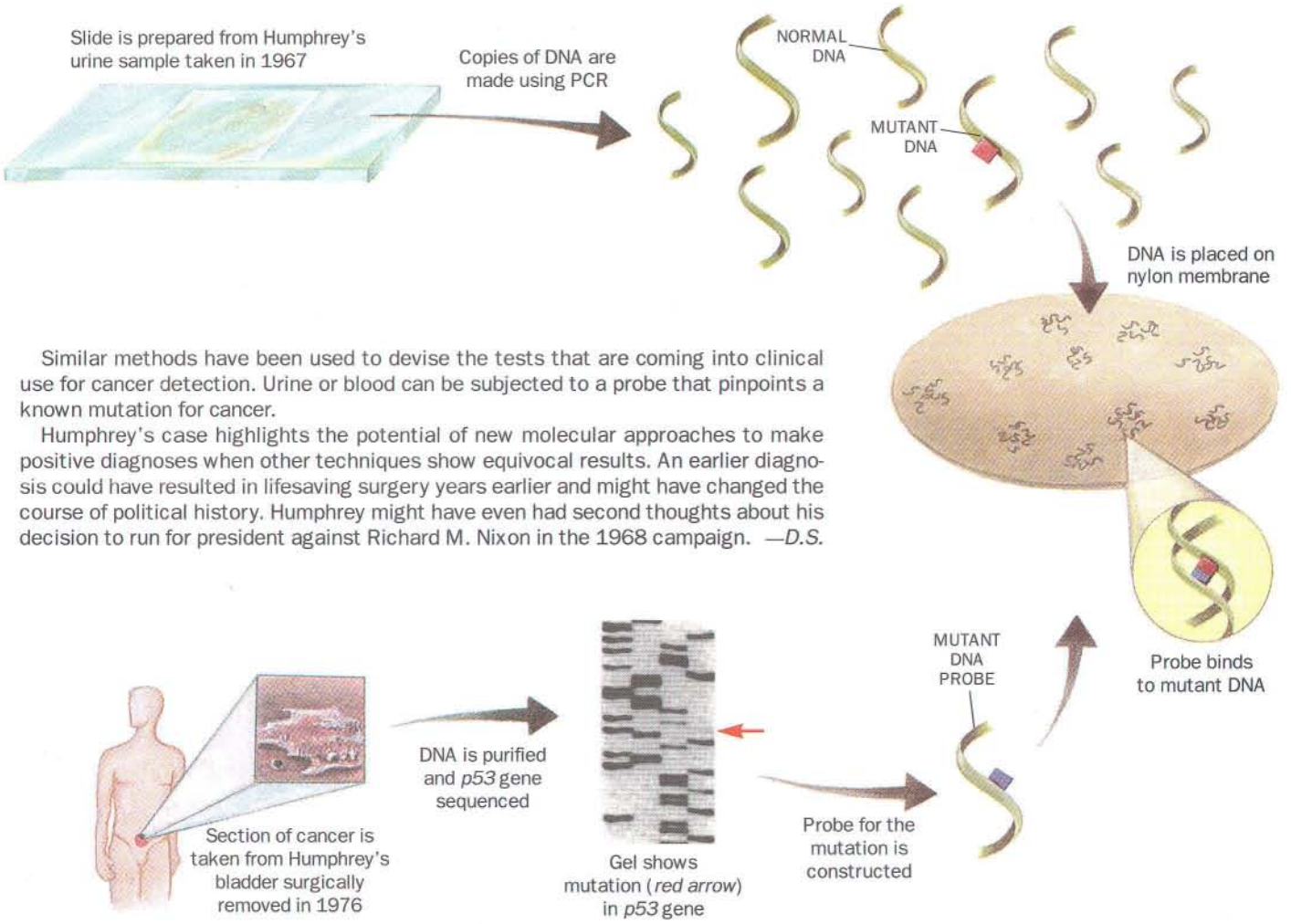
We developed molecular probes for *p53* that we used to test the lymph nodes and nearby tissue remaining after the tumor's ostensibly complete removal. In more than half the cases, there was at least one area surrounding the tumor that, though negative under the light microscope, contained cells with the same *p53* mutations as the tumor. These cancer cells had spread into tissue surrounding the lymph nodes and were left behind after the surgery was done.

In patients with a positive test, cancer often recurred—and the site of its reappearance was frequently the same area where we had originally detected the presence of malignant cells. In contrast, those patients who tested negative after surgery have yet to experience another episode of the disease. Other investigators have also identified these mutations in the lymph nodes of patients with colon cancer.

Such molecular markers as the *p53* gene may also help evaluate how patients will respond to various forms of chemotherapy. The normal function of *p53* is to sense genetic damage and then to lead a cell to its own death—the progression of cellular events called apoptosis. Many types of chemotherapy work by causing genetic damage to cells, which would usually trigger the *p53* gene to initiate apoptosis. But tumors in which the *p53* gene has been deleted or rendered inactive may not respond to certain types of conventional chemotherapy. In breast cancer, alternative chemotherapies, such as taxol, which may not rely on *p53* to bring about apoptosis, are now being considered in patients with *p53* mutant tumors.

For genetic detection and monitoring to fulfill its potential, merely sensing the presence of a mutated gene will not be enough. It will be necessary to pinpoint the location of a tiny clump of malignant cells so they can be excised. Improvements in imaging techniques—magnetic resonance imaging or computed tomography—will help detect such lesions. These studies can be augmented by "biological" imaging—the ingestion of low-level radioactive compounds or the use of fluorescent techniques whose radiation signals a tumor's whereabouts.

Despite the benefits of molecular detection, most of the studies mentioned in this article are still quite preliminary and await final validation in large clini-



JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY SCHOOL OF MEDICINE (*radiograph*); JENNIFER C. CHRISTIANSEN (*drawings*)

Similar methods have been used to devise the tests that are coming into clinical use for cancer detection. Urine or blood can be subjected to a probe that pinpoints a known mutation for cancer.

Humphrey's case highlights the potential of new molecular approaches to make positive diagnoses when other techniques show equivocal results. An earlier diagnosis could have resulted in lifesaving surgery years earlier and might have changed the course of political history. Humphrey might have even had second thoughts about his decision to run for president against Richard M. Nixon in the 1968 campaign. —*D.S.*

cal trials. Still, I remain quite optimistic that within five years, molecular detection—and subsequent strategies for staging and tailoring treatment approaches—will be part of a routine physical examination for most people in the U.S.

There will probably never be a single test that can detect every kind of tumor. Each cancer has its own molecular signature and so will require its own test. Even so, the genetic changes that lead to cancer may also become the disease's ultimate weak point. We can envision the time when a minuscule sample of blood, tissue or various bodily fluids will reveal the presence of a new or metastatic tumor—be it of the lung, breast, colon or another organ—in time to eradicate it. The sensitivity of these tests may change our fundamental conception of cancer. Rather than becoming a frightful diagnosis linked to an inevitable tragedy, early-stage tumors will be caught and cured. SA

The Author

DAVID SIDRANSKY holds joint appointments at the Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine as associate professor of oncology and of otolaryngology (with a specialty in head and neck surgery) and of cellular and molecular medicine. He is also director of the head and neck cancer research division there. He serves as editor of the journals *Predictive Oncology, Clinical Cancer Research* and *Cancer Research*. Sidransky has a research agreement with Oncor. He received his medical degree from the Baylor College of Medicine in Houston in 1984.

Further Reading

MOLECULAR BIOLOGY AND THE EARLY DETECTION OF CARCINOMA OF THE BLADDER—THE CASE OF HUBERT H. HUMPHREY. R. H. Hruban, P. van der Riet, Y. S. Erozan and D. Sidransky in *New England Journal of Medicine,* Vol. 330, No. 18, pages 1276–1278; May 5, 1994.

MOLECULAR SCREENING: HOW LONG CAN WE AFFORD TO WAIT? David Sidransky in *Journal of the National Cancer Institute,* Vol. 86, No. 13, pages 955–956; July 6, 1994.

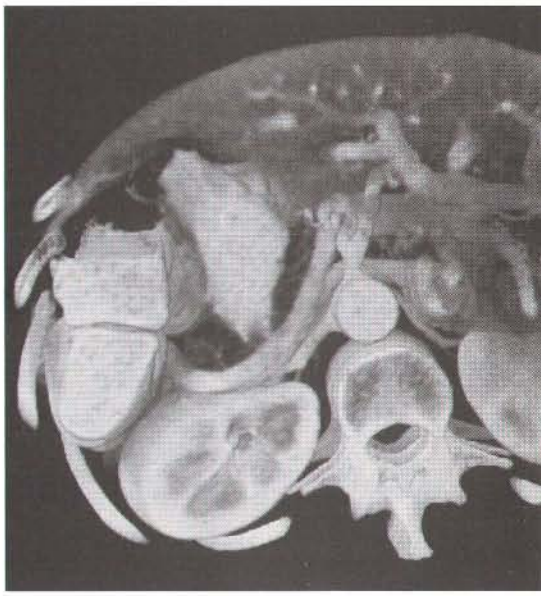
DISCOVERY, TRANSFER AND DIFFUSION OF TECHNOLOGIES FOR THE DETECTION OF GENETIC DISORDERS: POLICY IMPLICATIONS. N. A. Holtzman in *International Journal of Technology Assessment in Health Care,* Vol. 10, No. 4, pages 562–572; Fall 1994.

EMOTIONAL AND BEHAVIORAL RESPONSES TO GENETIC TESTING FOR SUSCEPTIBILITY TO CANCER. Caryn Lerman and Robert T. Croyle in *Oncology,* Vol. 10, No. 2, pages 191–199; February 1996.

Advances in Tumor Imaging

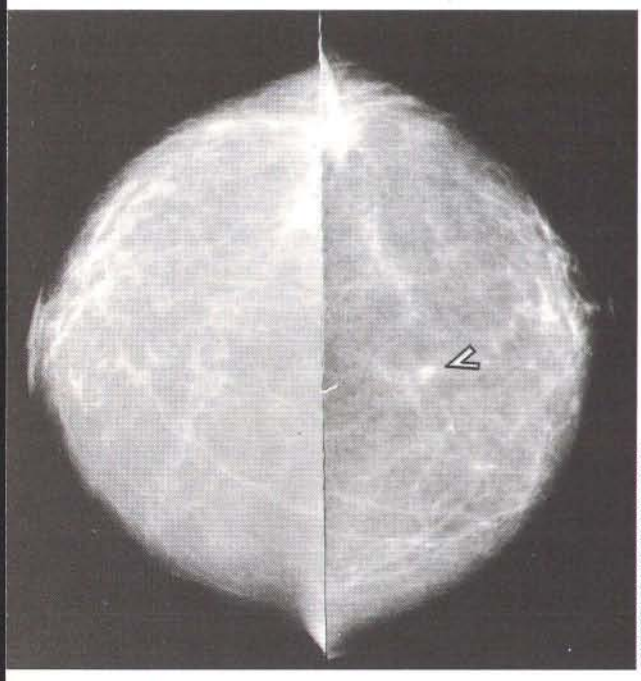
New tools yield a three-dimensional view inside the body and automated advice on interpreting the anatomical landscape

by Maryellen L. Giger and Charles A. Pelizzari



During the past five years, improvements in medical imaging technology have enabled radiologists to make pictures of the human body with unprecedented resolution and clarity. Meanwhile the rapid increase in available computer power has encouraged researchers to develop highly sophisticated techniques for displaying and analyzing those images.

Although radiologists' attention has focused on such advanced techniques as positron-emission tomography (PET) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), both of which can map physiological functions as they take place, the needs of cancer specialists are somewhat different. They require tools that can tease out the subtle differences between cancerous tissue and normal body cells. As yet, however, no imaging technique can identify tumors unambiguously—imaging can only guide more direct explorations, usually by surgery and examination of tissue samples.



COURTESY OF MARYELLEN L. GIGER

ARCHIVED MAMMOGRAMS show left and right breasts of a woman who was later discovered to have breast cancer. Computerized reexamination of these earlier films pointed out a lesion (*arrow*) that had been missed by a radiologist. Such image-analysis software could improve the effectiveness of mammographic screening.

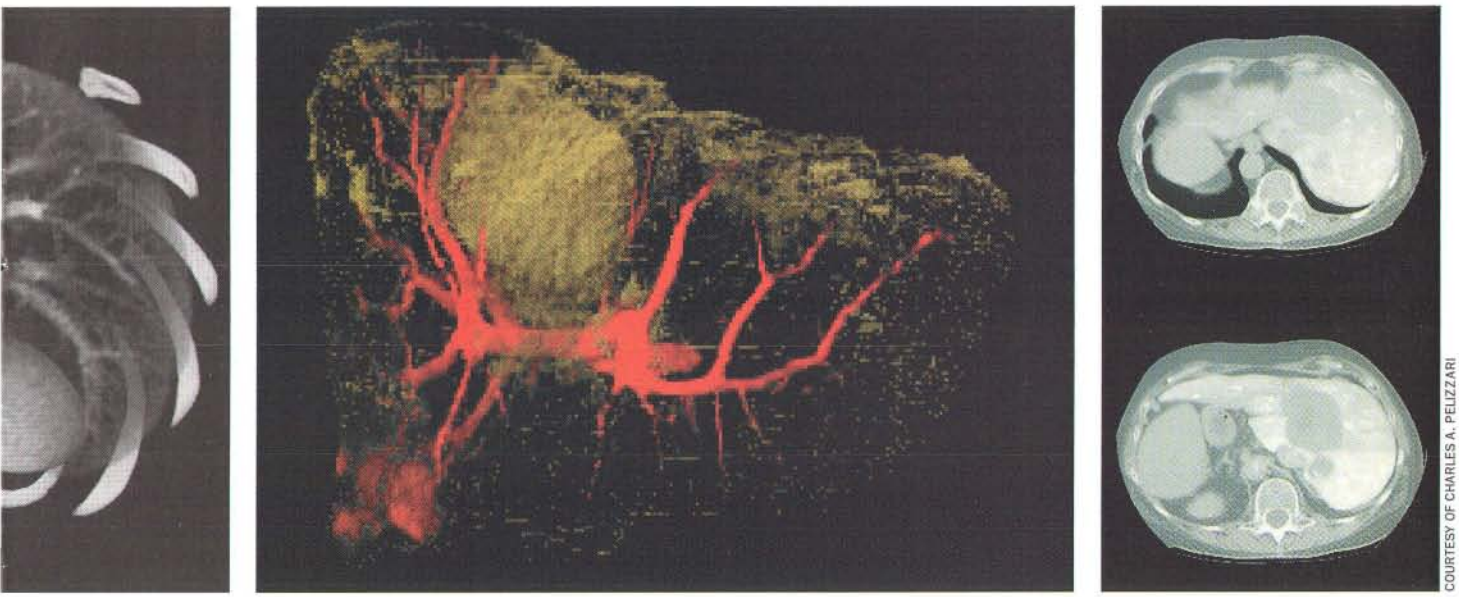
Two new technologies for cancer detection and therapy are three-dimensional multimodality display and computer-aided diagnosis. The display technique employs scientific visualization methods similar to those used in the geosciences or astronomy to fuse information from several imaging tools into a single coherent picture. In the second technique, software incorporating artificial intelligence and machine-vision algorithms can scan mammograms and chest x-rays for telltale signs of cancer. Both methods have adapted software and hardware originally developed for other purposes and turned it to oncological ends. Neither is currently in widespread use, but both appear to be making their way out of the laboratory.

A complete and effective display of the relevant image data for a case can aid physicians in making a precise diagnosis and in designing the best treatment, whether by surgery, radiation or chemotherapy. Current x-ray computed tomographic (CT) scanners, for example, can quickly produce detailed 3-D images of anatomical features.

Three-Dimensional Imaging

In a CT scan, bones appear bright and distinct, but soft tissue such as muscle, blood vessels and tumors frequently appears in almost identical shades of gray. Radiologists can inject contrast agents containing such heavy atoms as iodine to make blood vessels stand out, but modern digital processing is even more valuable for enhancing images. In the past, physicians had to rely on examination of multiple two-dimensional slices rather than 3-D views of an entire data set because of the large volume of data involved. Now high-performance computers and dedicated graphics hardware can display detailed 3-D medical data easily, rotating, magnifying or panning images in as little as a few seconds.

The computer can also add color to images so that the varying shades of x-ray absorption corresponding to different kinds of tissue are immediately distinguishable; the resulting 3-D visualizations aid in understanding the structures of tumors and their relation to the surrounding, normal anatomy. Doctors can readily determine, for example, whether a tumor has infiltrated vital tissues or grown around blood vessels in ways that



COURTESY OF CHARLES A. PELIZZARI

COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHIC SCAN data can be viewed in many different ways to aid physicians in identifying tumors and planning treatment. The image at the left shows a normal liver and most of the torso, as seen from above. A more specialized image (*center*) focuses on a cancerous liver. Normal liver tissue has been rendered mostly transparent, tumor tissue has been colored yellow and hepatic arteries red. Such a display is far more useful than conventional CT slices (*right*).

could complicate its surgical removal.

Other advanced medical imaging methods, including MRI, PET and single-photon-emission computed tomography (SPECT), can produce 3-D images of physiological functions such as blood flow, oxygen consumption or glucose metabolism. MRI, for example, is sensitive to differences in chemical composition and fluid content, and so tumors (whose consistency differs from that of normal tissue) often present a more dramatic, readily comprehensible appearance in these images than in CT. Intact bones contain relatively little fluid and thus appear dark in MRI. PET and SPECT, on the other hand, produce only images of biological functions—they do not show either bones or organs directly. Because PET and SPECT also have limited resolution, they cannot show as much detail as CT or MRI; consequently, the increase in functional information about blood flow and cell metabolism—which can help a doctor understand a tumor's behavior or its response to therapy—is counterbalanced by the loss of precise locational information.

Each of these imaging technologies is currently in use on its own. And although information from a single kind of scan can help assess the location and spread of tumors and identify nearby critical anatomical structures such as organs, nerves and vasculature, the information each method provides often complements that yielded by the others. A view based on several different imaging techniques can be particularly useful. Radiologists may merge PET or SPECT data with an MRI or CT image so they can determine more exactly the metabolic activity of various parts of malignant and normal tissue.

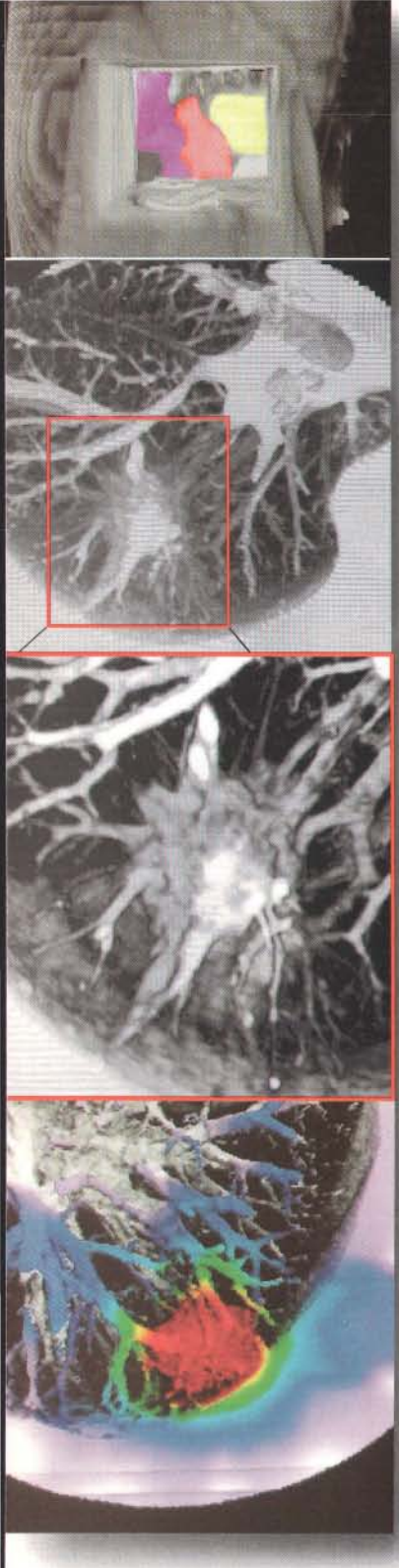
Researchers have recently developed methods for fusing images more precisely by transforming them so that they all have a common scale and spatial reference frame. These image-registration techniques are especially important for smaller tumors. Images can also be overlaid with information from other sources such as radiation-dose calculations. Specialists can then see precisely what regions will be affected by a course of therapy [*see illustration on next page*]. Those who have used these tools are convinced that they improve patient care, but rigorous trials to validate this impression have yet to be designed.

Computer-Aided Diagnosis

In addition to techniques that let physicians see more clearly inside the body, researchers are also developing tools that could help them interpret the images they see. Computer-aided diagnostic tools do not make a definitive decision about the implications of a mammogram or other test; instead they offer an automated "second opinion." We have found that computers analyze images in different ways than people do—the kinds of patterns that machine-vision algorithms can easily identify are not the same as the patterns caught by the human visual system. As a result, computers can complement the radiologist's eye. And the availability of high-quality digitizers and fast computers makes it possible to process medical images in minutes.

Most of the effort expended so far in this area has been on detecting and characterizing abnormalities in digitized mammograms and chest radiographs. Computer-aided diagnostic methods may direct radiologists' attention to suspect regions and so prevent errors of oversight. Such systems are only now progressing beyond the early stages, and many screening cases will need to be analyzed before a final assessment can be made, but initial studies suggest impressive effectiveness.

Although mammography is currently the best method for the detection of breast cancer, some tumors are still difficult to detect. Between 10 and 30 percent of women who undergo mammography and turn out to have breast cancer initially register negative results. These false negatives may occur because of lesions that are intrinsically difficult to detect, poor image quality, eye fatigue or simple oversight. The interpretation of mammograms is a repetitive task that



COURTESY OF CHARLES A. PELIZZARI

3-D RECONSTRUCTIONS can help physicians plan surgery or radiation treatment. Specialized display software can hide irrelevant or obscuring features (as in the view of the prostate at the top). Radiologists magnify areas of interest (such as a lung tumor in the two middle views) and merge CT scan data with other information, as in the bottom image. The colored contours indicate the radiation dose from a particular configuration of beams; blue and green represent the lowest exposure; red is the highest.

requires attention to minute detail. Out of every 1,000 sets of mammograms taken for screening purposes, only about five will actually contain images of cancerous lesions. When two radiologists read the same film, the sensitivity for detection of lesions can increase by 15 percent. This situation suggests that the task of evaluating mammograms may lend itself well to automated computer analysis, to take at least some of the burden from the radiologist. An intelligent workstation would serve as a second reader (like a spell-checker for computerized texts), leaving the final decision regarding the likelihood of the presence of cancer to the radiologist.

At the Kurt Rossmann Laboratories of the University of Chicago's department of radiology, we have been developing such a workstation, which employs various algorithms in computer vision and artificial intelligence to detect breast cancers. We tested the detection software on archived mammograms that had already been manually examined and found that it pointed out 90 percent of the lesions while raising only two false positive queries per mammogram. (A false positive is an area that the program rates as suspicious but that the radiologist ultimately decides does not represent a possible malignancy; radiology residents in training typically generate several false positives per image.) The program flagged 85 percent of clustered microcalcifications, a different kind of abnormality that can also signal cancerous conditions, including ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS). The software generated only 0.6 false positive per image while searching for these tiny spots, which radiologists may sometimes overlook.

We also tested the software on a missed-lesion database. These mammograms, collected over several years, had been classed as tumor-free on first reading, but when a patient showed up with a growth at her next mammographic exam, a second look disclosed signs of cancer on the original film. The computer detected approximately half the lesions, while generating an average of two false positives per image. Had the software been in place at the time, the computer might have helped radiologists find half the cancers that they initially overlooked, resulting in earlier and simpler treatment as well as improving the chances for a cure.

Since November 1994 our intelligent workstation has been analyzing screening mammograms (those taken to check for possible malignancies rather than to monitor ongoing conditions) as they are taken. For each exam, a laser scanner digitizes two images of each breast and converts the film's shades of gray to arrays of numbers in the computer [*see illustration on page 76*]. Image-processing techniques deemphasize background structures and enhance others, such as calcified regions, that may be of diagnostic importance. Feature-extraction software recognizes specific characteristics of individual image regions, classifying them by shape or contrast. Masses whose edges contain many sharp spicules, for example, indicate malignancy. The software can also merge characteristics of the image singled out by the radiologist with those extracted by the computer to aid in diagnosis. Further analysis employs explicit sets of rules about image characteristics and "neural network" software, applied to collections of both cancerous and normal images, to cull the list of suspicious regions and so reduce the number of false positive detections.

As these sophisticated imaging techniques and computer-aided diagnostic software enter more widespread clinical testing, some patients will benefit from them almost immediately. But the ultimate impact of the technology will not be seen for a decade or more. SA

The Authors

MARYELLEN L. GIGER and CHARLES A. PELIZZARI pursue complementary lines of research at the University of Chicago School of Medicine. Giger is an associate professor in the department of radiology; she received her Ph.D. in medical physics from the University of Chicago in 1985. Pelizzari is an associate professor in the department of radiation and cellular oncology; he received his Ph.D. in nuclear engineering from the University of Michigan in 1974.

Further Reading

3D IMAGING IN MEDICINE. Edited by K.-H. Höhne et al. Springer-Verlag, 1990.

3D IMAGING IN MEDICINE. Edited by Jayaram K. Udupa and Gabor T. Herman. CRC Press, 1991.

COMPUTER VISION AND ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE IN MAMMOGRAPHY. C. J. Vyborny and M. L. Giger in *American Journal of Roentgenology,* Vol. 162, No. 3, pages 699–708; March 1994.

IMAGE PROCESSING AND COMPUTER-AIDED DIAGNOSIS. M. L. Giger and H. MacMahon in *Radiologic Clinics of North America.* Edited by R. A. Greenes and R. Bauman (in press).

Should Women in Their 40s Have Mammograms?

For at least four years now, breast cancer specialists have been heatedly arguing among themselves about whether women in their forties benefit from having routine mammograms. In 1993 the National Cancer Institute sparked the debate by proclaiming that women in this age group need not undergo such screening—a reversal of the NCI's previous position and the opposite of the American Cancer Society and of the American Medical Association recommendations.

Physicians, radiologists, statisticians and public health officials have made claims and counterclaims and—with sometimes startling emotion—have accused one another of misreading or misrepresenting data, of performing faulty analyses and of perpetuating myths that have dire consequences for women. Some specialists, as well as cancer societies, women's health advocates and manufacturers of mammography machines, have argued that mass screening saves lives; others on the clinical front lines and in policy-setting roles have contended that evidence from a number of randomized controlled trials does not support such a claim. Instead, they say, the data reveal that younger women whose breasts are scanned by x-rays die at the same rate as those whose breasts are manually examined by a physician on a regular basis.

Maybe the only true consensus to have emerged (at least among epidemiologists) from the protracted and politicized dispute is that it is not possible, given the current data, to prove beyond a statistical shadow of a doubt that mammography lowers the breast cancer death rate in women ages 40 to 49, although there are some who would challenge even this assertion. Given the disagreement, what's a woman to do?

For now, it appears that there are no unequivocal answers. Perhaps a woman's best bet is to educate herself about what mammography can and cannot do and then, with the aid of her physician, decide for herself what course to follow.

One key point to consider is that mammography, though apparently posing little (if any) risk of causing cancer, is not foolproof. By some estimates, 10 to 15 percent of women in any age group who walk away from a mammogram assured that they are free of cancer go on to acquire it within a year. In some cases, the disease stems from rapidly growing malignancies that emerged after screening; in others, from tumors that just failed to show up on the film. In addition, false negatives may result from a radiologist's lack of skill or experience, from too few readers (studies have shown that more cancers are caught by two independent readers than by a solo reader), from use of older equipment and because women in their forties often have dense breasts, which are harder to read clearly.

Perhaps a woman's best bet is to educate herself about what mammography can and cannot do.

Mammography also results in a substantial number of false positive readings, and anyone undergoing the exam should brace herself for the possibility that her mammogram will fall among the 5 to 10 percent considered suspicious enough to warrant further investigation. And of these, the majority (between 60 and 93 percent) turn out to be associated with benign conditions.

But reaching a final determination may also require one or more biopsies under local or general anesthesia. Aside from the expense and time it takes, this process can also be physically taxing and anxiety-provoking. If the positive reading produces a diagnosis of ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS)—and some 15 to 20 percent of "cancers" discovered by mammography fall into this category—the woman faces yet another decision for which medical science can offer only marginal assistance.

DCIS, which was virtually unknown before the development of mammography, does not proceed inevitably to invasive cancer. But with no way of telling when or whether the abnormal cells will escape from the constraining ducts and flare into deadly disease, most physicians recommend excising the affected area or, in some cases, the whole breast.

Yet even if a mammogram reveals an invasive malignancy that is still so small it cannot be felt, no one has been able to demonstrate indisputably that early detection reduces mortality. Which puts us back in the thick of the debate.

Daniel B. Kopans of Massachusetts General Hospital insists that faulty interpretations have muddied the picture and that when eight major studies of mammography are correctly analyzed, they show a clear benefit in terms of mortality reduction. Kopans has also written, in the volume *Important Advances in Oncology 1995* (J. B. Lippincott), that "screening for breast cancer is not, primarily, a public health issue, but a question for the woman who is interested in reducing her risk of dying from breast cancer."

Taking the opposite view, Cornelia J. Baines of the University of Toronto has made the case that catching cancers early, often before they can be felt, does not reduce the overall toll of the disease. Women trying to decide whether to undergo mammography, Baines wrote in the same volume, face an "uncomfortable choice. Will they choose to know they have breast cancer for the last 10 years of their life and to have a small tumor treated? Or will they choose to know they have breast cancer for the last five years of their life and to have a larger tumor treated?"

Despite reluctance to support broad-based screening programs, most experts in the field agree that women at high risk should receive regular mammograms. A strong factor raising a woman's risk is having a mother or sisters with breast cancer. Weaker factors include commencing menstruation before 12 years old; being childless or bearing one's first child after turning 30; or being obese.

Given that a woman's likelihood of acquiring breast cancer in her forties is less than 2 percent and that her chance of dying from it within a decade is even smaller, most women in this age group are unlikely to have to confront the disease. For those who do fall prey, the disquieting word from some specialists is that medicine can offer slim solace to those with the most aggressive form of the disease.—*Gina Maranto is a science and health writer based in Florida.*

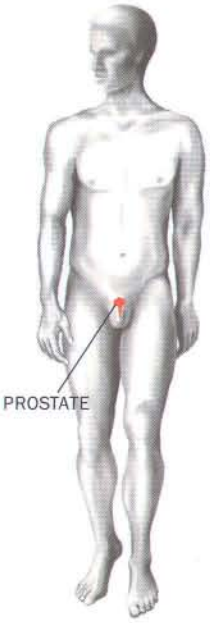
ROBERTO OSTI

Does Screening for Prostate Cancer Make Sense?

ROBERTO OSTI

Since 1990 the reported number of new cases of prostate cancer has tripled, from fewer than 100,000 annually to an estimated 317,100 this year. The jump in incidence is largely the result of the introduction of tests, beginning in the late 1980s, that can signal the presence of previously undetectable cancer. By measuring the amount of a protein called prostate-specific antigen (PSA) in a male adult's blood, the tests may unmask a cancerous prostate five years or more before other symptoms arise.

On its face, extending PSA testing to all men seems an obviously desirable goal. As a rule, the earlier someone's cancer is detected, the better the person's prospects for cure. And this cancer now takes a high toll: more than 40,000 men will die of it in 1996, making it the second leading cause of cancer death (after lung cancer) and the sixth leading cause of death overall among American men. Prostate cancer is often characterized as a disease that older men die *with* rather than *of* (because it often progresses more slowly than other cancers do). Its incidence, mortality rate and mean age at diagnosis are in fact very similar to breast cancer statistics. Furthermore, once prostate cancer reaches an advanced stage, there is no effective therapy.



JENNIFER C. CHRISTIANSEN

Yet many physicians, policymakers and patients are questioning the wisdom of widespread PSA screening. In addition to the billions of dollars required for universal screening and subsequent potential treatment, they are deterred by the fact that no one actually knows whether such testing would benefit the average man or reduce overall mortality for the population as a whole.

The favorable arguments are many. PSA is an effective screening tool: biopsies reveal cancer in about a third of men with elevated PSA levels. Screening clearly detects many tumors that would be missed by the traditional rectal examination, in which a physician feels the prostate. In addition, cancers detected by PSA screening are almost always larger and more aggressive than the indolent tumors found incidentally at autopsy in men who die of other causes.

PSA testing also often detects cancer at an early stage, when it is most likely to respond to treatment. Before PSA testing was introduced, two thirds of prostate cancers found had already spread beyond the prostate, making them essentially incurable. Most patients faced a choice between hormone therapy and removal of the testes, neither of which conferred more than a few years of survival. Today nearly two thirds of prostate cancers detected in screening programs and treated surgically are confined to the gland and can thus be eradicated by surgery or radiation.

For such reasons, both the American Cancer Society and the American Urological Association currently recommend that healthy men older than 50 years who have a life expectancy of at least 10 years undergo both rectal examination and PSA testing annually. Men at high risk for prostate cancer, including African-Americans (whose diet and average health care status appear to predispose them to the disease) and those with a family history of the disease, should begin testing at age 40.

At the same time, there is no unequivocal evidence that early detection through periodic screening with PSA measurements (or rectal examinations, for that matter) in fact reduces the chances of death from prostate cancer.

Some critics point to mortality figures as evidence that PSA testing does not save lives. They note that the enormous rise in early detection through PSA has not yielded a substantial change in death rates during the past decade. But this argument does not hold water. Because prostate cancer often progresses more slowly than other cancers, taking 10 years or more to become deadly, decreases in death rates would not be expected to show up for many years. If PSA screening does influence mortality, the effect probably will not be noticeable until after the turn of the century.

Other concerns about the value of PSA screening arise from the perhaps surprising fact that most growths of cancerous cells within the prostate do not lead to serious illness or death. A third of men over age 50 harbor some form of the cancer, but only between 6 and 10 percent will acquire the type likely to lead to death or disability. And only about 3 percent eventually die of it.

Most prostate tumors are tiny and consist of well-differentiated or moderately differentiated cells; they are unlikely to cause clinical disease within the remaining life expectancy of a man older than 70 years. A small proportion are large and contain highly irregular cells that metastasize early, killing patients within a few years of their spread to other parts of the body. Unfortunately for simple medical decision making, most malignancies detected today, especially by means of PSA tests, fall into an intermediate range whose variable natural history makes it difficult to distinguish those likely to progress rapidly from those that can safely be left alone.

Computer models of the value of early detection and treatment suggest that screening millions of men may offer little overall benefit to society in terms of either improved health or allocation of scarce medical resources. Critics worry about unnecessary costs and distress to patients. The two thirds of men who undergo biopsy as a result of elevated PSA only to learn that they have no apparent cancer are exposed to unwarranted stress and anxiety as well as some risk of infection and bleeding. To these negatives must be added the hazards of treatment (which can include urinary incontinence and impotence) for a further minority whose cancer would otherwise have remained undetected for the rest of their lives. The widespread use of PSA testing to screen men with no symptoms of prostate cancer, then, could mean that many tumors that would previously have had no effect on people's lives will now be detected and treated at substantial costs in dollars and in suffering. Only time will tell whether the count of significant yet treatable cancers

uncovered—and the resulting survival benefits—outweighs these costs.

Assuming that a prostate cancer, once detected, is both dangerous and still potentially curable, there remains considerable controversy about how to treat it. The three best understood alternatives are "watchful waiting," external irradiation and surgical prostatectomy. The choice of treatment for any given case is a divisive issue for both physician and patient. Each has its pros and cons, and there is no consensus on which is best.

Radical prostatectomy has been used to treat prostate cancer since 1903. Since 1984 the number of operations performed each year has increased more than sixfold, with an estimated 160,000 done in 1995. Its major advantage is that if the disease is truly localized, cancerous cells can be removed completely, effectively curing the patient in as many as 70 percent of cases. More than four out of five patients who have no detectable PSA five years after surgery never show signs of recurrence.

The immediate price a patient pays for this effectiveness is a major operation with a stay in the hospital and an extended recovery. Longer-term side effects may include several months of urinary stress incontinence (with a chance of permanent incontinence between 3 and 5 percent) and six months to a year of erectile impotence (with a chance of permanent loss between 30 and 50 percent). The rate at which function returns (if it does) depends on the patient's age, previous state of sexual function and the extent of the operation to remove the cancer. Medical centers that have extensive experience with prostate surgery also tend to produce better results.

External irradiation can eliminate the cancer for the remaining life of the patient while avoiding some of the immediate postoperative side effects. It has its own risks, including diarrhea from radiation-induced inflammation of the rectum in the short term and chronic radiation injury to the rectum and gradual decline of sexual function over the long term. Newer conformal radiation therapy employs carefully shaped beams to maximize the destruction of cancer cells while limiting damage to surrounding tissue. The technique reduces the risk of bowel damage to about one in 100 and that of impotence to about one in three. The National Cancer Institute's consensus conference on prostate cancer, held in 1987, concluded that the survival rates for surgery and for radiation were indistinguishable at both five and 10 years after treatment.

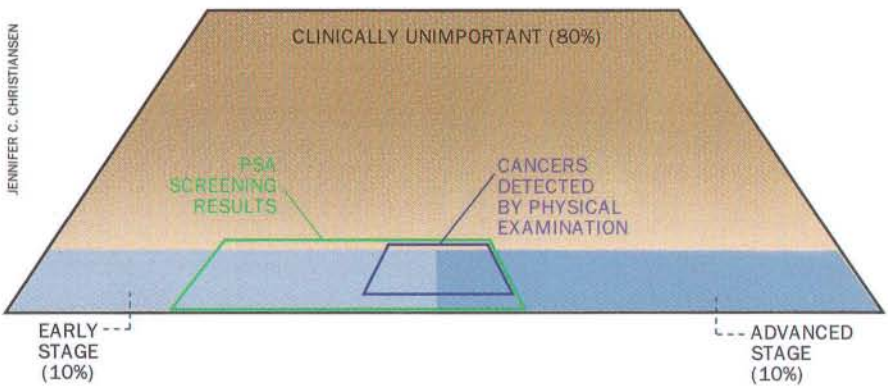
The PSA test is in wide use. Should it be?

Watchful waiting, the most conservative option, avoids treatment-related risks, but it subjects a man to constant anxiety about progression of his cancer and the possibility of a protracted, painful death. Such conservative treatment does not imply postponing therapy but rather a deliberate decision to forgo attempts to cure the cancer in the belief that a patient may well die of old age or some other cause before the malignancy leads to debility or death. Such patients should expect to need palliative treatment, including hormones or radiotherapy, if the cancer progresses. Some studies have suggested that no treatment results in survival rates equal to those of surgery or of radiation, but those studies all suffer from flaws that make them inconclusive [see "The Dilemmas of Prostate Cancer," by Marc B. Garnick; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, April 1994].

Cancerous prostate tissue can also be treated by cryotherapy (insertion of a probe cooled with liquid nitrogen) or interstitial seed implantation, which employs tiny radioactive pellets whose intense radiation does not penetrate far enough to reach other tissue. Not enough is known thus far about the side effects or success rates of either method to permit comparison with established therapies.

PSA testing has revolutionized our understanding of prostate cancer and led to a dramatic increase in its detection. As a result, prostate cancers are being detected far earlier than before, at a time when most cancers can be treated with a high probability of cure. Nevertheless, such screening, and the treatment of tumors once detected, remains among the most controversial subjects in medicine.

Appropriate studies to determine the value of PSA testing in reducing the overall rate of death from prostate cancer—or in extending life in general (given that so many prostate patients die of other causes)—have simply not been done. Some large, long-term randomized trials and studies of easily tracked populations are now under way, including the NCI's Prostate, Lung, Colon and Ovarian Cancer Screening Trial. Even so, results will not be available for at least 10 years. Until then, men must decide for themselves whether the potential life-extending benefits of PSA screening and treatment outweigh the risks.



SMALL PERCENTAGE of the estimated eight million American men who have cancerous cells in their prostate will be harmed by the disease. Of the cancers that could affect health, only about 6 percent are found by rectal examinations. Although critics of PSA screening worry that it will catch mostly insignificant or untreatable cancers, it appears to be detecting early, treatable ones instead (*green outline*).

GERALD E. HANKS AND PETER T. SCARDINO specialize in prostate cancer research. Hanks is chair of the department of radiation oncology at the Fox Chase Cancer Center in Philadelphia. Scardino is chair of the department of urology at the Baylor College of Medicine in Houston.

In the fight against disease, this could be the most powerful weapon yet.

It's not magic. But it may yet work miracles.

This is the trademark of a completely different kind of pharmaceutical venture.

The recently-merged Pharmacia & Upjohn.

It's a partnership that has created a company of quite remarkable depth and scope: over 30,000 people working in 50 countries and serving 200 million people around the world.

And it's for those 200 million people that this announcement should come as very good news.

Because the merger will give two pools of specialized medical talent the opportunity to work together for the first time ever.

Resulting in real, tangible benefits in the fight against cancer, AIDS, infectious diseases and many other medical conditions.

This merger is not simply a matter of shared resources, however.

It is also about shared ideals.

Our trademark stands as a symbol for humanity, hope and inspiration.

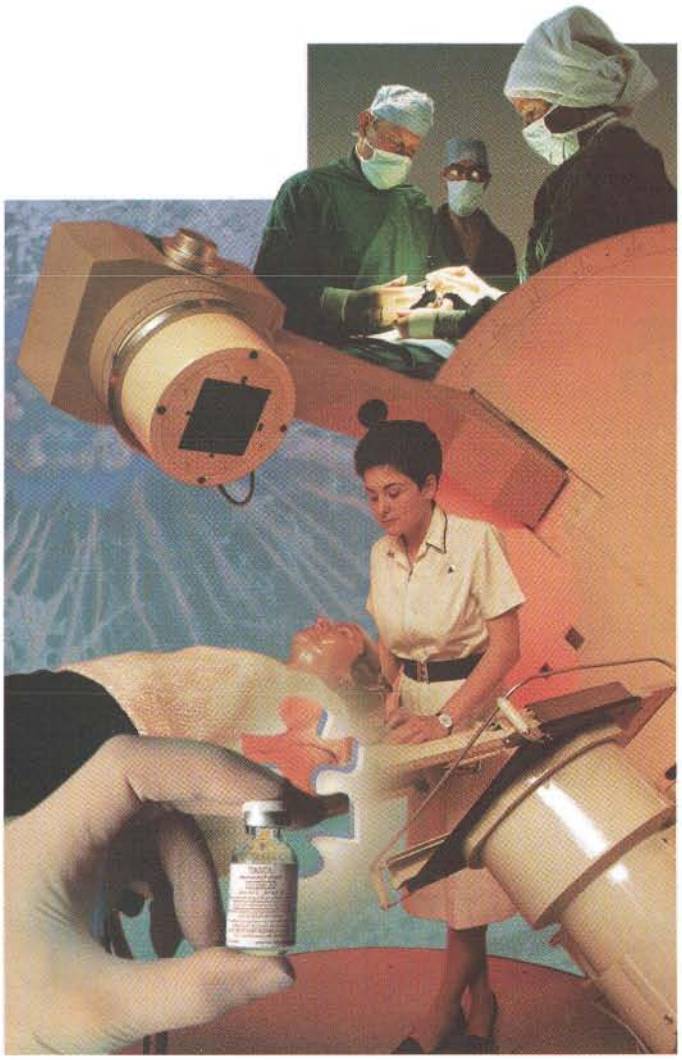
Values that we intend to apply to every single aspect of the way we do business.

You are surprised to hear such sentiments coming from a global pharmaceutical company?

This is not the last time we'll be surprising you.

You can be sure of that.

Pharmacia &Upjohn



Improving Conventional Therapy

The mainstays of cancer treatment—surgery, radiation and chemotherapy—are being refined and combined in ways that can help patients enjoy longer, more fulfilling lives.

CONTENTS

PHOTOMONTAGE BY PATRICIA McDERMOND
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF PHOTO RESEARCHERS, INC.

Advancing Current Treatments for Cancer

Surgery, radiation and chemotherapy can now cure many cases of cancer. Future methods will be even more effective

by Samuel Hellman and Everett E. Vokes

People often express hope for a cure for cancer—as though cancer sufferers never recover. In fact, most patients with skin cancer and about half the people treated for internal cancers are completely freed of their disease. But the longing for a cure that echoes throughout society reflects a legitimate dissatisfaction with current treatments. The therapies now available for internal tumors often give rise to side effects so harmful that they compromise the benefits of treatment. Existing therapies for such internal cancers can also fail in many cases, a sad reality that forces physicians to quote survival statistics to their patients instead of providing solid assurances of a recovery.

The situation should be much better. Cures for cancer should be more like the antibiotics physicians administer for infectious diseases. Anticancer treatments should be safe, effective and discriminating. Their actions should be limited to cancer cells and should result in few, if any, side effects. Most important, treatment should consistently return the patient to his or her former state of health.

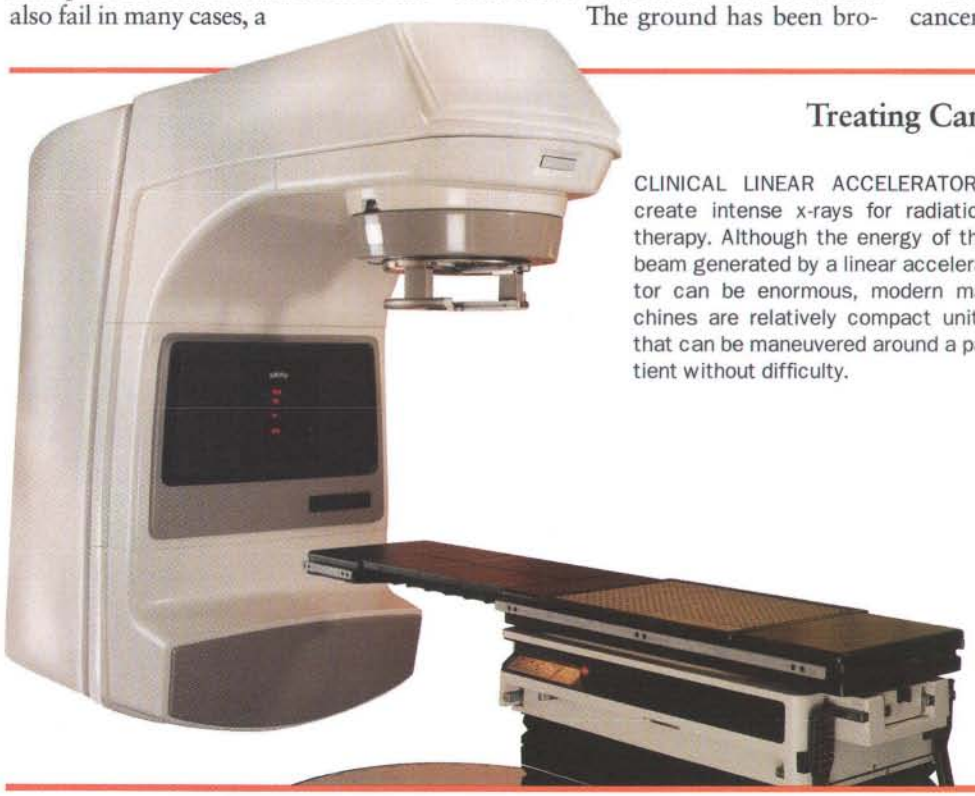
The ground has been broken for constructing such ideal remedies, but the completion of these ambitious projects will require medical researchers to deepen their understanding of the mechanisms that underlie various forms of cancer.

Current Treatments for Cancer

Cancer is not a single disease. Rather it encompasses a large group of highly varied disorders that share certain key characteristics. Three of the features common to the many different cancers give rise to their most deleterious effects. The first and most fundamental quality of cancerous tissue is its continued enlargement (often the cause of the patient's symptoms) through the ability of cancer cells to proliferate indefinitely. Associated with this uncontrolled cell growth and division is the invasion of the tumor into surrounding normal tissue. Lastly, there is the most feared aspect of cancer: its tendency to spread throughout the body when cancer cells break away from the primary tumor, voyage through the circulatory system and establish colonies at distant sites—the process of metastasis. Most current cancer treatments aim to combat uncontrolled growth, tissue invasion and metastasis.

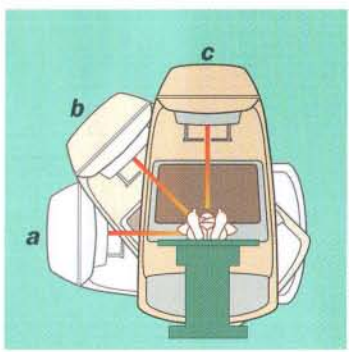
The earliest therapy established for cancer—and still the most widely used

Treating Cancer with Radiation



COURTESY OF VARIAN ONCOLOGY SYSTEMS

CLINICAL LINEAR ACCELERATORS create intense x-rays for radiation therapy. Although the energy of the beam generated by a linear accelerator can be enormous, modern machines are relatively compact units that can be maneuvered around a patient without difficulty.



ANDREW CHRISTIE *Slim Films*

ROTATION of the linear accelerator around the patient allows the beam to irradiate the tumor from different directions. Variation of the path traversed by the x-ray beam concentrates the radiation in the tumor and so minimizes damage to surrounding healthy tissue.

approach—is surgery. Surgical excision of a tumor is both quick and effective, and it accounts for the largest number of cures. Surgery is also the one method of therapy that offers the opportunity to confirm that a tumor has been fully excised, because a pathologist can examine the specimen removed (which should contain a layer of unaltered cells fully surrounding the cancerous ones).

Unfortunately, this form of treatment has several critical shortcomings. Removal of the tumor mass visible to the surgeon does not in itself guarantee elimination of the microscopic extensions that so often characterize cancer. To fully encompass this invasive edge around a tumor, a surgeon may be forced to cut out a large amount of healthy tissue and in doing so may severely damage the patient's functioning or appearance. Sometimes cancer grips vital structures that cannot be surgically removed. Even when surgery is possible, major operations (and the general anesthesia required for them) invariably traumatize patients. Perhaps the most crucial limitation of surgery is that it cannot treat cancer that has metastasized widely throughout the body.

Radiation therapy is preferable to surgery in many instances. With this method, powerful x-rays or gamma rays (delivered by using an externally applied beam or, in some instances, by implanting tiny radioactive sources) irradiate the region of the patient's cancerous tumor. Radiation treatments act either by inflicting genetic damage sufficient to kill cells directly or by inducing cellular suicide, a process called apoptosis, which is deeply ingrained in mammalian cells. (Apoptosis is especially important during the embryonic development of mammals, when structures, such as gills, arise but then are lost as the cells constituting them undergo programmed cell death.)

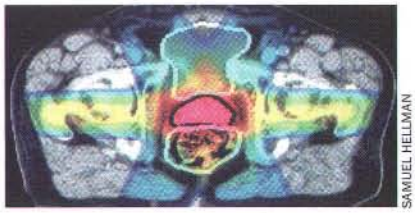
Because healthy tissues can recover from radiation exposure more readily than cancerous cells, radiation therapy can preserve the anatomical structures that surround a cancerous growth, thus curing the cancer without sacrificing the patient's ability to function. Cancer of the uterine cervix and the early stages of both prostate cancer and Hodgkin's disease are well treated with radiation therapy. This technique is also especially important for treating cancer of the larynx (voice box), which can be cured without impairing the patient's ability to speak.

In addition to preserving normal tissue, radiation therapy has other advantages over surgical removal of a tumor. Radiation can, for instance, destroy microscopic extensions of cancerous tissue around a tumor that a scalpel might miss. Radiation is a safer option for older, frailer patients who might have difficulty recovering from surgery. Patients treated with radiation routinely receive five to eight weeks of daily treatments without requiring hospitalization.

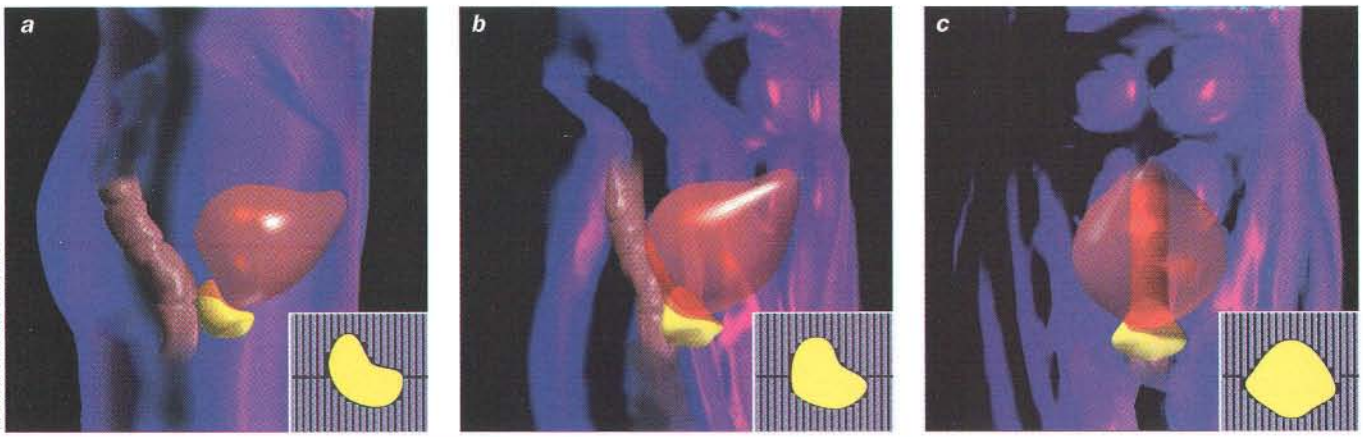
Despite these many attractive attributes, radiation therapy at times proves inadequate, because it—like surgery—sometimes fails to eradicate all the cancer cells of a tumor. And like surgery, radiation cannot treat widespread metastases that will eventually form full-fledged tumors at numerous sites. (Whole-body radiation exposure sufficient to kill widely dispersed cancer cells would destroy some delicate tissues that are vital.) In such cases, a patient must make use of chemotherapy, the systemic administration of anticancer drugs that travel throughout the body via the blood circulatory system. Many different compounds are currently in use as anticancer agents, and additional ones are constantly being screened and tested. Chemotherapeutic drugs typically operate on human cells much as do some antibiotics on bacteria: they prevent cells from multiplying by interfering with their ability to replicate DNA. In at least some cases, anticancer drugs (like radiation treatment) appear to induce apoptosis in cancerous cells.

The first chemotherapeutic drugs, developed during the 1940s, often proved inadequate when administered individually or even in sequence. But during

CONFORMAL RADIOTHERAPY requires that the shape and direction of the x-ray beam change continually. For example, in applying radiation to treat prostate cancer, the shape of the beam varies to match the outline of the prostate (*yellow*), whether the beam is directed from the side (*a*), from an oblique angle (*b*) or from the front (*c*). Adjacent organs, such as the colon (*pink*) and bladder (*orange*), are thus spared unnecessary irradiation. In some facilities, a computerized mechanism sculpts the beam (*insets below*) by adjusting the position of a set of metal fingers in the aperture of the linear accelerator. The result is to deposit most of the therapeutic radiation (*red area, right*) where the target appears on a computed tomographic scan (*black outline, right*).



SAMUEL HELLMAN



ANDREW CHRISTIE *Slim Films*

the 1960s, physicians discovered that chemotherapy could cure some cancers when several drugs were given at the same time. Many malignancies—leukemias, lymphomas and testicular cancer—are now successfully treated by such combination chemotherapy. Such cures are particularly meaningful because these cancers frequently strike young people, who stand to gain many more years of life than typical cancer patients do. Unfortunately, the majority of the most common cancers (breast, lung, colorectal and prostate cancer) are not yet curable with chemotherapy alone. For these conditions, chemotherapy can serve only as one component in an overall program of care that may also involve surgery and radiation.

The available chemotherapeutic drugs often fail patients because they kill many healthy cells and thus bring on serious side effects that limit the doses physicians can administer. Damage to the rapidly growing cells of the bone marrow, for instance, causes anemia, an inability to fight infection and a propensity for internal bleeding, because the patient cannot produce an adequate number of red blood cells, white blood cells and platelets (the cells responsible for clotting). Other side effects of chemotherapy include diarrhea, nausea, vomiting and hair loss. Less commonly, these drugs may damage the nervous system.

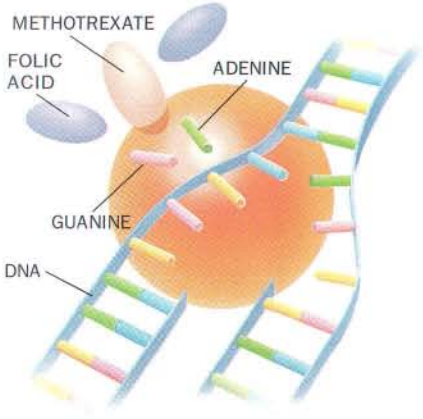
Although strategies for ameliorating many of these unwanted side effects are quickly evolving, chemotherapy as currently offered retains another fundamental weakness. Like bacteria resistant to antibiotics, some tumors are able to survive the anticancer drugs used to treat them. Certain tumors prove to be drug resistant from the outset, whereas others develop resistance with repeated treatment. The problem of drug resistance in chemotherapy is particularly serious because tumors can develop a resistance to multiple drugs after only one drug has been administered to the patient.

Another kind of drug therapy, available for some cancers, sidesteps many of the difficulties associated with chemotherapy. The alternative scheme works by manipulating the body's endocrine system. The breast and prostate are glands regulated by sex hormones, and malignancies that arise from those tissues may also respond to these hormones. This sensitivity can be exploited: physicians can administer antiestrogens to women with breast cancer, and they can give drugs that provide a so-called androgen blockade for men with prostate cancer. Such hormone therapy has relatively mild side effects, because its actions are limited largely to tissues with receptors for specific hormones. Hormone therapy is, however, valuable only to patients with tumors of these particular tissues. And even with people so afflicted, this approach sometimes proves ineffective, because tumors of the breast and prostate may contain some hor-

Families of Chemotherapeutic Drugs

ANTIMETABOLITES

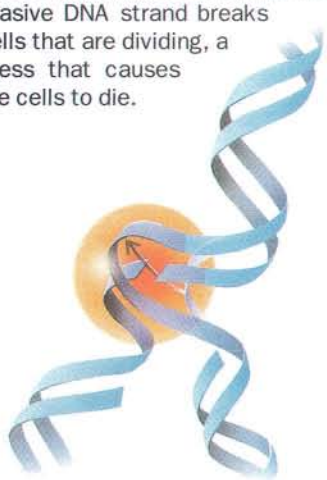
Some anticancer compounds act as false substances in the biochemical reactions of a living cell. A prime example of such a drug is methotrexate, which is a chemical analogue for the nutrient folic acid. Methotrexate functions, in part, by binding to an enzyme (*orange*) normally involved in the conversion of folic acid into two of the building blocks of DNA, adenine and guanine. This drug thus prevents cells from dividing by incapacitating their ability to construct new DNA.



Examples: methotrexate, fluorouracil, gemcitabine

TOPOISOMERASE INHIBITORS

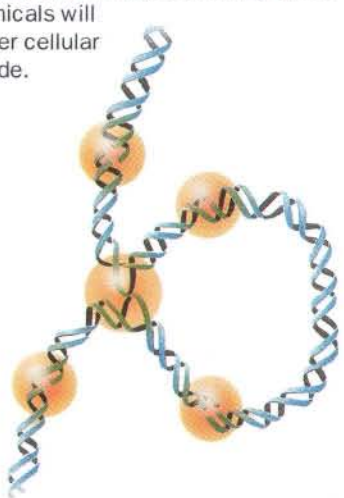
Replication of a cell's genetic material requires a means to pull the DNA double helix apart into two strands. This separation is typically accomplished with the aid of a special "topoisomerase" enzyme (*orange*) that temporarily cleaves one strand, passes the other strand through the break and then reattaches the cut ends together. Drugs that inhibit the ability of topoisomerase enzymes to reattach the broken ends cause pervasive DNA strand breaks in cells that are dividing, a process that causes these cells to die.



Examples: doxorubicin, CPT-11

ALKYLATING AGENTS

Certain compounds (*orange*) form chemical bonds with particular DNA building blocks and so produce defects in the normal double helical structure of the DNA molecule. This disruption may take the form of breaks and inappropriate links between (or within) strands. If not mended by the various DNA repair mechanisms available to the cell, the damage caused by these chemicals will trigger cellular suicide.



Examples: cyclophosphamide, chlorambucil

mone-independent cells that can still proliferate dangerously.

Combining Different Treatments

Physicians can categorize most solid tumors at the time of initial diagnosis according to extent of progression. In general, small tumors that have not spread to lymph nodes or other distant sites are denoted as being in stage one. Stage-two and stage-three tumors are more advanced, being larger and involving more lymph nodes. Stage-four tumors have progressed to the point of establishing readily detectable metastases elsewhere in the body.

Physicians use surgery or radiotherapy to destroy early-stage tumors at their primary sites and, if necessary, in nearby lymph nodes. For patients with stage-four tumors, the prognosis is usually grim, and caregivers typically devise therapies aimed only at reducing the person's immediate symptoms and at extending survival. (Chemotherapy usually serves these aims in such advanced cases.) Therapy for intermediate stages of cancer is difficult to categorize simply, and its methods of treatment are changing the most swiftly. Patients with intermediate-stage tumors can often be cured, having all traces of their cancer completely eliminated. Yet many patients will experience only a temporary remission before recurrence of cancer because microscopic tumor deposits (rogue cells that were present but undiscovered at the time of initial diagnosis) will ultimately grow out of control.

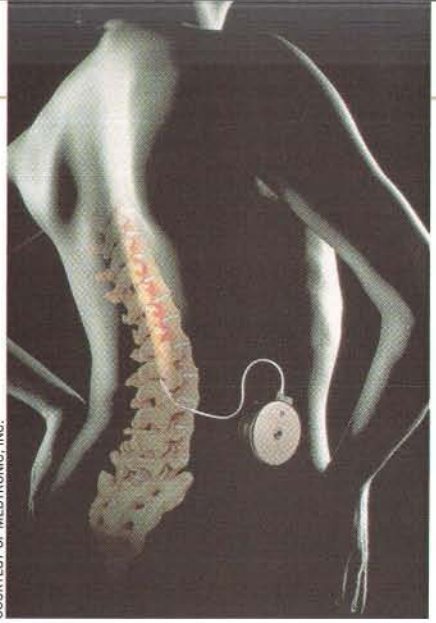
For people with intermediate-stage cancers, physicians increasingly employ various mixtures of distinct treatments in so-called combined modality therapy. Combined modality therapy can demand the efforts of a wide assortment of specialists—oncologists, surgeons, pathologists and radiologists—and the coordination of this care often poses a logistical challenge.

The most common combination of cancer treatments is surgery or radiotherapy followed up with chemotherapy. Perhaps the best example of this approach is found in the current treatment of breast cancer. Surgical removal of the tumor and a small amount of surrounding tissue (a procedure called lumpectomy), when combined with radiation and drug therapy, has improved the cure rate of breast cancer and has made removal of the breast unnecessary in most cases. A similar strategy has also been shown to increase the rate of cure for colorectal cancer and for some cancers of bone and soft tissue.

A newer form of combined modality therapy—induction chemotherapy—applies chemotherapy first and surgery or radiotherapy afterward. This procedure allows an oncologist to gauge the effectiveness of the chemotherapeutic drugs by observing how fast the primary tumor shrinks.

Induction chemotherapy permits treatment of tumor cells disseminated throughout the body—systemic micrometastases—as early as possible. In some cases, it may reduce or even eliminate the need for organ-removing surgery. For example, patients with advanced cancers of the head and neck have traditionally been treated with surgery and radiotherapy, yet they often succumbed to the disease. Those patients who survived radical surgical procedures were sometimes left unable to speak. Induction chemotherapy followed by radiotherapy can achieve similar survival rates without producing this devastating impairment. Physicians have similarly used induction chemotherapy successfully to treat cancer of the lung and bladder; in the latter case, this therapy often renders removal of the bladder unnecessary. Induction hormone therapy, with later radiation or surgery, can also be quite effective in treating prostate cancer.

Chemotherapy or hormonal therapy can also be administered at the same time as surgery or radiotherapy. This approach, known as concomitant chemoradiotherapy, is particularly valuable for treating tumors that are likely to respond poorly to surgery or radiotherapy alone (that is, tumors that would most probably survive these treatments or have already metastasized). The treatment of cancer of the esophagus, for example, has been shown to be more successful with concomitant chemoradiotherapy than with radiotherapy alone. The addition of chemotherapy in these cases reduces the chance that the cancer will later return to that region of the body or develop in some other organ.



COURTESY OF MEDTRONIC, INC.

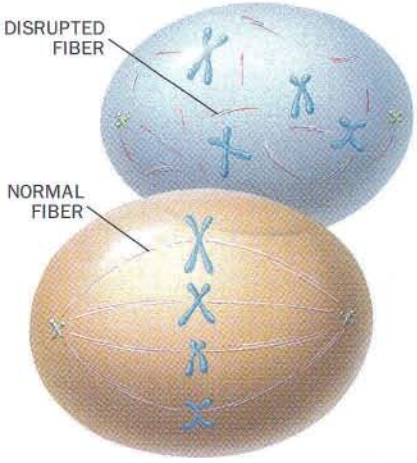
IMPLANTABLE PUMPS, placed under the skin in a patient's abdomen or chest, allow chemotherapeutic drugs and narcotics to be infused continuously, thereby helping to relieve some chronic, intractable cancer pain.

Future Prospects

New surgical techniques involving tiny incisions and special instruments that let surgeons see and operate deep within a patient's body are becoming more frequently applied in cancer

PLANT ALKALOIDS

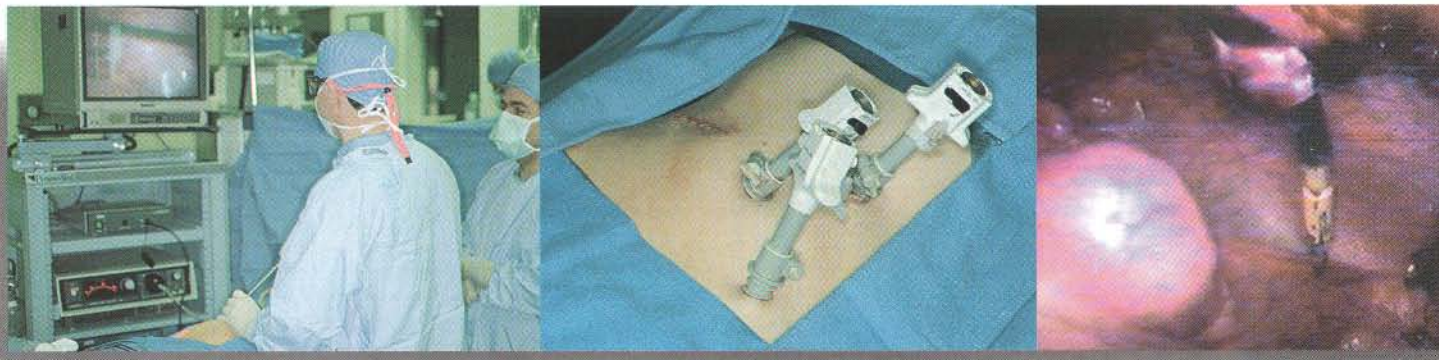
Certain substances derived from plants can prevent cell division by binding to the protein tubulin. Tubulin, as its name implies, forms microtubular fibers (*pink*) that help to orchestrate cell division. These fibers pull duplicated DNA chromosomes to either side of the parental cell, ensuring that each daughter cell receives a full set of genetic blueprints. Drugs that interfere with the assembly or disassembly of these tubulin fibers can prevent cells from dividing successfully.



TOMO NARASHIMA

Examples: vinblastine, vinorelbine, paclitaxel, docetaxel

therapy. These methods should help spare some cancer patients the trauma of traditional surgery. But the largest strides in cancer treatment will undoubtedly derive from advances in radiation therapy and chemotherapy that increase the effectiveness of these methods in killing cancer cells without causing permanent damage to healthy tissues. Some gains may take many years to become routinely available to cancer patients, but others appear to be on the threshold of widespread application.



PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF MAYO CLINIC; PETER SAMEK, *Slim Films*

COLON SURGERY has traditionally required a large incision to open the patient's abdomen fully, but laparoscopically assisted operations now allow colon cancer to be treated with far less trauma to the patient. Physicians at the Mayo Clinic and several other institutions are currently conducting clinical trials of this procedure (*far left*), whereby surgical instruments penetrate small holes in the abdominal wall (*left of center*). While monitoring video images of the inside of the patient's inflated abdomen, surgeons detach a section of bowel from the side of the abdominal wall (*right of center*). They can then bring part of the bowel outside the body through a small incision and remove the cancerous segment (*far right*).

Radiation therapy, for instance, is improving rapidly as medical practitioners grow increasingly able to tailor each treatment to the circumstances of the patient's cancer. In particular, technological innovations now allow therapists to manipulate external beams of radiation so as to target the tumor precisely, avoiding harm to surrounding tissues. Such techniques go under the banner of conformal radiotherapy, because the beam of radiation conforms closely to the shape of the tumor.

Conformal radiotherapy requires an array of advanced technology. First, the three-dimensional configuration of the tumor must be ascertained by computed tomographic x-ray scans or magnetic resonance imaging. This information, recorded digitally, becomes the basis for a detailed treatment plan that specifies the direction and shape of the beam (as well as the intensity and duration of the irradiation). That plan maximizes the dose of radiation absorbed by the tumor while minimizing the exposure of the surrounding tissue. The prescribed radiation treatment is then delivered under computer control using a linear accelerator, a relatively compact instrument that can generate high-intensity x-rays yet still be maneuvered readily around the patient.

Conformal radiotherapy lets a collaborating team of physicians, radiation physicists and therapists safely increase the dose—and with it the likelihood of cure—administered to prostate tumors without raising (and, in fact, sometimes reducing) the injury done to disease-free tissue. Groups of medical researchers are also applying this technique experimentally to many other localized tumors and even to multiple metastases in those special circumstances when only a few metastases occur. Another emerging technique in conformal radiotherapy treats brain tumors by using a special frame affixed directly to the patient's cranium. By aiming the x-ray source with respect to the rigid frame, technicians can position the beam extremely precisely during each treatment.

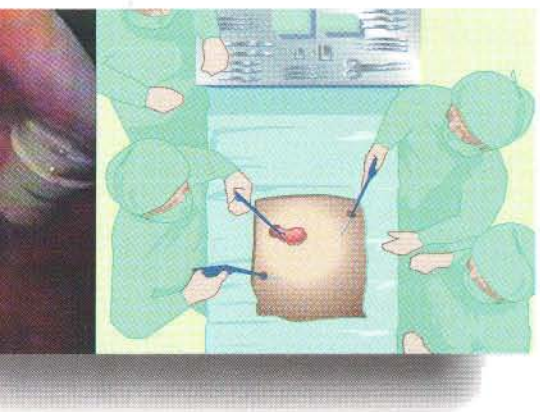
Although x-rays and gamma rays are the mainstays of radiation therapy, protons and neutrons also work well. Protons target tumor-bearing sites better than x-rays do, and neutrons seem to have more potency against some cancers. It remains to be seen how effective these particles will ultimately prove, but recent studies suggest real promise for treating certain types of cancer. Protons can, for example, treat small tumors of the spine that lie near vital structures, and neutrons work effectively on salivary gland tumors.

Improvements in chemotherapy will come with the advent of new drugs. Exciting anticancer compounds recently introduced for clinical use include the yew tree–derived taxanes, which are effective for treating advanced ovarian and breast cancers [see "Taxoids: New Weapons against Cancer," by K. C. Nicolaou, Rodney K. Guy and Pierre Potier; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, June]. The so-called camptothecan derivatives are showing promise in patients with colorectal and lung cancer. Both types of drugs have mechanisms of action that distinguish them from older chemotherapeutic agents. Procedural changes in the administration of chemotherapeutic drugs may also bring higher rates of cure. For example, prolonged intravenous infusion using implanted pumps can expose a tumor to a drug over a longer period of growth and vulnerability, yielding better results.

Some current efforts at improving chemotherapy are focused on combating drug resistance. Still other drug therapies on the horizon might operate by preventing tumors from establishing an adequate blood supply or by enlisting the body's immune system to fight tumors [see the section "Therapies of the Future," beginning on page 101]. New "differentiating" agents are also in early clinical trials. Rather than killing tumor cells, these drugs cause cancer cells to undergo so-called terminal differentiation—that is, the cells give up their ability to divide and commit themselves

to carrying out a single function, not unlike most cells of the body. Differentiating agents offer a form of chemotherapy that is much less toxic than are current cell-killing drugs.

Physicians have recently made great headway in reducing toxic side effects and improving supportive care for people undergoing chemotherapy. For instance, new and more powerful drugs to prevent vomiting have helped these patients. Because chemotherapy typically damages the rapidly dividing cells



lining the alimentary system, diarrhea and oral sensitivity are common side effects. New drugs that stimulate the growth and repair of these lining cells may soon be available to treat the cause of this toxicity—not just the symptoms.

Researchers have recently experimented with various growth factors that can stimulate the blood precursor cells in the bone marrow to recover quickly after chemotherapy. Drugs that increase white blood cell production, for instance, help to protect patients from severe complicating infections. One drug in development has been shown to stimulate the bone marrow to produce platelets that aid in blood clotting. Moreover, a strategy for administering high-dose treatments while protecting blood precursor cells is becoming widely used for cancers that physicians cannot cure with conventional levels of chemotherapy [see "When Are Bone Marrow Transplants Considered?" by Karen Antman, page 90].

One must not underestimate the ability of early detection of cancer to improve cure rates by allowing a tumor to be treated when it is smaller, less aggressive and less likely to have metastasized. Physicians have made good progress in using medical imaging for detecting cancer. The modern understanding of the genetic basis of cancer is providing the means to test for inborn susceptibility to certain cancers, to give early warnings of its occurrence in some cases and to gauge its severity after it arises.

More Definitive Therapies

Much of this issue of *Scientific American* is devoted to the expanding body of knowledge about the molecular and genetic basis of cancer. This newly gained understanding should eventually spawn more effective therapies for treating cancer and, ultimately, strategies for cancer prevention. In the nearer term, physicians should be able to use molecular and genetic markers to determine the malignancy potential of tumors and their likelihood of responding to different treatments.

Gene therapy opens a new arena for cancer treatment. With our colleagues at the University of Chicago we are pursuing the possibility of combining radiation and gene therapy, so as to use the radiation beam to trigger the production of proteins toxic to cancer cells at specific sites in the body. We have carried out this rather remarkable feat in experimental animals by introducing into cancerous tissue a "radiation-inducible" gene, one that is specially engineered to switch on (that is, to allow manufacture of the protein that it encodes) only after it has been exposed to radiation. This technique—called regional gene therapy—should greatly increase the effectiveness and specificity of radiation in treating cancer. It will enter clinical trials shortly.

A War Half Won

War often serves as a metaphor for cancer research. Although the analogy can at times be misleading, it can also illuminate the current position of medical researchers. During World War II, there was a period before D-Day when substantial advances had been made by the Allies, but a true offensive had not begun. Looking at the map, one might have thought the gains in Africa or Italy were minimal. But extraordinary improvements in weapons, personnel and the means to deliver them together to western Europe had been largely worked out.

Although some modest advances in the treatment of cancer have been made, these limited successes do not reveal the tremendous developments in the tools medical researchers and practitioners have at their fingertips. It is difficult at this moment to predict how useful any specific discovery will be, but the cumulative benefits to cancer therapy can be assured. Yet it is important to keep expectations realistic. A simple, universal treatment that is effective for all cancers, while possible, is extremely unlikely to emerge anytime in the near future. But a large set of more specific and less toxic treatments is probably nearer at hand than most people might think. SA

The Authors

SAMUEL HELLMAN and EVERETT E. VOKES are professors at the University of Chicago. Before joining the department of radiation and cellular oncology at Chicago in 1988, Hellman worked in New York City as a professor and physician in chief at Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center and as a professor of radiation oncology at Cornell University Medical College. Vokes received training at the University of Bonn Medical School in West Germany. He completed internships at Bonn and Chicago, as well as a residency at the University of Southern California Los Angeles County Hospital, before undertaking a fellowship in hematology and oncology at Chicago in 1983. Four years later he became a professor there in the department of medicine and now serves the university's cancer center as associate director for clinical affairs. Hellman and Vokes both have published and lectured widely about their research on cancer therapy.

Further Reading

MULTIDRUG RESISTANCE IN CANCER. Norbert Kartner and Victor Ling in *Scientific American,* Vol. 260, No. 3, pages 26–33; March 1989.

CANCER: PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF ONCOLOGY. Fourth edition. Edited by V. T. DeVita, Jr., S. Hellman and S. A. Rosenberg. J. B. Lippincott, 1993.

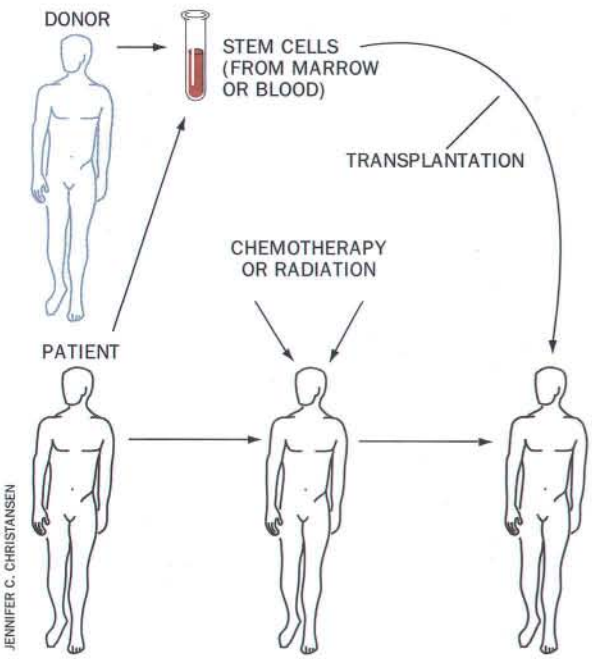
BIOLOGIC THERAPY OF CANCER. Second edition. Edited by V. T. DeVita, Jr., S. Hellman and S. A. Rosenberg. J. B. Lippincott, 1995.

When Are Bone Marrow Transplants Considered?

ROBERTO OSTI

Every year doctors in the U.S. tell thousands of patients that a bone marrow transplant, and not conventional therapy, may eradicate their disease. The side effects of such a transplant—which for some cancers is still experimental—can be substantial, even lethal. Nevertheless, a relatively young and otherwise healthy person faced with a deadly disease will often opt for this chance to be cured.

At one time, the term "bone marrow transplant" did indeed refer to the marrow found within cavities of the bone; today, however, the term often denotes a "stem cell transplant." Marrow is rich in hematopoietic, or blood-forming, stem cells, primitive cells that multiply and metamorphose into the different components of blood: red cells, which carry oxygen; white cells, which fight infection; and platelets, which help blood to clot. Although some stem cells also circulate in the blood, they reside primarily in the marrow, where they generate a soup of developing blood cells [see "The Stem Cell," by David W. Golde; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, December 1991].



JENNIFER C. CHRISTANSEN

TRANSPLANT PROCEDURE begins with the patient or donor providing stem cells. These blood-forming cells are stored while the patient's malignant cells are killed. The stem cells are then returned to the patient to speed the recovery of bone marrow.

Bone marrow can, however, become diseased by aplastic anemia, a condition in which marrow, having degenerated into scar tissue, produces too few blood cells; by leukemia, a disease characterized literally by "too many in blood" (*emia*) "white" (*leuk*) cells; or by several other disorders. Chemotherapy and radiation, widely used for treating diverse cancers, can also harm marrow. Because blood cells made in the marrow are responsible for fighting bacteria, viruses and other invaders and for causing blood to clot, damaged marrow results in a high risk of death from infection or bleeding, or both.

When the marrow itself is diseased, a transplant is intended to replace it with healthy blood-forming tissue supplied by a donor. In other cases, a bone marrow transplant is done to compensate for the toxic effects of unusually intense chemotherapy. These high levels of drugs kill not only cancer cells but also other fast-growing cells such as those generating blood or hair or lining the mouth, stomach or intestines. The resulting side effects, such as hair loss, nausea or diarrhea, can be unpleasant or worse; most seriously, however, a patient without enough blood cells would die of infection or bleeding within a few weeks. Transplant of stem cells after chemotherapy helps to speed recovery of the blood supply.

To begin a transplant, doctors first collect stem cells from a donor or from the patient. The stem cells may come from the marrow, or they may be extracted directly from the blood. The patient is then given high levels of radiation or drugs to destroy any cancerous cells. Afterward, the stem cells are injected into the bloodstream; they home to the bony cavities and settle there, regenerating the marrow. Reseeded with stem cells collected from the blood, marrow generally recovers in two weeks, but recovery takes five weeks if the stem cells come from the marrow itself. (Researchers suspect that some of the stem cells in the blood are more mature and so take less time to complete their development.) Consequently, fewer patients transplanted with stem cells from blood die in the vulnerable period following the treatment, when the blood cells are still too sparse to ward off infections. Unfortunately, because circulating blood sometimes cannot supply enough stem cells for a full transplant, marrow may have to be used.

For a patient whose marrow is diseased, a brother, sister or unrelated person with a matching tissue type may be able to donate stem cells, enabling what is called an allogeneic transplant. But even if the major indicators of tissue type—as measured by a procedure called human leukocyte antigen (HLA) typing—signal a perfect match, there may still be minor mismatches. In that case, the immune cells generated by the donated stem cells might recognize the host tissue as foreign and attack it, primarily damaging the skin, bowel and liver. The risk of this complication, called graft versus host disease (GVHD), increases if the marrow comes from an unrelated donor. The risk is also considerably higher for older patients.

To test for the likelihood of GVHD, a doctor will typically mix a few donor cells with tissue from the recipient; only donors whose cells have no reaction are accepted. Even so, serious GVHD occurs about half the time, leading to death in about 20 to 30 percent of recipients of allogeneic tissue—or in a higher percentage of patients if the tissues match imperfectly. Oddly enough, however, mild or moderate GVHD can be beneficial to leukemia patients. The new immune cells also attack the cancerous leukemia cells, resulting in a graft versus leukemia (GVL) effect and thereby reducing the risk of a relapse.

In the unlikely event that a patient has an identical twin, he or she can donate stem cells that are perfectly matched, in a procedure called a syngeneic transplant. These cells are safe in that they cannot cause GVHD. (But syngeneic

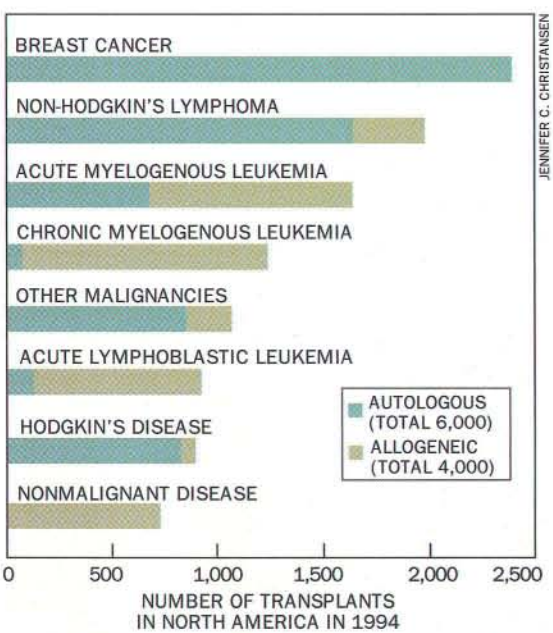
transplants also cannot give rise to GVL, and thus recipients run a high risk of relapse.) Hematopoietic stem cells can also be obtained from the placenta and umbilical cord discarded after a baby is born: such "cord blood transplants" appear to pose a lower risk of GVHD. But whereas the number of stem cells obtained from a placenta are enough to perform transplantation on a child, they may be too few for an adult.

The most common form of marrow transplant done today is an autologous transplant, in which the stem cells come from the patient, having been withdrawn before chemotherapy. Because marrow obtained from the patient is perfectly matched, there is no risk of GVHD. Unfortunately, marrow from a cancer patient may be contaminated by tumor cells, which at least in theory may cause a relapse (in practice one cannot tell if a cancer recurred because marrow was contaminated or because some cancerous cells in the body survived chemotherapy). But overall, autologous transplant patients have the lowest risk of death from complications. For breast cancer, the mortality for the procedure is generally between 1 and 7 percent; for lymphomas, it is about 10 percent.

Marrow transplants are standard for a few cancers but available in research studies for many. To treat some cancers, doctors usually choose to perform the procedure if the patient can tolerate it. For example, the only curative treatment for chronic myeloid leukemia, in which the white blood cells that fight bacteria are diseased, is an allogeneic bone marrow transplant. An allogeneic transplant is often preferred for patients with severe aplastic anemia or myelodysplasia (a condition marked by abnormal marrow cells, often degenerating to aplastic anemia or leukemia).

High-dose chemotherapy or radiation, combined with autologous transplants, is beneficial for treating myeloma, recurring Hodgkin's disease or aggressive non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (malignancies of the lymph system). Advanced or recurring testicular cancer and neuroblastoma—a childhood cancer that after a certain point cannot be cured by conventional chemotherapy—also respond to such a combination of intensive therapy and a stem cell transplant.

In some other cancers, initial results with the therapy-and-transplant regimen have been promising but remain controversial. In North America, most marrow transplants are prescribed for breast cancer. For women whose cancer has metastasized, conventional chemotherapy can keep the disease in check for several years, occasionally a decade or more; however, virtually all such patients eventually succumb to it. Data from the Autologous Blood and Marrow Transplant Registry of North America show that five years after a marrow transplant, between 15 and 20 percent of the women were still in remission. Physicians are concerned that these results might have been skewed by selection of relatively healthy women for the transplants. But one small randomized clinical trial conducted in South Africa also reported in 1995 an improved, three-year survival rate for breast cancer patients who underwent marrow transplants as compared with those who received conventional chemotherapy.



SOURCE: International Bone Marrow Registry and Autologous Blood and Marrow Transplant Registry of North America

MARROW TRANSPLANTS are most often used for treating breast cancer, even though the efficacy of this application is controversial. The transplants are, on the other hand, known to be beneficial for treating several cancers involving blood or lymph cells.

Bone marrow transplants can help to compensate for the damaging effects of intense chemotherapy.

Still, the paucity of randomized data on the effectiveness of bone marrow transplants for breast cancer makes this treatment one of the most contentious issues in modern medicine. More than 10 large-scale randomized trials are currently under way, some of which examine transplants for treating locally advanced breast cancers as well as metastasized malignancies. But American researchers are having trouble recruiting enough patients for these trials. Some women do not want to risk being in the control group—and thus not receiving what they consider to be the best treatment. At the same time, some women do not wish to receive a transplant if it is not known to be a better option. The uncertainties of the procedure, however, can be resolved only if the clinical trials can be completed.

For some other cancers, patients with little chance of survival through conventional treatments can obtain high-dose chemotherapy with a marrow transplant in research studies. These diseases include ovarian cancer and brain tumors.

Recent research has raised hopes of alleviating one risk from bone marrow transplants. An article in the August 3, 1995, *New England Journal of Medicine* describes how scientists are starting with small amounts of marrow cells and attempting to grow them in the laboratory so that the patient can be given both stem cells and mature cells. This combination would eliminate the period during which he or she is at risk from infections. At present, however, given that the side effects remain daunting, a patient should choose a bone marrow transplant only when the disease is life-threatening and when the potential benefits exceed the expected risk. Even so, to some patients with little to hope for, bone marrow transplants do offer a new lease on life. SA

KAREN ANTMAN is director of the Columbia-Presbyterian Comprehensive Cancer Center at Columbia University.

Twelve Major Cancers

The pages that follow provide facts and figures about the 12 cancers that affect the most Americans (excluding basal cell and squamous cell skin cancers, which are very common but rarely fatal). Cancer is most successfully treated if detected early. For this reason, many physicians recommend that people over age 40 have annual health checkups, which can often catch disease before it produces any symptoms. (People between the ages of 20 and 40 should have checkups every three years.) People who do have any of the symptoms described are wise to consult a doctor. None of these symptoms prove that someone has cancer, however—a firm diagnosis can be made only by a trained oncologist. Readers wishing to learn about the latest research on particular cancers can find resources listed in "Finding More Information," on page 131.

Certain characteristics are shared by virtually all cancers. The risk of the disease developing usually increases with advancing age. Curing a solid tumor—eliminating all traces of cancer from the body—generally becomes more difficult the larger the tumor has grown. Metastasis to distant body locations is more worrisome than local spreading or no spreading. (The extent of a cancer's spread is referred to as its stage.) In addition, examining detailed features of the tumor cells under a microscope is usually important in evaluating their aggressiveness.

Broad categories of cancer treatments include:

• **Surgery** to remove a tumor or diseased tissue. It is the primary mode of treatment for most solid tumors.

• **Chemotherapy,** the use of drugs to kill tumor cells. It, too, has a role in most cancer treatments. The several classes of chemotherapeutic drugs act by various means, most frequently by inhibiting the ability of tumor cells to replicate correctly. Many drugs are commonly used in combination because tumors may be unable to defend themselves against a variety of agents attacking in different ways. The compounds may be introduced into the body as a whole, or they may be concentrated at the tumor site.

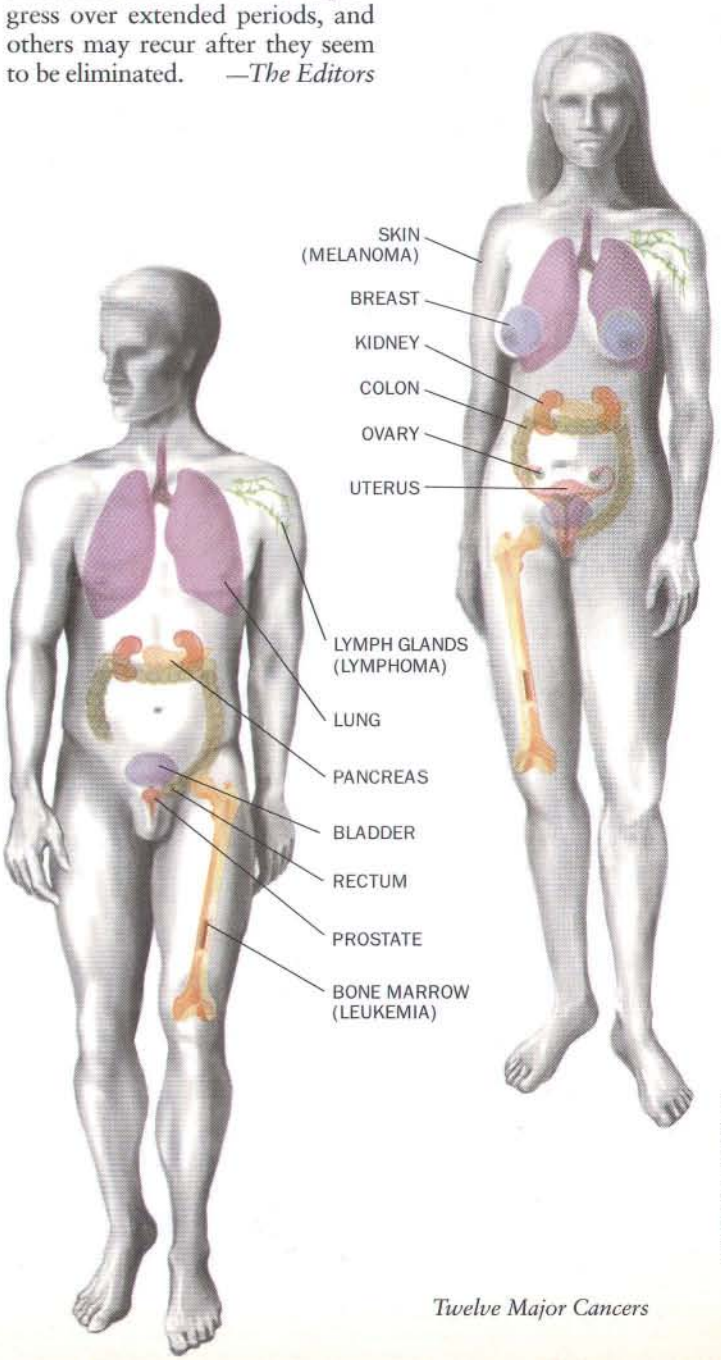
• **Radiation** to kill tumor cells. Sometimes used as a primary form of treatment, it is more often an adjunct to other therapies. The radiation may be aimed at a tumor from outside the body, or it may be delivered by placing radioactive pellets or liquid at the cancerous site.

• **Biological therapies,** which are based on complex substances found in living organisms. They include immunotherapies, which attempt to turn the body's immune system against a cancer.

• **Hormone-blocking and hormone-supplementing therapies,** which affect the rate at which tumor cells grow, multiply or die.

• **Bone marrow transplantation,** which is not a therapy in itself but is sometimes used to strengthen the depleted blood-making system of a patient weakened by high, potentially curative doses of radiation or chemotherapies [see "When Are Bone Marrow Transplants Considered?" by Karen Antman, page 90]. Healthy cells for the transplants may come from other people (allogeneic donations) or from samples of blood or bone marrow collected previously from the patient (autologous donations).

Throughout, survival figures are expressed as relative rates. The numbers refer to the proportion of people with a disease who are expected to be alive at a later time, compared with a similar population that is free of cancer. If the five-year relative survival rate for a type of cancer is 50 percent, for instance, there will be half as many survivors in a group of patients as in a comparable cancer-free group. Relative survival thus reflects mortality from the cancer alone, correcting for deaths from other illnesses or accidents. Sadly, survival five years after diagnosis does not equate with a cure. Some intractable cancers continue to progress over extended periods, and others may recur after they seem to be eliminated. —*The Editors*



JENNIFER C. CHRISTIANSEN

Twelve Major Cancers

Prostate Cancer

317,100 new cases to be diagnosed in the U.S. this year
41,400 deaths expected

Prostate cancer is the second leading cause of cancer death in men.

Risk factors: Increasing age; possibly a high-fat diet. Prostate cancer may tend to run in families, but whether the cause is genetic or environmental is unclear. The incidence in black men is 37 percent higher than in white men, and the mortality rate is twice as high.

Warning signs: Urine flow that is weak, interrupted or difficult to control; frequent need to urinate; painful urination; back or pelvic pain.

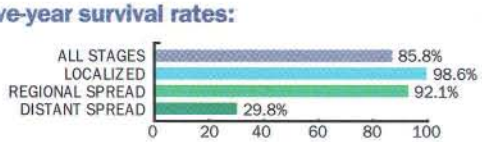
Detection and diagnosis: Every man older than 50 years should have a digital rectal examination annually. A prostate-specific antigen (PSA) blood test can signal the presence of prostate abnormalities at an early stage. Transrectal ultrasound evaluation can confirm suspicious results from other tests. Examination of the amount of DNA in abnormal cells can indicate how aggressive a cancer may be.

Under study: Detailed genetic analysis of tumor cells may help predict their aggressiveness.

Treatment now: Removal of the prostate gland is routine. Radiotherapy is also widely used as an alternative or supplement to prostatectomy. Against metastatic disease, drugs can block cancer cells from receiving the male hormones they need to grow.

Under study: Radiation therapy with beams that are controlled so as to maximize radiation dose to the tumor with the smallest amount of collateral exposure. Radiation therapy in combination with hormones. Finasteride, a drug used to relieve symptoms caused by benign enlargement of the prostate, may prevent cancer.

Five-year survival rates:



Controversies: The merits of PSA testing for detecting asymptomatic disease and the best approach for handling localized tumors are intensely debated [see "Does Screening for Prostate Cancer Make Sense?" by Gerald E. Hanks and Peter T. Scardino, page 80].

Breast Cancer

185,700 new cases to be diagnosed in the U.S. this year (including 1,400 among men)
44,560 deaths expected (including 260 men)

Breast cancer is the most common cancer among women.

Risk factors: Inherited mutations in the *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* genes; increasing age; early onset of menstruation; late menopause; never having had children or having a first child after age 30; personal or family history of breast cancer; possibly a high-fat diet. Mortality rates are falling in white women, especially those younger than 65.

Warning signs: A painless lump in the breast is typical, but there may occasionally be pain; any change in the shape, color or texture of the breast or nipple; discharge from or tenderness in the nipple.

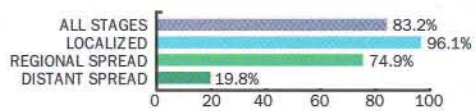
Detection and diagnosis: Self-examination and clinical breast exams; mammograms. Experts recommend annual mammograms and breast checkups for all women older than 50 but also for some younger women [see "Should Women in Their 40s Have Mammograms?" by Gina Maranto, page 79].

Under study: Biochemical and genetic markers and the density of blood vessels in a tumor may help indicate its aggressiveness.

Treatment now: For localized tumors, mastectomy (removal of the whole breast) may be appropriate, but breast-conserving surgery (removal of the tumor and some surrounding tissue, sometimes called lumpectomy) followed by local radiation is often preferable. Although recurrences are more common with breast-conserving surgery, these can be treated by mastectomy, and the survival rates are equivalent to those when mastectomy is used initially. Either procedure may be followed by additional chemotherapy or hormone-blocking therapy. If tumor cells have high levels of receptors for the hormones estrogen and progesterone, it is a good sign because hormone-blocking therapy may stop their growth.

Under study: High-dose chemotherapy followed by reconstitution of damaged bone marrow; chemotherapy before surgery; immunotherapy, including immunotoxins (molecules that combine a toxic agent with an antibody that binds to tumor cells); new chemotherapies and drug combinations. Tamoxifen, a drug that suppresses the effects of estrogen, may help prevent breast cancer in some women at high risk.

Five-year survival rates:



Controversies: Tests for detecting inherited mutations in the *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes are becoming available, but doctors have not reached a consensus on their use. Also debated are the value of chemotherapy for elderly patients and the value of routine mammography in women younger than 50. Some studies indicate that surgical treatment of breast cancer during the second half of a patient's menstrual cycle is more likely to produce a favorable outcome.

LUNG CANCER

177,000 new cases to be diagnosed in the U.S. this year
158,700 deaths expected

Incidence has been declining in men since the 1980s but is still rising in women.

Risk factors: Cigarette smoking (linked to 85 to 90 percent of all cases); exposure in the workplace to certain substances, including asbestos and some organic chemicals; radiation exposure; radon exposure (especially in smokers); environmental tobacco smoke.

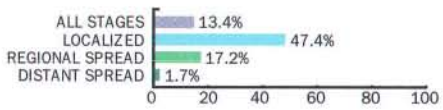
Warning signs: Persistent cough; sputum streaked with blood; wheezy breathing; chest or shoulder pain; swelling in face or neck; recurring pneumonia or bronchitis.

Detection and diagnosis: Chest x-ray; analysis of cells in sputum; fiber-optic exam of the bronchial passages.

Treatment now: Lung cancers are of two principal types, small cell or nonsmall cell disease. For small cell lung cancer, which spreads rapidly, chemotherapy alone or with radiation is now used instead of surgery. Radiation may be given to the chest or, in some cases, to the brain, to kill metastases. For localized nonsmall cell cancers, surgeons may remove the affected part of the lung, although recurrences are common. For more advanced cases, radiation, chemotherapy, laser therapy or some combination may be used instead.

Under study: Several new chemical agents (including taxol, taxotere, topotecan, irinotecan and vinorelbine) and biological agents (including interleukin-2 and interferon). Gene therapies are in clinical trials using "antisense" approaches to reestablish activity of the tumor suppressor protein p53 or to turn off oncogenes.

Five-year survival rates:



Controversies: The Food and Drug Administration is considering regulating cigarettes as drug-delivery devices, although any such move would face strong political opposition. Ventilation equipment can prevent radon, a naturally occurring radioactive gas, from accumulating in basements, but opinions vary about the value of this equipment in regions where radon levels are not exceptional.

COLORECTAL CANCER

133,500 new cases to be diagnosed in the U.S. this year (94,500 for colon, 39,000 for rectum)
54,900 deaths expected (46,400 for colon, 8,500 for rectum)

Risk factors: Family history of colorectal cancer; polyps or inflammatory bowel disease. Specific genetic mutations have been linked to familial adenomatous polyposis, which can develop into colon cancer, and hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. Living in an industrial or urban area also raises the risk. Other factors may include physical inactivity, exposure to certain chemicals and a high-fat or low-fiber diet.

Warning signs: Blood in the stool; any change in bowel habits; general stomach discomfort; unaccountable weight loss.

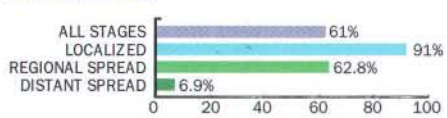
Detection and diagnosis: Annual digital rectal exam and stool blood test are recommended for people older than 40; sigmoidoscopy every three to five years after age 50. If possible problems are found, colonoscopy and a barium enema (to allow visualization of the intestines using x-rays) may be used. A patient's prognosis is poorer if the bowel is obstructed or perforated or if the pretreatment levels of certain marker substances (carcinoembryonic antigen and carbohydrate antigen 19-9) in the blood serum are high.

Under study: Various genetic tests looking at the *ras* oncogene, characteristic changes in colorectal cell DNA and mutations affecting DNA repair.

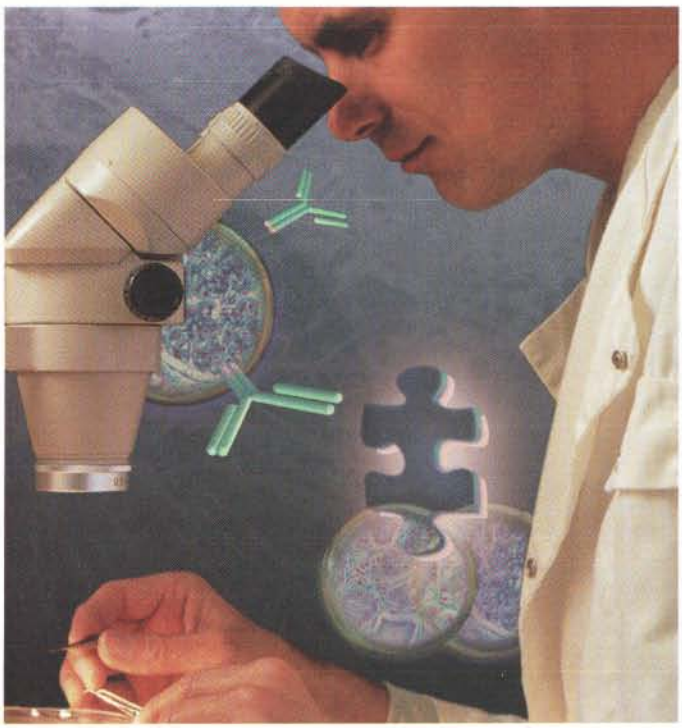
Treatment now: Surgery to remove the tumor, sometimes combined with radiation or chemotherapy, or both. Occasionally, a colostomy may be necessary. If the disease has spread to the lymph nodes, chemotherapy with fluorouracil appears to be worthwhile. Chemotherapy combined with radiotherapy is used against intermediate and advanced rectal cancer. Surgical removal of metastases in the liver may prolong survival in some patients.

Under study: Combinations of chemotherapy and immunotherapy are under investigation for postoperative patients with cancerous lymph nodes, including the use of immunotoxins, which are molecules that combine a toxic agent with an antibody that binds to tumor cells. Biological therapy and surgery that spares a patient's sphincter are also being evaluated.

Five-year survival rates:



Controversies: The benefit of chemotherapy without evidence of lymph node involvement is uncertain. The value of radiation in advanced cases is under study. To treat liver metastases, implantable drug pumps and infusion ports are sometimes used, but their worth is unproved.



Therapies of the Future

Fascinating new approaches to treatment would combat cancers without the devastating side effects of many current therapies. Some capitalize on insights into how the immune system might be enlisted to destroy malignancies. Others are based on detailed knowledge of how tumors grow and spread.

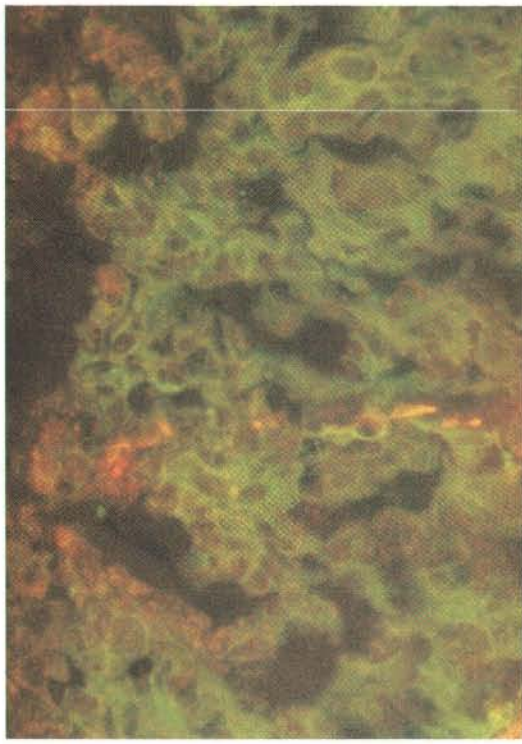
CONTENTS

PHOTOMONTAGE BY PATRICIA McDERMOND
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF PHOTO RESEARCHERS, INC.

Immunotherapy for Cancer

As knowledge about the immune system grows, scientists are devising ways, using the body's own defenses, to attack cancer

by Lloyd J. Old



During the past century, excitement has waxed and waned over the possibility that the extraordinary disease-fighting prowess of the immune system might be enlisted to destroy cancers. Today doubts have vanished, and countless investigators are working to translate the notion into potent new biological therapies.

Clinical support for the idea that the immune system might restrain the development of cancer emerged in the 1800s, when physicians noticed that tumors sometimes regressed in cancer patients who contracted bacterial infections. William B. Coley, a surgeon at Memorial Hospital in New York City from 1892 to 1936, dedicated his life to creating therapies based on this observation. He made deliberate attempts to infect cancer patients with bacteria and later devised a vaccine consisting of killed bacteria to prompt a tumor-killing response. These treatments—which we would now consider immunotherapies because they aimed to attack disease with the body's own defenses—brought about complete tumor regressions in some individuals. But they were not broadly accepted, because the results were unpredictable.

Early in this century other investigators also attempted to develop immune-based therapies, but none showed a convincing benefit. Still, the link between immunity and cancer remained firmly fixed in the minds of many people. During the 1960s and 1970s, for example, there was wide acceptance of the "immunosurveillance" model put forth by Lewis Thomas of New York University and MacFarlane Burnett of the Hall Institute in Melbourne, Australia. This theory held that the immune system constantly seeks out and destroys emerging cancer cells. Tumors, it proposed, arise when this policing mechanism fails. In the following years, however, accumulating evidence suggested that the immune system attacked only tumors caused by viral infections. Because such cancers account for a minority of all cases, the theory appeared flawed.

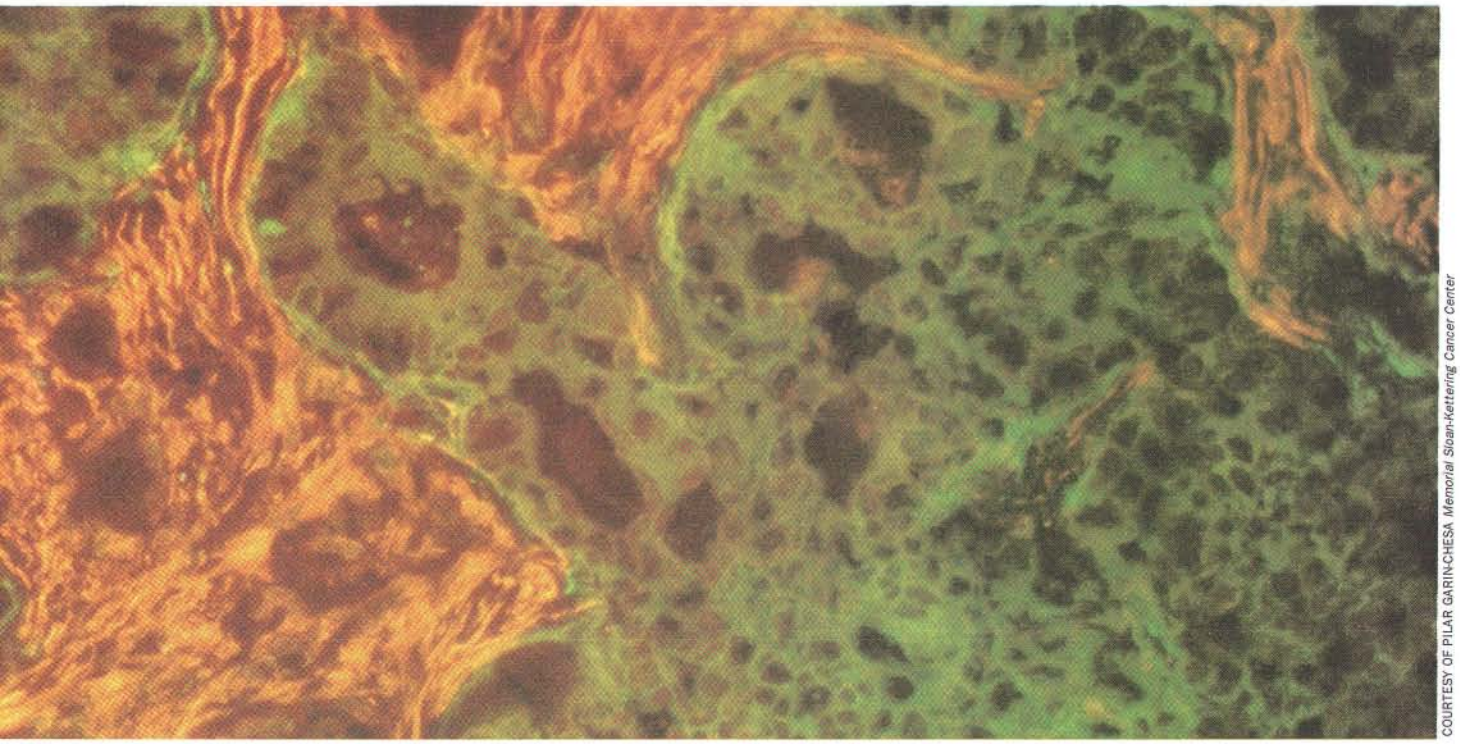
Recently, though, new insights have generated a resurgence of interest in immunotherapies for cancer. In particular, the science of immunology has undergone revolutionary changes. Researchers have discovered and isolated the cells and chemicals that enable the immune system to defend the body against attack and to prune away infected and damaged tissues. By studying these components, immunologists have gained a deep understanding of the workings of the normal immune system. And cancer immunologists have gained knowledge of mechanisms and molecules by which they may someday control cancer.

Activating the Immune System

Today we would describe Coley's approach to cancer therapy as nonspecific: it strengthened the overall activity of the immune system instead of selectively arousing those elements most able to combat cancers. During the past decade, scientists have developed a range of other nonspecific immunotherapies. The strategy behind all these interventions has been likened to kicking the television set to make it work: give the immune system a good jolt, the thinking goes, and its capacity to rid the body of cancer cells may increase. Exactly which component, or combination of components, accounts for the killing remains unknown. Even so, the tactic has had some real success.

For instance, cancer occurring on the inner wall of the bladder—superficial bladder cancer—responds well to a vaccine, called Bacillus Calmette-Guérin, or BCG, used to combat tuberculosis. These microbes do not cause disease, because they evoke a strong immune response. Superficial bladder cancer typically recurs after surgery and, in its later phases, invades the bladder wall and beyond. But instilling BCG into the bladder by way of a catheter elicits a chronic inflammatory response—a prolonged activation of immune cells that fight invaders. Just how the inflammatory cells work is not understood in detail, but the end result is that the immune cells and the substances they secrete kill preexisting and developing cancer cells in the bladder wall. Consequently, patients who receive BCG postoperatively face a much lower risk of recurrence.

Although this vaccine illustrates the potential of nonspecific immunotherapies, it acts locally—provoking inflammation only in the bladder. Most cancers become lethal because they spread



COURTESY OF PILAR GARIN-CHESA *Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center*

COLON CANCER SPECIMEN was stained using two monoclonal antibodies of different hues. Each antibody binds to distinct proteins on the surface of different cell populations. In this case, green marks cancer cells, and orange reveals the connective tissue (stroma). Because antibodies recognize specific cells, they can be used to find and selectively destroy tumor cells as well as the tissues that support and nourish such growths.

and give rise to tumors at distant sites. To eliminate those growths, immunotherapies must be capable of seeking out incipient tumors in all parts of the body. To accomplish this, many research oncologists turned in the 1970s and 1980s to molecules that the body produces in response to viral and bacterial infections; these molecules, now called cytokines, help to orchestrate the defense response. The cytokines include such proteins as interferons, interleukins and tumor necrosis factor (TNF). Investigators were initially very hopeful that cytokine therapy would be of great value. Extensive clinical testing of this nonspecific approach, though, has dampened enthusiasm. Relatively few patients appear to benefit from cytokine therapy alone.

Cancer Antigens

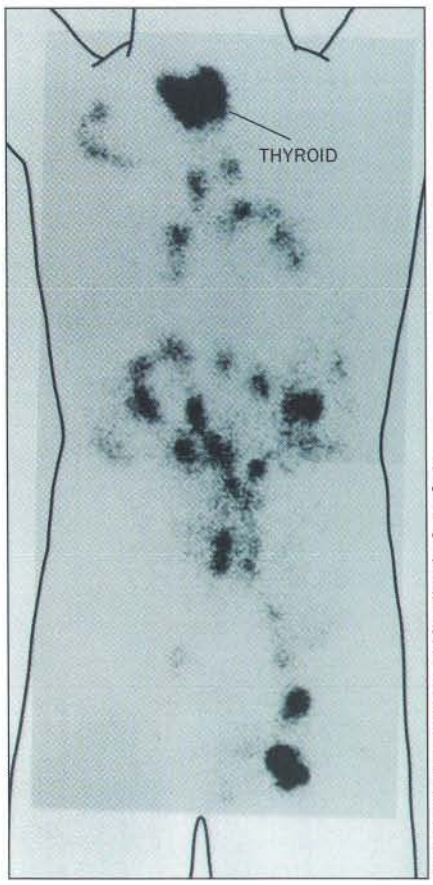
Cytokines may prove more valuable in combination with one another or with other treatments. Meanwhile, however, researchers have sought more specific ways to battle tumor cells. To single out cancer cells, an immunotherapy must be able to distinguish them from normal cells. One way the immune system can recognize differences among cells is by molecules, called antigens, that appear on the cell surface. Long ago scientists speculated that cancer cells might display molecules that signaled their abnormality. If such cancer-specific antigens were found, investigators could presumably devise means to make them more visible to the immune system. In other words, the antigens could be made to serve as targets for an immune attack—just as bacterial and viral antigens alert the body to disease-causing invaders.

The discovery of antibodies at the end of the 19th century provided the means to search for such cancer-specific antigens—and later opened the way for extensive studies of antibodies as potential immunotherapies for cancer. Antibodies, a critical component of the immune system, circulate in the blood and bind to foreign antigens. In so doing, they mark antigen-bound invaders for destruction by scavenger cells called macrophages, by other cells and by special blood protein components, collectively called complement.

The ability of antibodies to recognize fine distinctions between molecules is what has made them extremely useful in the search for cancer antigens. Over the past century, investigators injected human cancer cells into innumerable horses, sheep, rabbits, mice and rats, closely analyzing the antibodies the animals produced in response. If the immune systems of the animals reacted to the foreign tumor cells by producing antibodies that did not react with normal cells, this finding would signal the presence of antigens that could subsequently be identified and pressed into service as targets for antibody-based therapies. Many workers tried this approach and claimed to identify cancer-specific antigens. Unfortunately, none of these claims held up to careful scrutiny.

The Era of Monoclonal Antibodies

The search for cancer antigens became easier in 1975, thanks to a discovery made by César Milstein and Georges J. F. Köhler of the University of Cambridge. These researchers demonstrated that antibody-producing cells could be made to survive indefinitely if they were fused with cancer cells. The technique, which earned Milstein and Köhler a Nobel Prize, enabled scientists to produce unlimited supplies of identical antibodies, or monoclonal antibod-



COURTESY OF SYDNEY WELT *Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center*

COLON CANCER METASTASES in the abdomen and elsewhere are dark on this scan because they have absorbed and concentrated the monoclonal antibody A33, labeled with a radioactive isotope. Normal intestinal cells also take up A33 but do not retain it. (Thyroid takes up released radioactive isotope.) It is this selective accumulation of monoclonal antibodies in tumors that raises hopes of targeted therapies having fewer side effects than conventional chemotherapies.

ies, because any given antibody-producing cell produces only a single species of antibody. The method had a profound effect on cancer immunology for several reasons. First, it provided a powerful new method to search for cancer antigens. And second, workers could at last produce defined antibodies in sufficient amounts to put antibody-based therapies to the test.

Naturally, this spectacular technology gave rise to high expectations as well as to premature and unrealistic assertions about antibodies as "magic bullets." It was hoped that monoclonal antibodies would home in on cancer cells (by recognizing specific antigens) and trigger an immune attack that destroyed the target cells but ignored normal cells lacking the cancer antigens. Many expected that these bullets could be made more deadly by loading them with toxic chemicals; the antibodies would carry the toxins directly to tumors, where the poisons would kill cancer cells. Excitement prompted industry and private investors to spend vast sums of money. But when the claims could not be substantiated as quickly as everyone hoped, opinion swung in the other direction, prompting many analysts and investors to declare that the technology had failed. The reality of the situation is far more positive. The concept remains sound, and slow, steady progress is being made in developing antibody therapies.

Monoclonal antibodies have revealed a large array of antigens that exist on human cancer cells. Regrettably, virtually all these antigens are also found on normal cells, which might therefore be damaged by an antibody-based therapy. This overlap, however, does not preclude their use as therapeutic targets for several reasons: the antigen in normal tissues may not be accessible to bloodborne antibodies; the cancer cells may express more antigen than normal cells do; and antibody-induced injury of normal cells may be reversible.

In addition to targeting cancer cells, antibodies can also be designed to act on other cell types and molecules necessary for tumor growth. For instance, antibodies can neutralize growth factors—chemicals needed by cancer cells and their blood supply—and thereby inhibit a tumor's expansion. And antibodies can target the stroma, the connective tissue between tumor cells.

Without the stroma, which can make up 60 percent or more of a cancerous mass, a tumor cannot exceed a harmless, microscopic size. At the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center in New York City, Wolfgang J. Rettig, Pilar Garin-Chesa and I have identified an antigen called FAP-alpha that is strongly expressed by stromal cells in a wide range of human cancers. This and other antigens that mark tumor stroma or tumor blood vessels have become attractive targets to researchers devising antibody-based therapies.

Today monoclonal antibodies are most often obtained from mice that have been immunized with human cancers. In clinical tests, human subjects generally mount an immune reaction that inactivates the injected mouse-derived molecules. Scientists have therefore begun to construct human therapeutic antibodies that should evade immune recognition. In the meantime, workers are disguising the murine antibodies, refashioning them into something more resembling human antibodies. They do so by replacing all the nonessential structures in the mouse antibody with the corresponding human parts. This trick, called humanization, has yielded antibodies that in initial clinical tests have sneaked past the human immune system. Antibody engineers are also refining other characteristics of the humanized molecules to make them better able to bind to antigens and penetrate tumors.

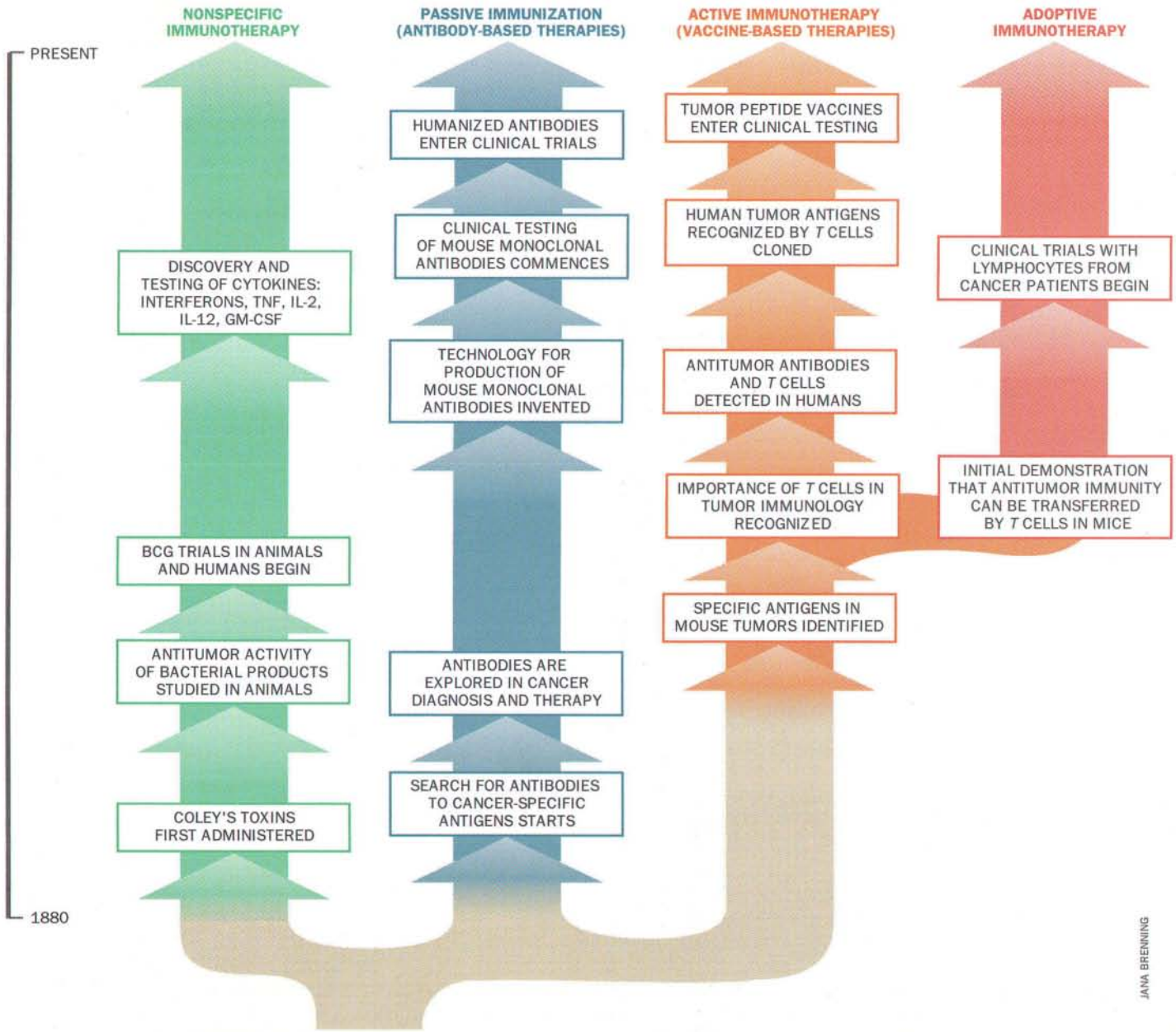
Testing Antibodies in the Clinic

Once a target antigen is identified and an antibody construct selected, antibody engineers must decide what kind of toxic message they wish to deliver to a tumor. Here lie two distinct approaches. One exploits the ability of antibodies themselves to destroy cancer cells. The other, as envisioned from the start, uses antibodies as vehicles to carry a toxic agent—be it a chemotherapeutic agent or a radioactive compound, a plant or a bacterial toxin—to a tumor site. Many new antigenic targets and antibody constructs have emerged—so many, in fact, that they cannot all be tested in the clinic.

One criterion for deciding which antibody to test as a therapy is the likelihood that it will be taken up by a tumor in significantly greater amounts than by normal tissues. To see if an antibody meets this requirement, it is tagged with a radioactive isotope of iodine (^{131}I), injected into human volunteers and followed in the body using imaging techniques. For a more accurate assessment of the antibody's accumulation in the tumor, a biopsy is taken. Because none of the antigenic targets studied so far exist exclusively on tumors, imaging studies are also critical for discerning how much antibody attaches to normal tissues. Antibodies showing favorable characteristics in these studies are the best candidates for therapeutic trials.

To develop even one antibody-based therapy requires tremendous effort and time, which explains why translating good ideas into useful therapies can proceed much more slowly than anyone

Landmarks in the History of Tumor Immunotherapy



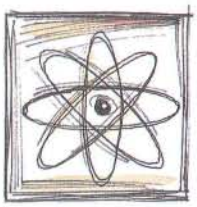
would like. Consider the ongoing studies of a mouse monoclonal antibody called A33, carried out by Sydney Welt and our group at Memorial Sloan-Kettering. This antibody detects an antigen that is expressed by normal cells in the intestine and by virtually all colon cancers. Clinical studies using A33 labeled with a trace of radioactive isotope showed substantial uptake in colon cancers. Up to one hundredth of a percent of the injected antibody accumulated in the tumor mass. Moreover, the antibody was able to penetrate the core of the tumor.

These favorable results justified taking A33 to the next step: clinical trials with a therapeutic aim. We loaded the antibody with much higher doses of radioisotope, designed to irradiate and destroy cancer cells, and asked two key questions: Can enough antibody reach the tumor, and what effect will the isotope-carrying antibody have on normal cells in the gastrointestinal tract? Because the human subjects in the trial mounted an immune response that neutralized the mouse-made A33, only a single injection of the molecule could be given. (Follow-up injections would be useless because the immune system would recognize and eliminate the antibody before it had the opportunity to come near a tumor.) Even with such limited dosing, the tumors in some patients shrank.

Most important and surprising, we observed that the antibody caused no toxicity in the gut even though it accumulated there. We believe the gut cells are not harmed by the antibody because they rapidly excrete it. In contrast, the tumor cells retain it. A humanized version of A33 has been developed and is now being tested in the clinic. To give some idea of the timescale involved in these studies, the antigen was identified in 1982; the first clinical study started in 1988; the therapeutic trials commenced in 1991; and the first patients

Tumor-Killing Agents Delivered by Antibodies

Acting alone, antibodies bind to antigens on the surface of cancer cells. In doing so, they mark these cells for destruction by other immune components or cause them to self-destruct. Antibodies can similarly target and attack the blood vessels feeding a tumor or the connective tissues (or stroma) supporting it. And antibodies can neutralize or block the action of growth factors—chemicals that a tumor needs to grow. In addition, antibodies are used as guided missiles of sorts. They can deliver an array of damaging compounds (some of which are listed below) to tumor sites.

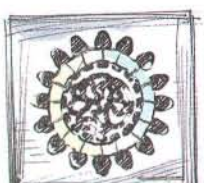


RADIOACTIVE ISOTOPES, such as iodine 131 or yttrium 99, kill cancer cells by damaging their DNA.

OTHER TOXINS travel to a tumor site by way of antibodies. One well-studied example is ricin, which is made from castor beans; it inhibits protein synthesis and thwarts tumor growth. Toxic products from bacteria and other microorganisms also stall cancer cells in experiments. And many other highly tumoricidal drugs too toxic to be used alone—including CC-1065, calicheamicin and maytansinoids—may be effective if targeted by an antibody.

CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC DRUGS often reach tumors in larger, and so more lethal, doses when delivered by an antibody.

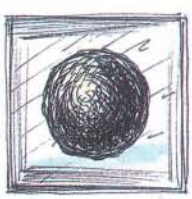
ENZYMES that can convert innocuous "prodrugs" into cell killers will home to tumors when attached to antibodies. Because the enzymes activate the prodrugs only at tumor sites, healthy tissues in the body remain unharmed.



GENETIC DRUGS come in several forms. So-called antisense DNA molecules block the production of proteins needed by cancer cells. Other gene constructs give rise to proteins that kill tumor cells; the genes can be linked to antibodies directly or packaged into viral particles engineered to have targeting antibody on their surface.

INFLAMMATORY MOLECULES, which include tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and other messenger molecules of the immune system as well as certain microbial products, can bring about an inflammatory reaction that destroys tissues at the tumor site.

IMMUNE CELLS guided by antibodies, such as genetically engineered *T* cells, can prompt tumor cell dissolution, or lysis.



JENNIFER C. CHRISTIANSEN

were injected with the humanized antibody in 1995.

Perhaps the major success in the field to date comes from studies of an antibody that binds to an antigen on both healthy *B* cells—immune cells that, once activated, manufacture antibodies—and on lymphomas of *B* cell origin. Stuart F. Schlossmann of the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute in Boston originally described this antigen target, called CD20, and it has since been studied by a number of groups, including that of Mark S. Kaminski of the University of Michigan and Oliver W. Press of the University of Washington School of Medicine. The results are quite exciting. The antibody alone can bring about tumor regressions, and when it is combined with ^{131}I, these regressions are substantial and prolonged. Equally important, the therapy produces few side effects. Thus, we know that even if an antigen is expressed on normal cells, it can, as had been hoped, still serve in some cases as a useful target for therapy.

As with most experimental therapies for cancer, those based on antibodies are generally tested in patients who have advanced forms of the disease. But these therapies may be far more effective if used sooner. Gert Riethmüller of the University of Munich has in fact studied the effect of a monoclonal antibody called 17.1A in patients who have colorectal cancer in fairly early (basically localized) stages. He started antibody therapy in these individuals immediately after they had their visible tumors removed by surgery. Despite surgery, some patients remain at high risk because of residual cancer cells. But in Riethmüller's study, the antibody-treated patients had a significantly lower recurrence rate. Treating the cancer cells left behind after surgery—or those beginning to spread to some other site—makes much sense, and all forms of immunotherapy will undoubtedly focus on this goal in the future.

The Promise of Vaccines

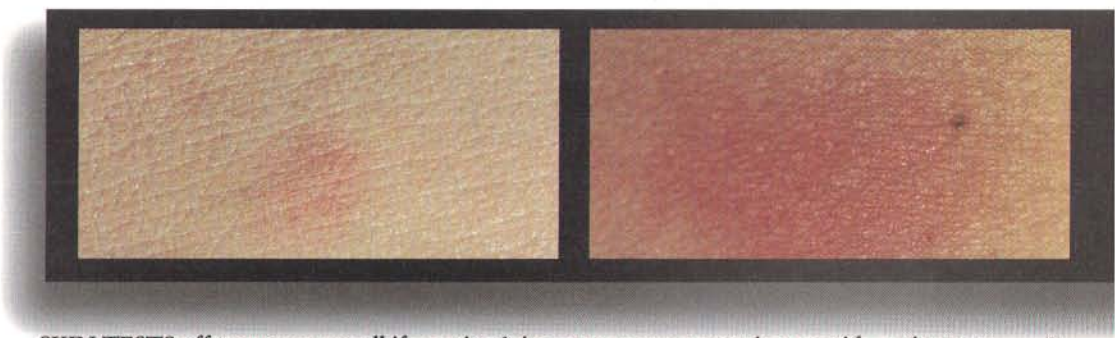
In the antibody-based therapies we have been discussing, the injected antibody derives from an animal; in the future, it may be made in a test tube. Either way, the treatment is considered passive immunotherapy: the immune molecules are given to patients, who do not produce them on their own. A vac-

cine, on the other hand, is deemed active immunotherapy because it rouses an immune response in the individual who needs protection.

Efforts to treat cancer with vaccines date back to the very origins of immunology. Over the years, doctors have vaccinated many hundreds of cancer patients with malignant cells—either the patients' own cells or those taken from another patient—usually irradiated to prevent further growth. Although occasional responses were observed, this early vaccination strategy suffered from major deficiencies. Most significant, it offered no way to monitor the vaccine's effect on the immune system. When vaccines against infectious diseases such as poliomyelitis were developed, their impact could be readily detected by looking for the specific antibodies they elicited. But until recently, scientists had no comparable information about cancer antigens and the immune response they provoke. Without such knowledge, investigators had no hope of understanding why the treatment seemed to work in some cases but not in others. Steady progress over the past several decades has now brought us to a point where we can place the development of cancer vaccines on a firm scientific basis.

The modern vaccine story starts in the 1940s and 1950s with a fundamental discovery of tumor immunology. Scientists found that when chemicals or viruses induced tumors in mice, the tumors bore antigens that could immunize other mice of the same strain against transplants of the tumors. Subsequent studies showed that immune system cells known as *T* lymphocytes taken from immunized animals could transfer immunity against tumors to healthy animals of the same strain. And workers devised techniques to show that the *T* cells from the immunized mice could kill tumor cells grown in test tubes as well. In contrast, antibodies elicited by the tumor cells generally failed to transfer immunity or kill tumor cells.

As a next step, we needed to see if comparable immune reactions would take place in humans. For ethical and practical reasons, we could not apply the same approach used in the animal studies described above. And so the focus was on immune reactions that could be extensively analyzed in test tubes. Our group chose to examine melanoma cells, in part because they can be easily grown in the laboratory. Over a 10-year period, we studied a large number of melanoma patients, seeking evidence of antibodies or *T* cells in these patients that reacted with their own melanoma cells. We found that a small proportion did mount a specific immune response against their own tumor cells. And we also formed the impression that these patients followed a more favorable clinical course.



SKIN TESTS offer one way to tell if a patient's immune system recognizes peptide antigens expressed by tumor cells. If so, irritation in the form of a so-called delayed hypersensitivity reaction appears on the skin. The initial skin reaction (*left*) in this melanoma patient became more pronounced after the injection of an immune-boosting cytokine, GM-CSF (*right*). This response resembles the tuberculin reaction that follows a tuberculosis vaccination and can be used to monitor whether a vaccine is stimulating a patient's immune system as intended.

COURTESY OF ALEXANDER KNUTH *Northwest Hospital, Frankfurt*

The next challenge was to isolate the tumor antigens recognized in this system so that they might be tested in a vaccine. Thierry Boon and his colleagues at the Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research in Brussels developed a method to do just that for *T* cell recognized antigens [see "Teaching the Immune System to Fight Cancer," by Thierry Boon; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, March 1993]. This technique has revealed two main categories of tumor antigens that evoke a *T* cell response in melanoma patients. The first includes antigens called MAGE, BAGE and GAGE that are produced by tumor cells but not by any normal cells outside the testes. The other category of antigens, including tyrosinase and Melan A, are so-called differentiation antigens; they are made by both melanoma cells and melanocytes, normal cells from which the tumor cells arise.

T cells do not "see" the whole protein antigen on the cancer cell, but only pieces of it, termed peptides. When the tumor cell processes the protein, it presents these peptides on the cell surface in conjunction with so-called histocompatibility antigens. Scientists are now creating a rapidly growing list of protein and peptide tumor antigens, identified using the method developed by Boon and his group to clone tumor antigens. All these molecules are prime candidates for use as vaccines. Even newer techniques promise to extend the list of possible vaccines.

Another source of information about potential tumor antigens comes from the avalanche of discoveries concerning genetic changes in cancer cells. Any alteration in a cancer cell that can be recognized by the immune system is grist for the cancer immunologist's mill. Among the most attractive targets for vaccines are abnormal proteins that are made when genetic mutations turn normal genes into cancer-promoting versions. A long list of cancer-related genes—known as oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes—is now being compiled [see "How Cancer Arises," by Robert A. Weinberg, page 32]. And, of course, human cancers caused by viruses, such as cervical cancer, are prime targets for vaccine-based therapies.

As is the case with monoclonal antibody therapies, there are now more vaccine-based therapies than anyone can test in patients. And, although medicine's vast experience with vaccines against infectious diseases will help guide cancer vaccinologists, much uncharted territory lies ahead. Whole-cancer-cell vaccines, whether genetically engineered or not, will probably give way to vaccines that contain defined tumor antigens. Moreover, because peptide vaccines are easy

Categories of Cancer Vaccines

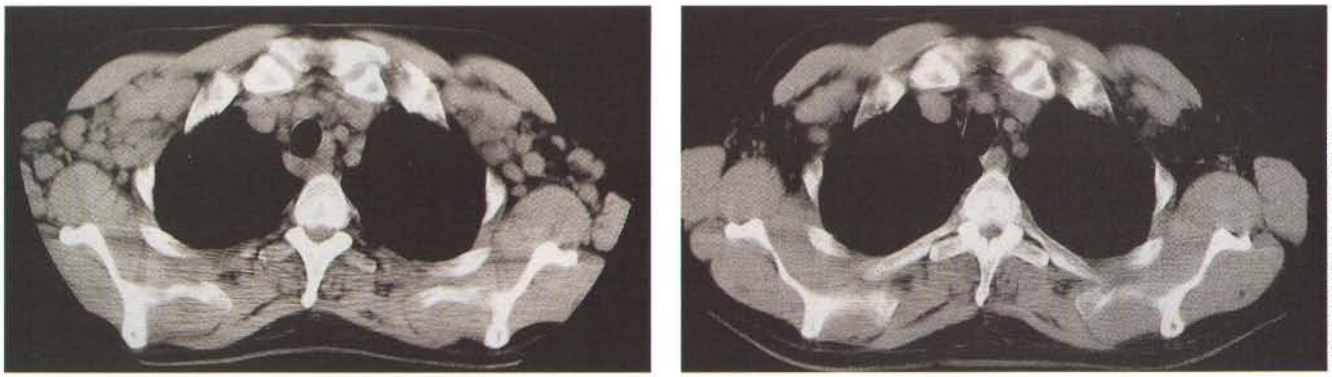
Cancer vaccines are intended to induce *T* cells or other components of the immune system to recognize and vigorously attack malignant tissue.

Whole Cancer Cells	Inactivated cancer cells and their extracts can jump-start the immune system. Cancer cells engineered to secrete cytokines, such as IL-2 or GM-CSF, similarly heighten antitumor immunity. Cells designed to express co-stimulatory molecules, such as B-7, enhance the ability of *T* cells to recognize tumor cells.
Peptides	Tumor peptides, fragments of tumor proteins recognized by *T* cells, are injected alone or with immune-boosting adjuvants.
Proteins	Antigen-presenting cells take up injected tumor proteins and break them down into a range of peptide fragments recognized by *T* cells.
Dendritic Cells	These antigen-presenting cells are isolated from the blood, exposed to tumor peptides or engineered to produce tumor proteins and then reinjected.
Gangliosides	Humans can produce antibodies to these molecules, such as GM2, found on the surface of tumor cells. Clinical studies have shown that melanoma patients with GM2 antibodies have a better prognosis.
Heat-Shock Proteins	These cellular constituents ordinarily bind peptides. Injecting heat-shock proteins isolated from tumors rouses antitumor immunity in mice.
Viral and Bacterial Vectors	Genes coding for tumor antigens are incorporated into viral or bacterial genomes. When injected, these altered infectious agents draw immunity against themselves and the encoded antigens.
Nucleic Acids	DNA and RNA coding for tumor antigens prompt normal cells to begin producing these antigens.

to synthesize, they are taking center stage in clinical trials. In early tests, some tumor regressions have already been noted. Some cancer immunologists theorize that whole proteins will be more effective as vaccines because they can provoke the immune system with a range of different peptides. Scientists eagerly await large supplies of pure tumor antigens to test the idea.

Yet another approach to immunotherapy is under study. Known as adoptive immunotherapy, it involves stimulating *T* cells by exposing them to tumor cells or antigens in the laboratory and then injecting expanded populations of the treated cells into patients. In contrast to the studies in inbred mice, where *T* cells from one mouse can be given to any other mouse of the same strain, *T* cells from one person would generally be rejected by another person. For this reason, patients serve as both donor and recipient of their own *T* cells. Steven A. Rosenberg of the National Cancer Institute spearheaded the clinical testing of this approach, and efforts continue to make this therapy more effective and less time-consuming and expensive.

Adoptive immunotherapy may have its greatest value in treating viral infections and tumors in patients whose immune systems have been weakened by disease and therapy. For instance, before leukemia patients receive bone marrow transplants, they receive massive



MARK S. KAMINSKI *University of Michigan*

COMPUTED TOMOGRAPHIC SCANS show a cross section of a 41-year-old man's upper torso before and after treatment for lymphoma with CD20 antibody-based radioimmunotherapy. The large black circles are the lungs. Despite earlier chemotherapy regimens, the patient had extensive disease, marked by many enlarged lymph nodes (*left*). After a single CD20 treatment (*right*), however, all disease disappeared. The patient continues to be in complete remission two years later.

doses of chemotherapy and radiation to destroy all leukemia cells. This leaves the individuals immunosuppressed and vulnerable to infections, such as cytomegalovirus infection (CMV). But there are now indications that an injection of CMV-specific *T* cells can reduce the risk of CMV infection in such transplant patients. In addition, dramatic regressions of virus-related lymphomas arising in transplant patients can be brought about by simply injecting lymphocytes from normal donors. Because these immune cells are spared the effects of the immunosuppressive drugs, they retain their ability to combat the lymphoma cells.

The Hurdles Ahead

Despite the great hope of immunotherapy, a dark cloud hangs over all our attempts to control cancer by immune mechanisms. Cancer cells are masters of deceit and disguise—veritable Houdinis that can readily alter themselves to evade immunologic recognition and attack [*see box at right*].

Because the race is between immune control and escape, the best strategies to combat cancer will need to attack it on several fronts. Opportunities being explored include constructing vaccines that combine a variety of antigens (called polyvalent vaccines); testing how well antibody- and vaccine-based approaches work together; and combining nonspecific and specific immunotherapies and other cancer therapies.

Other potential obstacles need our attention as well. As noted with antibodies, it is conceivable that cancer vaccines may injure normal cells to some degree. There are a number of disease states, called autoimmune diseases, that arise when the immune system turns against normal tissues in the body. Examples include rheumatoid arthritis, multiple sclerosis and certain forms of kidney disease. It may turn out that some modest degree of autoimmunity is the price we pay for a successful cancer vaccine.

Given the long history of tumor immunology—marked by recurrent cycles of high expectations and disappointments—we need to exert considerable caution in making any predictions. But many promising opportunities wait to be studied, and they give us reason to expect that powerful immunologic therapies will one day become a reality.

Perhaps these therapies will yield cures—the universal objective of cancer researchers, health care providers and, of course, patients. A more achievable aim, though, may be developing therapies that can change the nature of cancer from a progressive and lethal disease to one that can be controlled throughout a long life. That result would be less than ideal, but it could make a world of difference for many afflicted with tumors not readily treatable today. SA

Tactics Tumors Use to Evade Immune Attack

Altering Their Characteristics
Under attack by the immune system, tumor cells generate variants lacking those features that mark them for destruction by *T* cells, other killer cells and antibodies. The process, called immunoselection, can lead to tumor cells that do not have tumor antigens or major histocompatibility antigens, which present tumor antigens to immune cells. Tumor cells can also lack co-stimulatory molecules, which activate *T* cells, and signaling molecules needed to respond to cytokines, such as gamma-interferon, that promote tumor cell killing by immune mechanisms.

Suppressing the Immune Response
Tumor cells can effect changes in the host that diminish or abrogate an effective immune response against them. Specific immunosuppression occurs when tumor cells deliver inappropriate or ineffective signals to *T* cells, reducing their number or ability to respond. Nonspecific immunosuppression is caused by other tumor cell products, such as TGF-beta, or by cancer drugs or irradiation.

Hiding from the Immune Response
Immune reactions are less effective or absent in several sites in the body, such as the brain, and so tumors there avoid immune attacks. Also, a dense tumor stroma consisting of connective tissues can shield tumor cells from immune recognition and destruction.

Exploiting the Immune System's Ignorance
Tumor cells may grow without eliciting any immune response. But an effective immune response can be generated by immunizing against tumor antigens—indicating that the potential for immune attack is not always activated.

Outpacing the Immune Response
Tumor cells can simply proliferate so quickly that the immune response is not fast enough to keep their growth in check.

The Author

LLOYD J. OLD received his medical degree in 1958 from the University of California, San Francisco. He then joined the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Institute for Cancer Research, where he became associate director of research from 1973 to 1983. Old is now director and CEO of the Ludwig Institute for Cancer Research in New York City. This is his fourth article for *Scientific American*.

Further Reading

TUMOR ANTIGENS RECOGNIZED BY T LYMPHOCYTES. T. Boon et al. in *Annual Review of Immunology.* Edited by W. E. Paul, C. G. Fathman and H. Metzger. Vol. 12, pages 337–366; 1994.

HUMAN NEOPLASMS ELICIT MULTIPLE SPECIFIC IMMUNE RESPONSES IN THE AUTOLOGOUS HOST. U. Sahin et al. in *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*, Vol. 92, No. 25, pages 11810–11813; December 5, 1995.

BIOLOGIC THERAPY OF CANCER. Edited by V. T. DeVita, Jr., et al. Lippincott-Raven, 1994.

MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES. J. P. Mach in *Oxford Textbook of Oncology,* Vol. 1. Edited by J. Peckham, M. Pinedo and U. Veronesi. Oxford University Press, 1995.

CANCER THERAPY WITH RADIOLABELED ANTIBODIES. Edited by David M. Goldenberg. CRC Press, 1995.

New Molecular Targets for Cancer Therapy

Investigators are exploiting the characteristic molecular abnormalities of cancers in new approaches to treatment

by Allen Oliff, Jackson B. Gibbs and Frank McCormick

Before the 1980s, scientists had little understanding of how tumor cells acquire their lethal properties of uncontrolled growth and spread. Researchers identified beneficial new drugs primarily by exposing tumor cells to various compounds and seeing whether the chemicals halted cell division. Or they injected cancer-stricken animals with a compound and assessed shrinkage of the tumors. Unfortunately, many agents that attacked cancer cells also damaged healthy tissue, such as normal bone marrow and intestinal cells and thus gave (and continue to give) rise to unpleasant and sometimes dangerous side effects.

Recently the molecular defects that transform normal cells into malignant ones have begun to come clear [see "How Cancer Arises," by Robert A. Weinberg, page 32]. Many of these defects consist of mutations in key classes of genes that are responsible in some way for the reproduction, or growth, of cells. Those mutations alter the quantity or behavior of the proteins encoded by growth-regulating genes and, in so doing, disrupt functions that control cell division. Knowledge of mutant genes is enabling pharmaceutical researchers to design new drugs that will specifically act on disrupted genes or their proteins. Such drugs, it is hoped, will restore normalcy to malignant cells or short of that, kill the cells without significantly harming healthy ones. Although most of these drugs are only beginning to be tested, preliminary results encourage us about the prospects of controlling cancer at its molecular level.

The defects targeted by molecular therapy are found in three classes of genes. The first class, known as oncogenes, stimulates cell progression through the cell cycle—the sequence of events in which a cell gets larger, replicates its DNA and divides, passing a complete set of genes to each daughter cell. Members of the second class restrict such growth; they are referred to as tumor suppressor genes. Genes in the third group govern the replication and repair of DNA. Most tumors possess mutations in one or more of these gene categories.

We will discuss each category and explain the biochemistry involved. We will also indicate how an anticancer drug could be delivered to cells and how it might stop cancerous development. Finally, we will briefly discuss the therapeutic prospects. Although virtually any known genetic defect can suggest ideas for therapy, we will focus on treatments that have a reasonable chance of becoming available within the next 10 years.

Oncogenes: Activating Cancer

Oncogenes are mutant versions of normal genes (sometimes called proto-oncogenes) that drive cell growth. The differences between oncogenes and normal genes can be subtle. The mutant protein that an oncogene ultimately creates may differ from the healthy version by a single amino acid. Yet that one alteration can radically change the protein's function.

The most common cancer-causing mutation of this kind occurs in the *ras* gene. Approximately 20 to 30 percent of all human cancers harbor an abnormal *ras* gene. The protein encoded by the *ras* gene (the Ras protein) ordinarily behaves as a relay switch within the signal pathway that tells the cell to divide: in response to stimuli transmitted to it from outside the cell, it activates the rest of the signaling pathway.

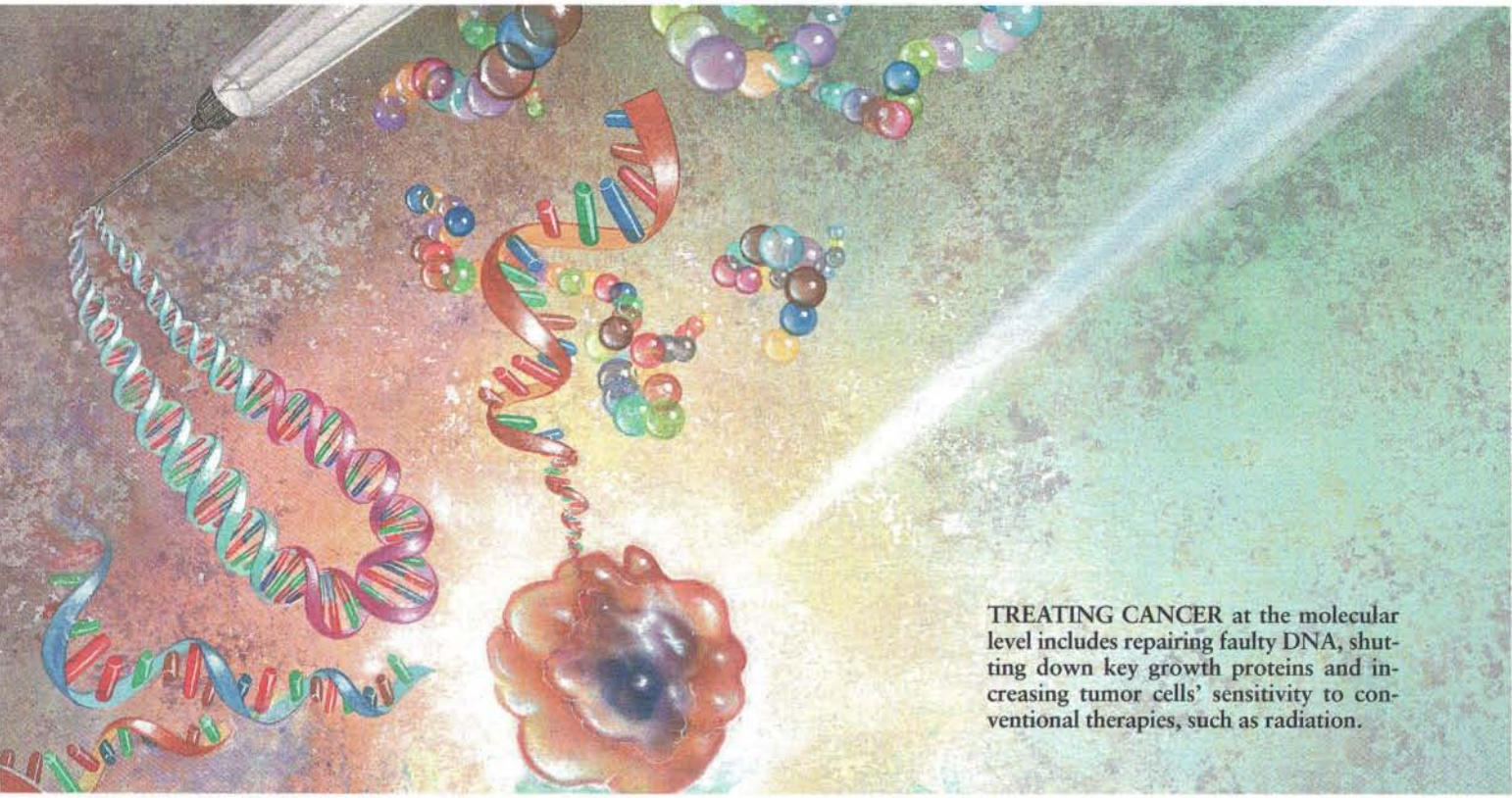
In the absence of outside prompts, the Ras protein would normally remain in the "off" state. The mutated Ras protein, however, behaves like a switch stuck in the "on" position. It continuously misinforms the cell, instructing it to divide when it should not. These observations suggest that a compound able to block the action of the mutant Ras protein could be an effective anticancer agent. (Such blocking compounds are called antagonists.) But how can the mutant Ras protein be inactivated?

One potential answer became evident when researchers began to understand how the Ras protein is made. Newly formed Ras molecules are functionally immature. These precursor versions must undergo several biochemical modifications to become mature, active versions. Then the Ras proteins attach to the inner surface of the cell's outer membrane, where they can interact with other cellular proteins and stimulate cell growth.

The changes take place at one end of the Ras precursor, where enzymes act on a region called the CAAX box. The modification happens in three steps, the most critical being the first, called the farnesylation step. In this step, 15 carbon atoms are added to the precursor. A specific enzyme, termed farnesyl transferase, catalyzes the reaction.

One strategy for blocking Ras protein activity has been to inhibit this enzyme and thus stop the modification. Investigators have created several such inhibitors. In cell cultures, these inhibitors block the maturation of the Ras protein and reverse the cancerous transformation induced by mutant *ras* genes. Tests on animals have provided encouraging results as well. They showed that farnesyl transferase inhibitors prevented the formation of new tumors by abnormal

AUDRA GERES



TREATING CANCER at the molecular level includes repairing faulty DNA, shutting down key growth proteins and increasing tumor cells' sensitivity to conventional therapies, such as radiation.

Ras proteins. They also induced the regression of existing cancers of this type.

Fortunately, farnesyl transferase inhibitors seem quite specific. The drugs do not affect normal cells or cells transformed by other oncogenes. Their specificity suggests that side effects might be minimal. Indeed, many of these inhibitors given at high doses—enough to eliminate preexisting tumors—have exhibited virtually no toxicity to normal tissues in animals.

Another set of oncogenes ripe for exploitation as anticancer targets are those that encode enzymes termed protein kinases. (Some cancers in which mutated kinase genes have been found include chronic myelogenous leukemia, breast cancer and bladder cancer.) In normal cells, protein kinases help to regulate many important processes. Some of these activities include sending signals between the cell membrane and the nucleus, initiating a cell's progress through the cell cycle, and controlling various metabolic functions of the cell. Protein kinases control these processes by activating other proteins in response to particular stimuli.

Kinases can lead to cancer in a couple of ways. Overproduction, caused by mutations in the control regions of their genes, is one. Compared with normal cells, tumor cells frequently manufacture extremely high levels of one or another kinase. The vast quantities keep the cells dividing when they should stop. A commonly overproduced kinase in cancerous tissue is the receptor for epidermal growth factor (EGF).

Kinases can also contribute to cancer if their structure is abnormal. Many tumor cells possess protein kinases that because of some structural defect are permanently turned on. They therefore carry out reactions that inappropriately stimulate cells to divide. Some examples of kinases that behave abnormally in certain human cancers are the Abl, the Src and the cyclin-dependent kinases.

Obviously, an inhibitor of one or more of these kinases might be an effective anticancer agent. The challenge is finding a drug that can distinguish one kinase from another. Many of the nearly 1,000 protein kinases in mammalian cells have highly similar structures, particularly in their biochemically active regions. Hence, an inhibitor of any single protein kinase might disrupt the activity of other, unrelated kinases crucial for normal cellular functions.

Despite this concern, pharmaceutical researchers have synthesized and tested a series of kinase inhibitors over the past few years. Most target the kinases themselves, but others attack at the genetic level (preventing the kinases from being made). For instance, in the so-called antisense approach, snippets of genetic material interfere with the tumor cell's messenger RNA, thus impeding the formation of proteins. Messenger RNA molecules are essentially mobile copies of genes and are the physical templates from which cells construct the proteins encoded by genes [see "The New Genetic Medicines," by Jack S. Cohen and Michael E. Hogan; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, December 1994].

Remarkably, kinase inhibitors can be quite selective. In the test tube, some find their intended target 1,000 times more frequently than they do unrelated kinases. More important are findings from whole cells in culture. They show that several of these compounds inhibit the growth of cancer cells that possess mutated protein kinase genes. Even more encouraging, some of these agents have also been shown to block the growth of tumor cells in animals—a sign that they might work in the human body. These

Sending in Tumor-Targeting Viruses

Perhaps the most promising way to reach tumor cells is through viruses. In gene therapy, weakened viruses can act as couriers that deliver normal genes into cells. The best of these viruses in terms of its potential ability to deliver therapeutic genes to cancer cells is the adenovirus. Adenoviruses contain DNA (some viruses, such as retroviruses, have only RNA). If a gene useful for therapy is spliced into the viral DNA, the virus will deliver the needed gene into any cell it invades. The virus will do no harm as long as its own genes that confer virulence are removed when the new gene is inserted.

Adenoviruses can also kill tumor cells specifically. When a virus enters a normal cell, so-called p53 proteins respond by instructing the infected cell to stop making DNA, thus preventing the virus from replicating. An adenovirus protein can bind directly to p53 and thereby disable it. Then the virus can use the cell's machinery to replicate itself.

The adenovirus can be genetically altered in such a way that it assumes command of tumor cells only, not healthy ones. Specifically, the p53-binding protein of the adenovirus can be made so that it can no longer bind to p53. As a result, the virus cannot shut down p53. Therefore, it can only replicate in cells that lack normal p53—namely, many varieties of tumor cells. Indeed, studies have shown that such modified viruses replicate efficiently in tumor cells and proceed to make identical viral progeny. In theory, these viruses can then go on to infect adjacent tumor cells and thus spread throughout a cancer. All the cells in a tumor may be infected and killed in this way.

Viral vector approaches are in their infancy, and several technical hurdles still need to be tackled. Perhaps the most critical is ensuring that a sufficient fraction of the tumor cells are infected and that any newly introduced gene produces enough of its normal protein to stop the tumor cells and improve and sustain the patient's health. There might also be immunologic reactions to the viral vector protein—for instance, the immune system may attack and neutralize the virus before it reaches its target. The ultimate utility of this approach in cancer therapy may depend on the extent to which the immune response can be controlled during treatment. One kind of attenuated adenovirus is now moving toward clinical trials and should begin preliminary testing in patients within the next couple of years. Investigators are also exploring other delivery methods, using alternative kinds of viruses (for example, retroviruses) and lipids that would not provoke an immunologic response. *—A.O., J.B.G. and F.McC.*

drugs offer hope that some protein kinase antagonists will be available in the next few years to treat human cancers.

Tumor Suppressor Genes

The second main category of genes responsible for cancer includes those that, when working properly, suppress the development of malignancies. Many cancers result from the loss or malfunction of the key regulatory proteins that these genes encode. The two primary tumor suppressor proteins are the pRB and the p53 proteins.

The pRB protein (which draws its name from "retinoblastoma," the type of tumor in which its gene, called *RB*, was first identified) helps to regulate the cell cycle. In particular, its active form serves as a brake to DNA replication. In about 40 percent of human cancers, mutations in the *RB* gene render its protein inactive. As a result, the cells divide nonstop.

Another profoundly important regulatory molecule is the p53 protein. Often called the guardian of the genome, it prevents replication of damaged DNA in normal cells and promotes suicide, or apoptosis, of cells with abnormal DNA. Faulty p53 molecules allow cells carrying damaged DNA to survive when they would normally die and to replicate when they would normally stop; the disturbed cells pass any existing mutations down to their progeny, which then have the opportunity to accumulate any additional mutations they might need to form lethal tumors. In most human cancers, the *p53* gene appears defective.

What therapeutic strategies can tackle malfunctioning *RB* and *p53* genes? Several general approaches have been considered. Conceptually, the most straightforward is to replace the defective gene with its normal counterpart. Referred to as gene therapy, the process has appeared encouraging in cell culture experiments: normal *RB* or *p53* genes introduced into tumor cells blocked the growth of those cells. Investigators are now devising protocols for clinical trials. They hope to introduce normal *p53* genes into tumor cells in humans.

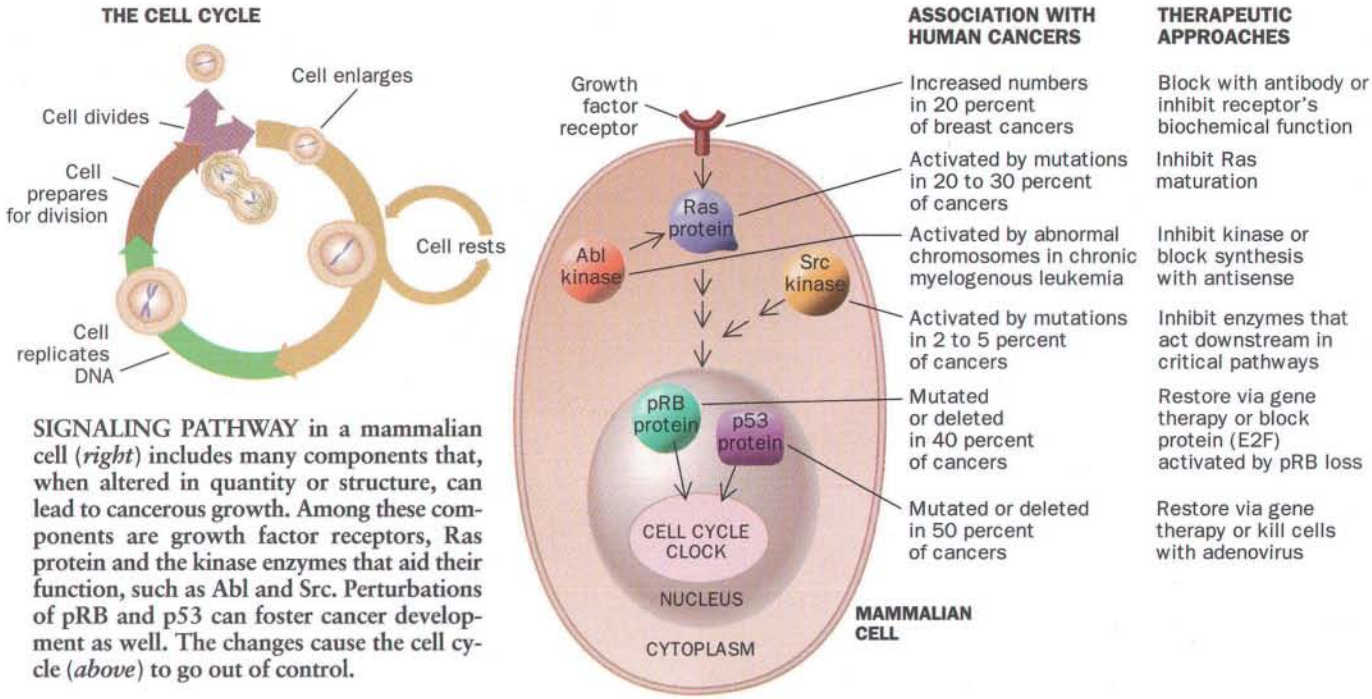
Researchers are actively exploring various methods for delivering genes into tumor cells. Weakened viruses could carry a normal gene and deliver it only to tumor cells [*see box at left*]. This viral vector approach, however, is still new and faces a number of difficulties, not the least of which could be a preemptive strike by the immune system. It might kill the viruses before they have had a chance to reach tumor cells.

Regulating the Gene Products

Given the hurdles facing gene therapy, many oncologists studying tumor suppressors are instead exploring a more traditional approach. It entails assessing the chain of events stemming from genetic defects in a cell and then developing drugs that treat one of those events. For example, in healthy cells the pRB protein blocks the activity of another protein (called E2F), which, when free, promotes the synthesis of DNA. Loss of the pRB protein therefore leads to uncontrolled E2F action and rampant cell proliferation. It follows, then, that drugs able to inhibit E2F could halt the expansion of tumors arising from the loss of pRB protein.

Currently the effects that such an inhibitor would have on normal cells are hard to predict. But recent experiments, such as studies of mice in which the *E2F* genes have been specifically "knocked out," now make it feasible to model the potential side effects. By extrapolating these results to humans, we can anticipate the harmful effects of these drugs—and perhaps find ways to evade them—years before clinical trials.

Researchers know the biochemical pathway regulated by the *RB* gene, but they cannot say the same for that of *p53*. We do not know precisely the molecular chain of events that stem from the loss of the *p53* gene. As a result, most of



SIGNALING PATHWAY in a mammalian cell (*right*) includes many components that, when altered in quantity or structure, can lead to cancerous growth. Among these components are growth factor receptors, Ras protein and the kinase enzymes that aid their function, such as Abl and Src. Perturbations of pRB and p53 can foster cancer development as well. The changes cause the cell cycle (*above*) to go out of control.

the potential drug targets downstream of *p53* have not yet been identified.

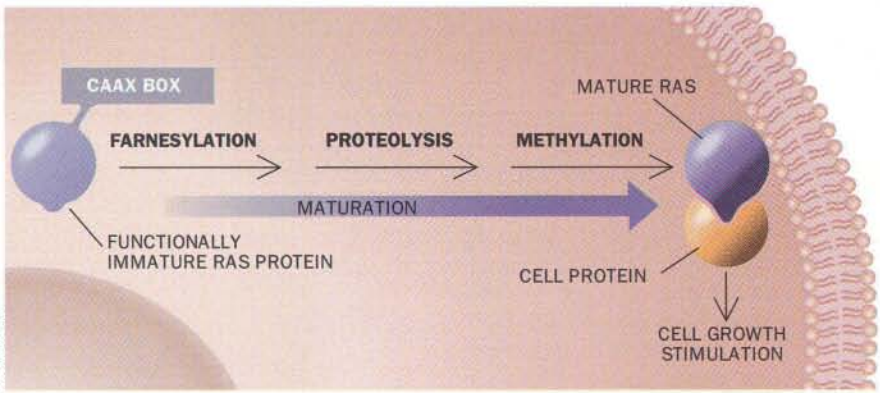
A curious feature of p53 protein inactivation, though, presents an opportunity. Some test-tube experiments suggest that normal p53 function can be restored with small molecules, which, when attached to a mutant, inactive p53 protein, would reactivate it. If a similar feat can be achieved in tumor cells, we would expect the malignant cells to stop growing or even die, because one function of p53 is to make abnormal cells self-destruct. The technical feasibility of this approach is challenging, but the potential value is immense, given the number of cancers that have bad *p53* genes. Efforts are under way in many laboratories to explore this strategy.

Genes That Check DNA Repair

The third major category of genes that could be molecular targets encompasses those that help to check and maintain the integrity of DNA, which is often damaged during replication. Without these mechanisms, the chances that a damaged gene will be repaired fall drastically, and the likelihood rises that the damage will ultimately be transmitted to the cell's progeny as a permanent mutation. Indeed, tumor cells frequently have defects in their DNA repair processes. For instance, 10 to 20 percent of human colon cancers appear to have mutations in genes that ordinarily help to repair DNA (the *MLH1*, *MSH2*, *PMS1* and *PMS2* genes).

Other genes indirectly participate in DNA repair; in fact, mutations of these genes are much more common. Among these genes are ones encoding "checkpoint" proteins, which monitor a cell's progress through the cell cycle and prevent the next stage from occurring if earlier stages have not been traversed successfully—for instance, if DNA has not been copied accurately. The most notable checkpoint proteins are ATM and, once again, the versatile p53. Tumor cells that lack normal *ATM* or *p53* genes are missing these checking mechanisms. Any damaged DNA is rushed through the replication process, increasing the frequency of random mutations in the daughter cells.

As with the mutated tumor suppressor genes, gene therapy might be used to replace missing or damaged genes that encode DNA-repairing or related proteins. A more radical approach may be to allow some tumors to mutate themselves to death. Tumor cells that increase their mutation rate pay a price: many mutations are lethal and lead to the death of the daughter cells. The tumor can afford to lose many of its progeny as long as a few of the acquired mutations enhance the survival of at least some of



RAS PROTEIN begins as an inactive precursor. Maturation takes place in three steps at the so-called CAAX box. Once modified, Ras can interact with other proteins and stimulate cell growth. Drugs that block the farnesylation reaction and thus prevent the Ras protein from becoming active could stop tumor cells from dividing.

Molecular Approaches in Cancer Therapy

Cancer Feature	Molecular Targets	Therapeutics
Oncogene activation leading to excessive Ras protein or kinase activity	Ras proteins	Farnesyl transferase inhibitors: L-744, 832; SCH 44342; BZA-5B
	Abl, EGF receptor, Erb-B2 and Src kinases	Tyrosine kinase inhibitors: tyrphostins (RG 13 022); lavendustins (AG 957); quinazolines (PD 153 035) Antisense inhibitors
	PKC-α, Raf and cyclin-dependent kinases	Serine/threonine kinase inhibitors: olomoucine; staurosporine; butyrolactone Antisense inhibitors
Loss of tumor suppressor genes	*APC, AT, DCC, RB* and *p53* genes	Gene therapy to restore normal suppressor gene function Antisense agents to block E2F synthesis
Abnormal DNA repair mechanisms	DNA mismatch repair enzymes: MSH2; MLH1; PMS1; PMS2	Gene therapy to restore normal enzyme activity Checkpoint inhibitors to promote susceptibility to DNA-damaging agents
Lack of senescence (cell aging) in tumor cells	Telomerase	Telomerase inhibitors
Angiogenesis	FGF, VEGF growth factors	TNP-470; suramin
	Integrin receptors	$\alpha_v\beta_3$, $\alpha_v\beta_5$ antagonists
Metastases	Metalloproteases Collagenases	Protease inhibitors Collagenase inhibitors

JANA BRENNING

the tumor's descendants. But if too many mutations are generated, then none of the tumor's daughter cells may be viable.

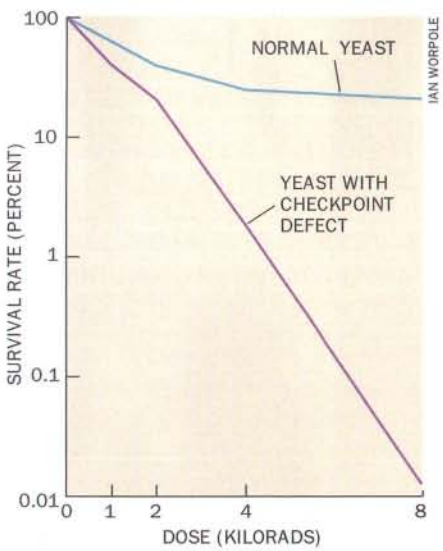
One way of nudging cancer cells to produce daughter cells that cannot survive is to inhibit several checkpoint mechanisms simultaneously. Ordinary yeast cells exposed to DNA-damaging x-rays die only after high radiation doses. But if one of its checkpoint genes is mutated, the yeast become more sensitive to radiation. In fact, if two or more checkpoint genes mutate at the same time, the cells become hypersensitive to radiation. Even low doses kill them.

Based on these observations, oncologists are designing drug-screening assays to identify agents that inhibit checkpoint proteins. These drugs could act on tumor cells possessing a known defect in a checkpoint gene (a mutant *p53* gene, say). With many such defects, the cancerous cells should readily die or at least succumb easily to other treatments. Several compounds have shown some promise in cell cultures, although clinical trials probably will not begin until after the turn of the century.

Besides targets involved in cell growth, molecular therapies can also aim for other important molecules; some of these therapies could be available in the next four years. For example, various proteins keep cells in one place in the body; with this knowledge, workers have discovered drugs, such as protease inhibitors, that might prevent cancer cells from metastasizing, or spreading, throughout the body [see "How Cancer Spreads," by Erkki Ruoslahti, page 42]. Other drugs will try to disable telomerase, the enzyme that rebuilds the ends of replicating chromosomes and in so doing enables cancer cells to remain immortal under conditions when other cells would die. Compounds, such as one called TNP-470, might choke off the formation of new blood vessels (angiogenesis) that nourish tumors [see "Fighting Cancer by Attacking Its Blood Supply," by Judah Folkman, page 116].

Although the targets for drugs outlined here represent some of the most exciting advances in cancer biology over the past decade, a word of caution is appropriate concerning the speed with which these findings can be converted into practical therapeutics. The new medicines based on these modern observations must overcome many of the same obstacles standard chemotherapies have had to surmount. Not only must they locate their cancerous targets, but they also must find a way to penetrate into malignant cells in sufficient numbers to be effective. Solid tumors pose a multitude of barriers to drug delivery; not much blood flows deep inside tumors, and some drugs might not easily perfuse out of blood vessels that feed tumors and then find their way into the cancerous mass itself [see "Barriers to Drug Delivery in Solid Tumors," by Rakesh K. Jain; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, July 1994]. And of course, there are the issues of toxicity, side effects and the emergence of drug resistance in the tumor cells.

The latest methods of pharmaceutical science can be used to foster drug discovery. These methods include recombinant genetics to produce compounds,



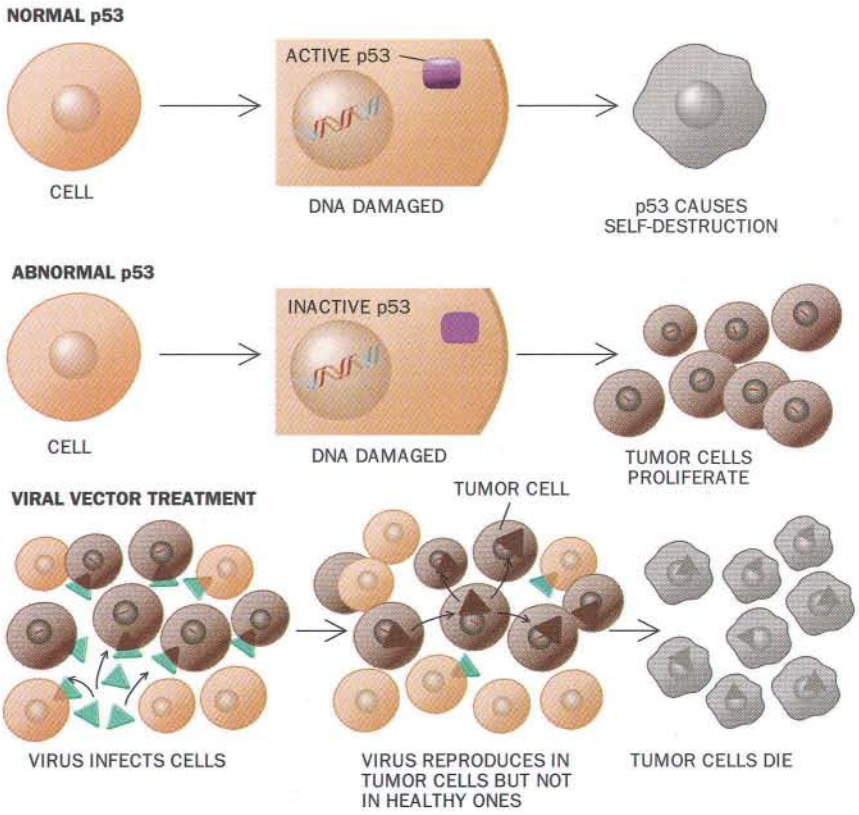
IAN WORPOLE

DNA CHECKPOINT DEFECT increases yeast cells' sensitivity to radiation. An eight-kilorad dose leaves many healthy yeast alive but virtually wipes out those that cannot properly check their DNA repair mechanisms. Such a finding suggests that damaging checkpoint DNA in tumor cells could make them more vulnerable to conventional cancer therapy.

genetically engineered animals to serve as model systems, high-volume robotic screening of compounds, combinatorial chemistry techniques and computer-assisted design of drugs. Even when these techniques are employed, most anticancer agents take at least 10 years to become available, as measured from the time the molecular target is first identified until novel drugs for that target can be discovered, developed and approved for use.

First, two to three years of molecular, genetic and cell biological studies are needed to confirm that a target is indeed critical to the development of human cancers. Thereafter biochemical screening assays to find promising compounds require a year or two. Once a good lead is discovered, medicinal chemists modify the drug to optimize its potency, specificity and pharmacological properties. These efforts will typically consume another three to five years and demand the synthesis of several hundred to several thousand related compounds. Once in the clinic, traditional three-phase evaluations of the agents can take another three to five years or longer to determine unequivocally their safety, efficacy and proper doses.

This timetable for drug discovery and development presents a sobering reality for basic cancer researchers and clinical oncologists alike. Nevertheless, several molecularly targeted, mechanism-based cancer therapeutics are far along in the drug-development pipeline. Antisense drugs that inhibit protein kinases began clinical trials earlier this year. The farnesyl transferase inhibitors and several other kinase inhibitors should begin clinical trials in the next two to four years. The gene therapy approaches intended to replace mutated genes with their normal counterparts are further away, at least a decade.



P53 PROTEIN instructs a cell to kill itself if the DNA is damaged by, say, drugs or radiation. But if p53 is abnormal, it may not stop a cell with bad DNA from replicating. One way of treating tumor cells is through viruses genetically engineered so that they reproduce in cells with abnormal p53 but not in healthy cells. In principle, the virus would move unchecked only through tumor cells, killing them.

Besides its laser-beam accuracy, the molecularly targeted approach may have another favorable characteristic. For reasons that are not yet clear, tumor cells with multiple molecular defects seem to respond even when only one of these defects is treated. Therefore, a patient may not need to take several drugs simultaneously to get some benefit.

Although formidable obstacles stand in the way, the next generation of cancer therapies holds the potential of being more effective and less toxic. With a plethora of targets to aim for, chances are good that a number of compounds will provide powerful new ammunition in the war on cancer. SA

The Authors

ALLEN OLIFF, JACKSON B. GIBBS and FRANK MCCORMICK are pharmaceutical researchers seeking remedies for cancer on the molecular level. Oliff, who received his M.D. from the Albert Einstein College of Medicine in Bronx, N.Y., is executive director for cancer research at Merck Research Laboratories in West Point, Pa. He has served on several academic and professional advisory boards, including that of the National Cancer Institute. Gibbs is Merck's senior director of cancer research and holds an adjunct professorship at the University of Pennsylvania School of Medicine. He received his Ph.D. from the University of Virginia and serves on various editorial and advisory boards. McCormick founded Onyx Pharmaceuticals in Richmond, Calif., in 1992 and serves as its chief scientific officer. He earned his Ph.D. from the University of Cambridge and worked as vice president for research at Cetus Corporation and Chiron Corporation.

Further Reading

MOLECULAR THEMES IN ONCOGENESIS. J. Michael Bishop in *Cell,* Vol. 64, No. 2, pages 235–248; January 25, 1991.

PROTEINS REGULATING RAS AND ITS RELATIVES. Mark S. Bogusski and Frank McCormick in *Nature,* Vol. 366, pages 643–654; December 16, 1993.

TUMOR SUPPRESSOR GENES. P. W. Hinds and R. A. Weinberg in *Current Opinion in Genetics and Development,* Vol. 4, No. 1, pages 135–141; February 1994.

PHARMACEUTICAL RESEARCH IN MOLECULAR ONCOLOGY. J. B. Gibbs and A. Oliff in *Cell,* Vol. 79, No. 2, pages 193–198; October 21, 1994.

CELL CYCLE CONTROL AND CANCER. Leland H. Hartwell and Michael B. Kasten in *Science,* Vol. 266, pages 1821–1828; December 16, 1994.

Fighting Cancer by Attacking Its Blood Supply

By interfering with the expanding network of blood vessels in tumors, researchers hope to cut off the underlying support system

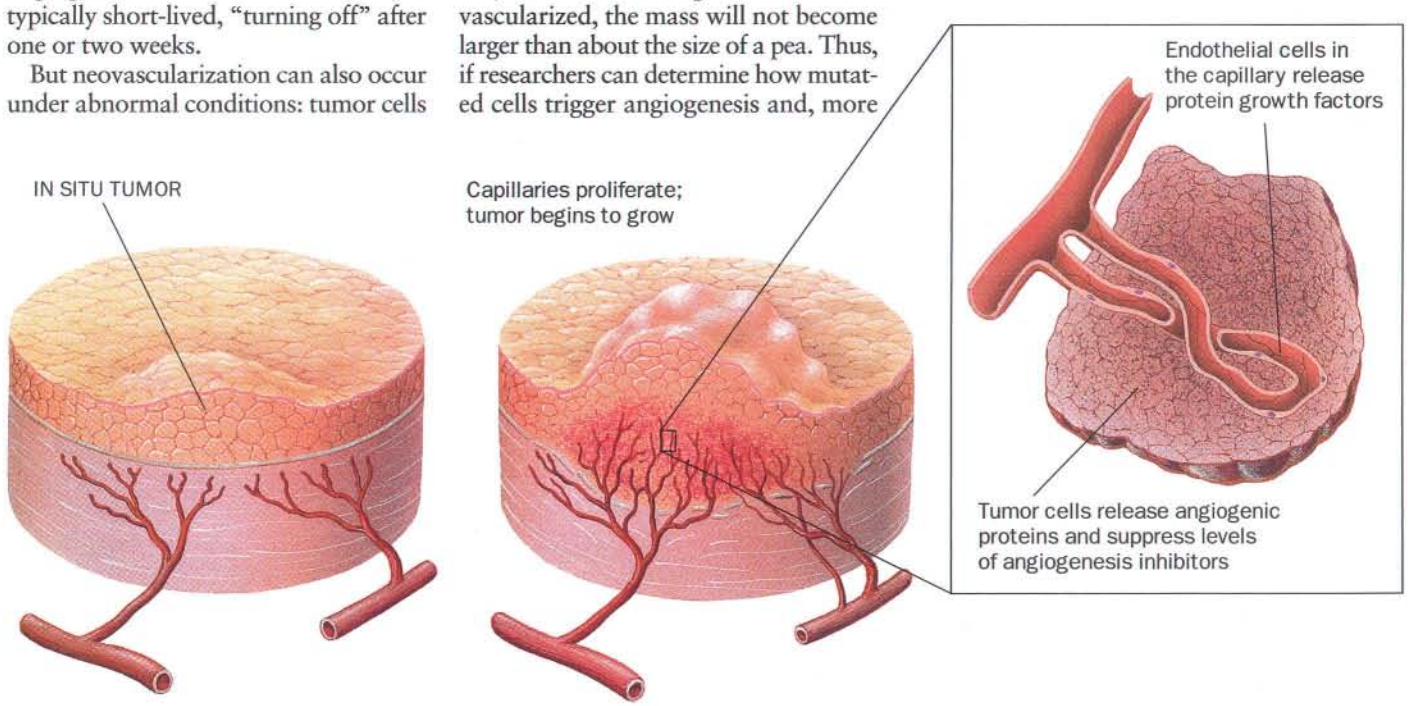
by Judah Folkman

The tiny blood vessels known as capillaries extend into virtually all the tissues of the body, replenishing nutrients and carrying off waste products. Under most conditions, capillaries do not increase in size or number, because the endothelial cells that line these narrow tubes do not divide. But occasionally—for example, during menstruation or when tissue is damaged—these vessels begin to grow rapidly. This proliferation of new capillaries, called angiogenesis or neovascularization, is typically short-lived, "turning off" after one or two weeks.

But neovascularization can also occur under abnormal conditions: tumor cells can "turn on" angiogenesis. As new blood vessels bring in fresh nutrients and proteins known as growth factors, the tumor mass can expand. In fact, neovascularization appears to be one of the crucial steps in a tumor's transition from a small, harmless cluster of mutated cells to a large, malignant growth, capable of spreading to other organs throughout the body. Tumor cells are usually unable to stimulate angiogenesis when they first arise in healthy tissue; unless the deranged cells become vascularized, the mass will not become larger than about the size of a pea. Thus, if researchers can determine how mutated cells trigger angiogenesis and, more important for patients, how to interrupt the process, they will have a powerful new anticancer therapy at their disposal. Furthermore, because antiangiogenic drugs stop new growth but do not attack healthy vessels, they should in theory do no harm to blood vessels serving normal tissues. (Angiogenesis inhibitors can stop menstruation or delay wound healing, however.)

Research into the importance of angiogenesis to the progression of cancer has been a vital area of laboratory investigation for several decades—I wrote an early article on the subject in the mid-1970s [see "The Vascularization of Tumors," by Judah Folkman; SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, May 1976]. But only in the past seven years has research moved out of the laboratory and into the clinic. In 1989 the first clinical trial of an antiangiogenic agent—interferon alpha—began for the treatment of life-threatening hemangioma (a noncancerous blood vessel tumor found primarily in infants).

By 1992 the first antiangiogenic drug for cancer patients, TNP-470 (a synthetic analogue of the substance fumagillin), entered clinical trials. The first studies were restricted to a few kinds of tumors, but the Food and Drug Administration now allows physicians to administer TNP-470 in clinical trials for a wide variety of cancers in humans. In the past four years, at least seven other angio-



TOMO NARASHIMA

genesis inhibitors have entered clinical trials for the treatment of advanced cancer, and one of these compounds is also being tested in patients with abnormal blood vessel growth in the eyes.

The effort to explore the practical applications of antiangiogenic compounds reflects years of work by many researchers—unfortunately too numerous to list in this short space. For example, during the past several years, scientists have identified at least 14 different proteins found in the body that can trigger blood vessel growth and several others that can halt it. Most recently, researchers have discovered that one of these natural angiogenesis inhibitors is normally under the control of the tumor suppressor gene *p53*, which has been implicated in various cancers. With such clues, cancer researchers continue to refine their understanding of angiogenesis in tumor growth and of ways to block it.

Angiogenesis Is Required for Spread

As with most aspects of cancer progression, angiogenesis distorts a normal biological process—in this case, regulation of blood vessel growth. Capillary blood vessels, each thinner than a hair, are arranged so that almost every healthy cell in the body can live directly on the surface of a capillary. If a healthy cell becomes cancerous and begins dividing rapidly, the resulting daughter cells accumulate in a microscopic mass. As the cells pile up, they find themselves farther and farther from the nearest capillary. When a few million such cells have accumulated, the small tumor—often called an in situ carcinoma—stops expanding and reaches a steady state, in which the number of dying cells counterbalances the number of proliferating cells. This restriction in size is caused in part by the lack of readily available nutrients, protein growth factors and oxygen. These minuscule carcinomas can be detected if they are on the skin or cervix, but in the breast, lung or colon, they may go unrecognized for several years. Regrettably, we do not yet have the technology to detect most small in situ tumors in internal organs until after the tissue has been removed and examined under a microscope.

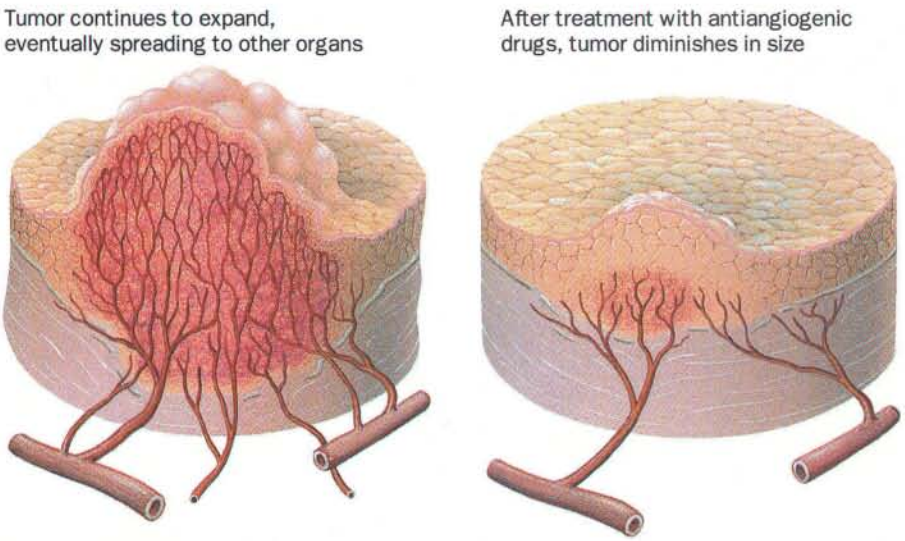
After many months or even years in this steady state, an in situ tumor may abruptly induce new capillary growth and start to invade surrounding tissue. The tumor calls into service naturally occurring proteins that promote neovascularization. The mutated tumor cells might themselves produce high levels of such proteins; alternatively, they can mobilize angiogenic proteins found in nearby tissue, or they may prompt other types of cells, such as macrophages, to release angiogenic proteins.

Yet even after employing these mechanisms, malignant cells may still fail to trigger angiogenesis. Recent discoveries by Noel Bouck's group at Northwestern University and in Douglas Hanahan's laboratory at the University of California at San Francisco suggest that certain tumor cells make two types of protein: one kind stimulates angiogenesis, and the other inhibits it. The balance between them determines whether the tumor can switch on angiogenesis. And experiments indicate that the ability to turn on angiogenesis most likely depends on a decrease in the production of those proteins that inhibit the process. So, in effect, angiogenic cancer cells release the natural brakes on the spread of new capillaries—once a tumor becomes angiogenic, it tends to stay that way.

Once neovascularization occurs, hundreds of new capillaries converge on the tiny tumor; each vessel soon has a thick coat of rapidly dividing tumor cells. Some of these cells are not angiogenic but are nonetheless sustained by capillaries recruited by neighboring cells. Now the tumor can expand rapidly—in a matter of months, the mass may reach one cubic centimeter in size and contain around one billion tumor cells.

Further promoting the progress of the disease, the newly dividing endothelial cells release at least six different proteins that can stimulate the proliferation or motility of tumor cells. For example, in breast cancer, the capillary endothelial cells recruited to the tumor produce the protein interleukin-6, which can increase the probability that breast cancer cells will leave the tumor, migrate into the bloodstream and spread to other organs—in other words, metastasize. Some of the metastases contain cells that are already angiogenic and thus will grow rapidly. Other metastases, however, contain mainly nonangiogenic cells and may lie dormant for years, becoming angiogenic long after the original tumor has been treated or removed.

When a tumor has advanced to this stage, it often causes readily identifiable symptoms. Blood appearing between menstrual periods or in the urine, stool or sputum indicates that angiogenesis has taken place in the cervix, bladder, colon or lung, respectively. By the time a breast cancer can be seen on a mammogram, the tumor has already undergone vascularization. The bloody abdominal fluid seen with ovarian cancer, the bone



ANGIOGENESIS, or neovascularization, involves the proliferation of new blood vessels. The process transforms a small, usually harmless cluster of abnormal cells (known as an in situ tumor) into a large mass that can spread to other organs. Drugs that aim to interfere with angiogenesis—for example, by halting the action of angiogenic proteins—can reduce the size of tumors and potentially maintain them in a dormant state.

pain of prostate cancer, the swelling around brain tumors and the obstruction of the intestinal tract common in colon cancer all result from angiogenic tumors. Biologically active molecules released by the expanding tumor can cause additional symptoms, such as weight loss and formation of blood clots.

Shrinking Tumors

At present, patients diagnosed with any form of cancer typically rely on surgery or radiation to remove or eradicate the original tumor and on follow-up radiation or chemotherapy, or both, to try to eliminate any remaining cancerous cells in the body. Antiangiogenic therapy, in contrast to many other therapeutic approaches, does not aim to destroy tumors. Instead, by limiting their blood supply, it attempts to shrink tumors and prevent them from growing. Antiangiogenic drugs stop new vessels from forming around a tumor and break up the existing network of abnormal capillaries that feeds the cancerous mass. Currently, in addition to the angiogenesis inhibitors that are in clinical trials, many potential inhibitors are under study in university laboratories and in some 30 pharmaceutical and biotechnology companies around the world.

In particular, two of the compounds being looked at are very potent angiogenesis inhibitors, suggesting that they eventually will be quite useful for treating cancer patients. David A. Cheresh and his colleagues at the Scripps Institute discovered the first of these substances: a protein that interferes with another molecule known as an integrin, which is found in large quantities on the surface of growing endothelial cells. If the integrin (named alpha$_v$beta$_3$) is blocked, the proliferating endothelial cells die.

The second of these promising compounds, the protein angiostatin, was discovered in mouse urine by Michael S. O'Reilly in my laboratory at Children's Hospital Medical Center in Boston. Angiostatin is among the most potent of the known angiogenesis inhibitors. In animals, it can stop nearly all blood vessel growth in a large tumor or in its metastases. Human prostate, colon and breast cancers that have been implanted in mice and allowed to grow to 1 percent of the animals' body weight can be reduced to a microscopic size and held in a dormant state for as long as angiostatin is administered. Furthermore, angiostatin is very specific, halting only the multiplication of endothelial cells and not of other cells or of normally quiescent endothelial cells. This specificity has powerful benefits: researchers have not detected in animals any toxic side effects of the drug. In addition, resistance to angiostatin does not appear to develop in animals.

Angiostatin is actually a fragment of the larger protein plasminogen, which is not antiangiogenic itself. Indeed, several angiogenesis inhibitor proteins exist as internal fragments of larger proteins (for instance, another inhibitor is a fragment of the protein prolactin), suggesting that normal angiogenesis inhibitors may be, in a sense, stored within larger proteins. Thus, when the body needs to stop normal angiogenesis—after wound healing or ovulation—these natural inhibitors may be available for immediate use by simply breaking down the larger proteins.

Angiogenesis Inhibitors in Clinical Trials

Although no antiangiogenic drugs have been approved for use in cancer patients, many are now in clinical trials.

Drug	Possible Mechanism of Action	Current Status
CAI	Inhibits influx of calcium into cells, suppressing proliferation of endothelial cells	Phases I and II
CM101	Induces inflammation in tumors, destroying growing capillaries	Phase I
Interferon alpha	Decreases production of the angiogenic protein FGF (made by tumor cells)	Phase III (hemangiomas in infants)
Interleukin-12	Increases production of an angiogenic inhibitor called inducible protein 10	Phase I
Marimastat	Inhibits the enzymes that cells employ when migrating through tissue	Phases II and III
Pentosan polysulfate	Blocks action of growth factors on endothelial cells	Phase I
Platelet factor 4	Inhibits proliferation of endothelial cells	Phases I and II
Thalidomide	Exact mechanism unknown	Phases I and II
TNP-470 (AGM-1470)	Selectively inhibits proliferation and migration of endothelial cells	Phases I and II

Phase I: Small trials to evaluate toxicity and determine maximum safe dose
Phase II: Small trials for signs of efficacy
Phase III: Large trials that compare new therapy with best available treatment

MARIA SUTTON

Offering Treatment

Laboratory studies as well as ongoing clinical trials of angiogenesis inhibitors provide important guidelines for how these drugs may eventually be used in cancer patients, if they receive approval from the FDA. For example, when angiogenesis inhibitors are first introduced into clinical practice, they will most likely be used in combination with current conventional cancer therapy. Beverly A. Teicher of the Dana-Farber Cancer Institute in Boston has shown in animals that combinations of angiogenesis inhibitors and chemotherapeutic agents are more effective than either therapy alone. In one instance, 42 percent of the animals were cured by a combination of treatments but not by either drug alone.

A possible explanation for the apparent synergism between these two therapies is that the two types of cells in a tumor—the endothelial cells and the tumor cells—respond differently to therapy. For example, endothelial cells have a low or virtually undetectable mutation rate as compared with that of tumor cells

and thus do not usually become drug-resistant. In addition, every 10 to 100 new tumor cells require at least one new endothelial cell. (One gram of tumor contains approximately 20 million endothelial cells and 100 million to one billion tumor cells.) Therefore, when an angiogenesis inhibitor halts the growth of one endothelial cell, the effect on tumor cells may be amplified.

Angiogenesis inhibitors have also been studied in conjunction with radiation therapy. Oncologists and radiologists initially debated whether radiation therapy would be enhanced by coupling it with antiangiogenic drugs. But Teicher recently found that treatment of mouse tumors with angiogenesis inhibitors did increase the effectiveness of radiation therapy. Several antiangiogenic drugs, including TNP-470 and minocycline (a relative of the antibiotic tetracycline), are being examined in conjunction with radiation therapy in animals.

METASTASES can grow when levels of naturally circulating angiogenesis inhibitors, such as the protein angiostatin, fall. Angiostatin released by a large tumor in a mouse initially kept in check small metastases in the animal's lung (*left*). When researchers removed the original tumor, circulating angiostatin dropped off, allowing the metastases to expand (*right*) as blood vessels (*red*) proliferate. A similar pattern occasionally occurs in humans: after removal of one tumor, new metastases may appear. Nevertheless, primary tumors should be removed; follow-up chemotherapy can prevent the growth of metastases. Angiostatin is now in development as a potential antiangiogenic therapy.

MICHAEL S. O'REILLY AND LARS HOLMGREN *Children's Hospital Medical Center, Harvard Medical School*

Future Directions

After the completion of conventional chemotherapy or radiation therapy, angiogenesis inhibitors might be used as a long-term treatment against cancer. If the cancer has metastasized, antiangiogenic therapy may be needed indefinitely. In other situations, antiangiogenic drugs may be given for a brief period, perhaps before surgical removal of a large tumor. Antiangiogenic treatment could possibly be administered intermittently, even for a few months or years, to maintain a tumor's dormancy. Fortunately, the general lack of drug resistance developed against these compounds as well as their low toxicity makes them amenable to extended use.

Although scientists have been investigating angiogenesis for more than two decades, many questions remain about the process, how it is regulated and how it can be controlled therapeutically. For instance, no one understands why some tumors, particularly in the cervix, undergo neovascularization much earlier than others. And antiangiogenic drugs now in development face the traditional uncertainties of all clinical trials: unforeseen side effects could surface, or a drug might be ineffective in humans despite its efficacy in mice.

In addition, as with any new drug, there are potential economic hurdles to overcome. Many of the angiogenesis inhibitors are newly discovered proteins or other types of molecules. Chemists must now figure out how to make these compounds on a large scale. This process can be expensive, but experience suggests that prices should fall with time.

Despite the obstacles, antiangiogenic substances offer the promise of an additional anticancer therapy for our current armamentarium. Angiogenesis inhibitors may turn out to have significant benefits because they are not as likely to induce resistance and because they generally have fewer side effects. These agents may also be used to treat other diseases characterized by abnormal angiogenesis. Among these other conditions are diabetic retinopathy, macular degeneration and neovascular glaucoma—all diseases of the eye in which abnormal vessels proliferate and destroy vision. In addition, psoriasis, arthritis, hemangioma and other benign tumors may be susceptible to treatment with angiogenesis inhibitors. Clearly, then, antiangiogenic drugs have exciting potential as therapies for a number of serious conditions—in addition to cancer. SA

The Author

JUDAH FOLKMAN is director of the surgical research laboratory at Children's Hospital Medical Center of Harvard Medical School. His laboratory reported the first purified angiogenic molecule and the first angiogenesis inhibitor. Folkman's group then proposed the concept of angiogenic disease. Folkman is a fellow of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences and a member of the National Academy of Sciences. The author gratefully acknowledges the nearly uninterrupted support of angiogenesis research for more than 25 years by the National Cancer Institute.

Further Reading

BARRIERS TO DRUG DELIVERY IN SOLID TUMORS. Rakesh K. Jain in *Scientific American,* Vol. 271, No. 1, pages 42–49; July 1994.

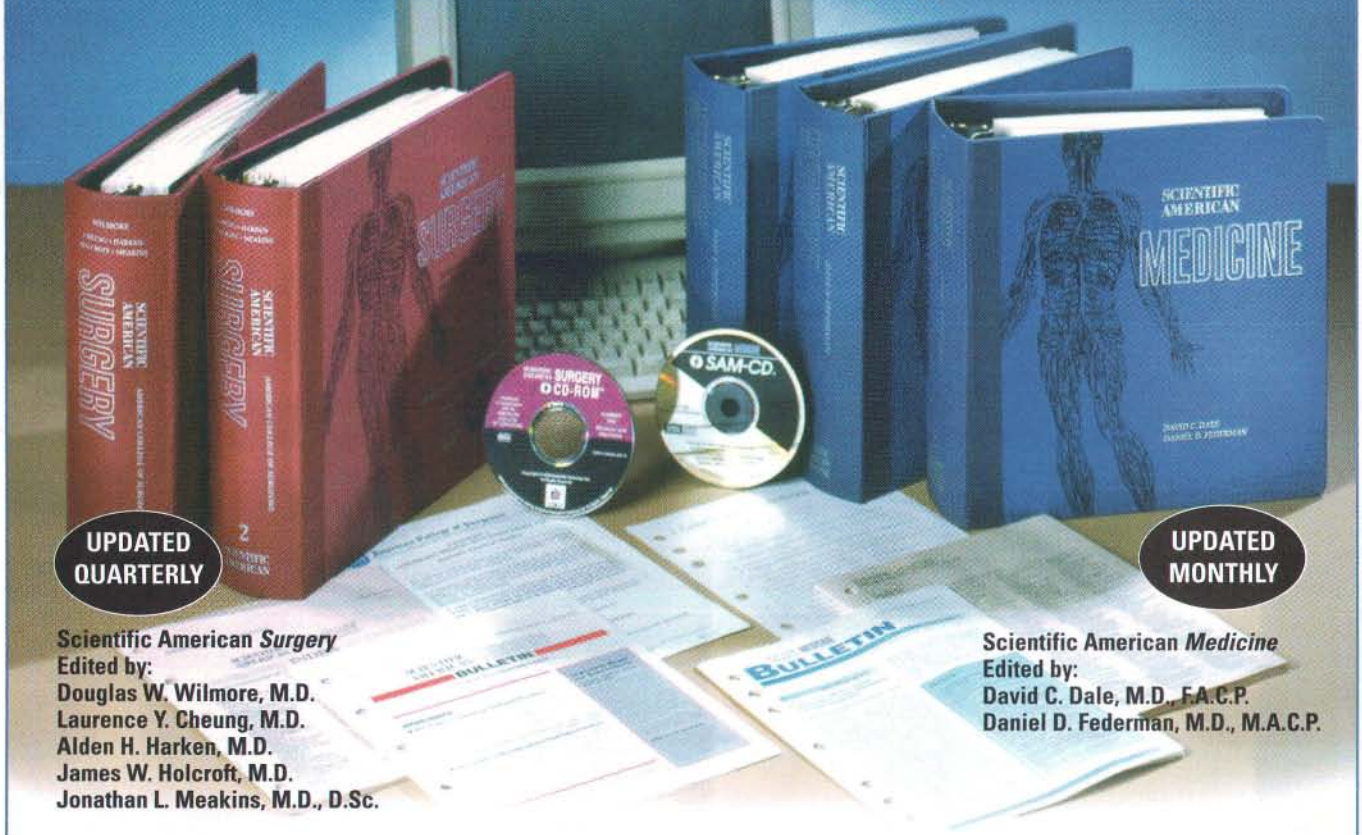
ANTIANGIOGENIC AGENTS CAN INCREASE TUMOR OXYGENATION AND RESPONSE TO RADIATION THERAPY. B. A. Teicher, N. Dupis, T. Kusomoto, M. F. Robinson, F. Liu, K. Menon and C. N. Coleman in *Radiation Oncology Investigations,* Vol. 2, No. 6, pages 269–276; 1995.

TUMOR ANGIOGENESIS. Judah Folkman in *The Molecular Basis of Cancer.* Edited by J. Mendelsohn, P. M. Howley, M. A. Israel and L. A. Liotta. W. B. Saunders, 1995.

ANGIOSTATIN INDUCES AND SUSTAINS DORMANCY OF HUMAN PRIMARY TUMORS IN MICE. M. S. O'Reilly, L. Holmgren, C. Chen and J. Folkman in *Nature Medicine,* Vol. 2, No. 6, pages 689–692; June 1996.

Medical Practice is Constantly Evolving...

So Are The World's Leading Medicine and Surgery Information Systems



UPDATED QUARTERLY

Scientific American *Surgery*
Edited by:
Douglas W. Wilmore, M.D.
Laurence Y. Cheung, M.D.
Alden H. Harken, M.D.
James W. Holcroft, M.D.
Jonathan L. Meakins, M.D., D.Sc.

UPDATED MONTHLY

Scientific American *Medicine*
Edited by:
David C. Dale, M.D., F.A.C.P.
Daniel D. Federman, M.D., M.A.C.P.

BASE SET

- Up-to-date when you receive it – and stays up-to-date during the life of your subscription
- Each information system is authored by over 100 leading experts
- Outstanding graphics and illustrations – in the tradition of Scientific American – that greatly enhance understanding of the text.

UPDATES

- Keeps you current with new developments
- Each update package contains five to seven updated chapters
- Both systems are constantly reviewed to ensure that the contents reflect current practice
- All new index with each update package

UPDATE BULLETIN

- Synopsis saves you time. You can read the full update when you need to

SAVE EVEN MORE TIME, ELECTRONICALLY

- Scientific American *Medicine* and Scientific American *Surgery* are available in a convenient, state-of-the-art CD-ROM. Each disc, available in Windows or Macintosh format, is updated quarterly and includes all the great features of the paper versions, such as the world renowned illustrations. And you can save even more time in your practice as you navigate your way around these important medical information services. Scientific American *Medicine* on CD-ROM now includes the *USP DI*®.

ORDER FORM

TO: SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN MEDICINE 415 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10017

For Fastest Order Service Call 1-800-545-0554

Please enter the following order:
- ☐ Scientific American Medicine, 3 volume loose-leaf with monthly updates @ $328.00
- ☐ Scientific American Medicine on CD-ROM with quarterly updates @ $299.00*
- ☐ Scientific American Surgery, 2 volume loose-leaf with quarterly updates @ $250.00
- ☐ Scientific American Surgery on CD-ROM with quarterly updates @ $395.00*

Payment in the amount of $_____enclosed**
☐ Bill me, attached is P.O. number_____

(Postage and handling added to all "bill me" orders and to all orders from outside the U.S. All orders outside the U.S. and Canada must be prepaid and are shipped surface mail)**

Available in Macintosh and Windows formats, call 1–800–545–0554 for hardware requirements; outside the U.S. and Canada call 212–754–0550 or Fax 212–980–3062.

Charge my credit card: ☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard ☐ American Express ☐ Access ☐ EuroCard

CardNo._____Exp.Date_____

Signature_____

Name_____

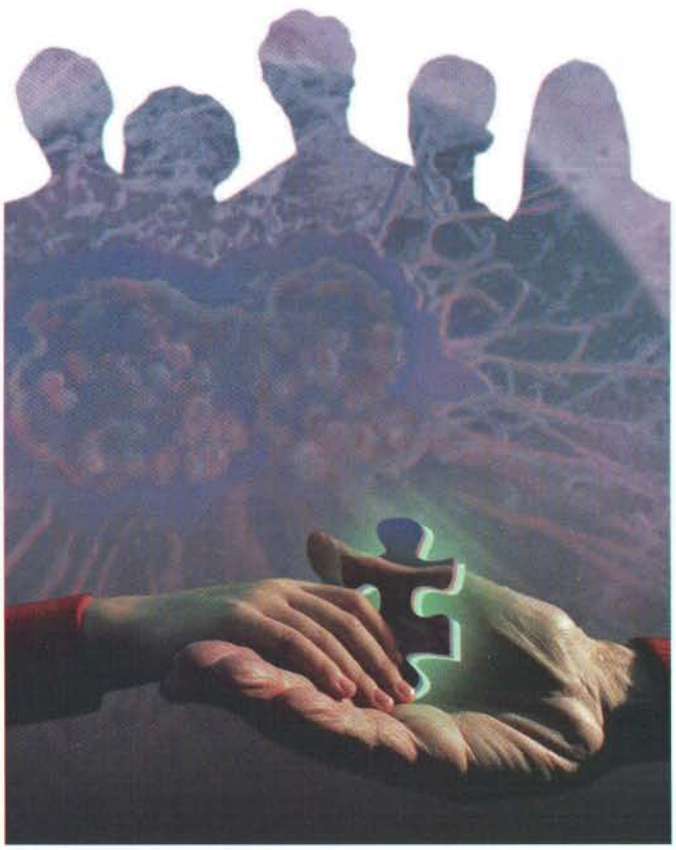
Address_____

_____

City_____State/Country_____Zip/Postal Code_____

**Add sales tax for CA, IL, MI, NY or Canada. Canadian GST # R127387652. Quebec residents add QST. QST # Q1015332537. Payments must be made in U.S. funds drawn on a U.S. bank. Orders from outside the U.S. add postage and handling as follows: Scientific American *Medicine* loose-leaf: Canada add US$36.50; others add US$37.50. SAM-CD: Canada add US$12.00; others add US$20.00. Scientific American *Surgery* loose-leaf: Canada add US$25.50; others add US$20.50. SAS-CD: Canada add US$12.00; others add US$20.00.

V7143



Living with Cancer

There are ways to cope successfully with the physical, psychological and practical challenges of the disease. Resources are available to patients who know where to look. Even pain can usually be controlled—if caregivers award the problem the attention it deserves.

CONTENTS

PHOTOMONTAGE BY PATRICIA McDERMOND
PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF PHOTO RESEARCHERS, INC.

Cancer's Psychological Challenges

Cancer patients today have many options for easing distress. These interventions may not prolong life, but they can improve its quality

by Jimmie C. Holland

Until the second half of this century, "cancer equals death" was so pervasive a belief that physicians usually withheld the diagnosis from the patient and informed only the family. Families, in turn, often hid the fact that a member had the disease, as if it were something to be ashamed of. Today the stigma associated with cancer has largely vanished in the U.S. Patients receive abundant information about their illness and are free to discuss available treatments with doctors and others.

These changes can be traced to the 1950s, when chemotherapeutic agents were successfully used, often in combination with surgery and radiation, to treat several types of cancer, notably acute leukemia and Hodgkin's disease in children and young adults. Those who first benefited from these advances sometimes exhibited "survivor guilt"—similar to that suffered by Holocaust survivors—as they struggled to understand why they had been spared when so many others had not. Such feelings are much less common today, when there are eight million cancer survivors in the U.S. alone.

Partly as a result of the women's and consumer-rights movements in the 1960s, cancer patients began to demand more information about their diagnosis and medical options. In the mid-1970s Betty Ford and Happy Rockefeller, both wives of nationally prominent politicians, pushed the issue farther out of the closet by disclosing their own struggles with breast cancer. Still, change has come slowly. In the 1970s, when I began to explore the psychological responses of patients to cancer, one oncologist warned me that I could talk to his patients only if I did not mention the disease itself.

A few years after that incident, the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center in New York City created a psychiatry service, which was charged with conducting research and training young psychiatrists and psychologists in the new area of psycho-oncology. Our work focuses on two major issues: first, the psychological impact of cancer on the patient, the family and caregivers; second, the influence of psychological and behavioral factors on cancer risk and survival.

Assessing Quality of Life

More specifically, we have asked such questions as: What are the common responses to cancer? Which ones are normal, and which are abnormal, reflecting a degree of distress that could interfere with a person's ability to follow a treatment plan? What is the prevalence of psychological problems warranting therapy? Do particular emotional reactions affect the course of illness, either adversely or positively? Finally, what interventions and coping methods can reduce distress?

One major goal of psycho-oncology has been developing ways to measure a patient's overall ability to function. By responding to detailed questionnaires, patients can quantify how they are functioning physically, psychologically, socially, sexually and at work, as compared to when they were well.

These methods are now applied widely to determine how a given treatment affects quality of life. In fact, the Food and Drug Administration recommends that quality of life be included as a secondary criterion, after survival rates, in assessments of most new cancer treatments. The result is that researchers can calculate a figure called quality-adjusted life years, or QALYS. This figure provides a more accurate picture of the potential benefits and adverse effects of a treatment—such as chemotherapy for women with recurrent breast cancer—than survival rates alone.

The psychological impact of cancer can obviously be devastating. The word still evokes fears of death, disfigurement, physical dependence and inability to protect those whom one holds dear. The immediate response of someone diagnosed with the illness is usually disbelief and shock. The person may think, "This can't be happening to me; they made a mistake in the slides." Next comes a phase of acute distress, turmoil and depression, which may include preoccupation with disease and death, anxiety, loss of appetite, insomnia, poor concentration and inability to carry out normal routines.

Ideally, after a week or two patients begin to feel all is not lost and to pursue a plan for treatment. Over the next weeks and months, they slowly learn to cope with the overwhelming reality of illness. The way people adjust to cancer over the long run has much to do with their prior ability to face life's problems and crises. Some cope with the challenges of the disease relatively calmly and constructively, whereas others—particularly those with preexisting psychological difficulties—may go into an emotional tailspin.

Anxiety attacks, insomnia, poor concentration, anorexia and a loss of interest in normal activities and even of the desire to continue living—all are signs of serious distress that should be addressed by a mental health worker if they persist several weeks beyond the initial diagnosis. People also need professional assistance if their responses interfere with medical care. Many people

need such help. In a recent study done at three cancer centers, 47 percent of those diagnosed with cancer had a level of distress equivalent to that seen in a true psychiatric disorder. By far the most common problems were anxiety, depression or a combination of the two.

Sometimes troubling emotions are triggered by medications with mood-altering side effects, such as steroids and pain medicines. Identifying the source of distress is important so that the proper intervention can be prescribed. If medications are not at fault, psychotherapy or other forms of counseling may be effective, although antidepressants are often needed as well. Many patients are so afraid of addiction that they eschew drugs, whether antidepressants or painkillers, and needlessly endure severe psychic or physical pain [see "Controlling the Pain of Cancer," by Kathleen M. Foley, page 128]. Those inclined toward stoicism must realize that reducing their suffering can make more bearable not only their own life but the lives of their loved ones as well.

Over the past two decades, communication between patients and physicians about psychological issues has improved. More patients ask that consideration be given to the "human side" of their care. Most doctors, for their part, have come to realize that how they convey bad news and otherwise relate to patients can have a profound effect on patients' morale and thus on their response to treatment. Caregivers are also increasingly taught to pay greater attention to patients' subjective assessments of their condition, including pain or psychological reactions.

Yet doctors may still have difficulty determining when a patient's normal feelings of sadness and anxiety have become so severe that they demand therapeutic intervention. One obstacle is that many patients avoid discussing their feelings because they do not want to be perceived as "weak" or "whiny." Doctors with little training in psychology or psychiatry may also avoid questioning

ABRAHAM MENASHE

SUPPORTIVE RELATIONSHIPS, whether involving families, religious organizations or support groups (such as the one pictured here practicing touch therapy) can improve quality of life. According to tentative findings, social support may even extend life for some cancer patients.

Guidelines for Coping with Cancer

1 Do not believe the old adage "cancer equals death." Today many cancers are curable; others can be controlled for long periods, during which new treatments may become available.
2 Do not believe that you caused your cancer. There is no evidence linking specific personalities, emotional states or painful life events to the development of cancer.
3 Do rely on strategies that helped you solve problems in the past, such as gathering information, talking to others and finding ways to feel in control. Seek help if they don't work.
4 Do not feel guilty if you can't keep a "positive" attitude all the time. Low periods will occur, no matter how good you are at coping. There is no evidence that those periods have a negative effect on your health. If they become too frequent or severe, though, seek help.
5 Do use support and self-help groups if they make you feel better. Leave any that make you feel worse.
6 Do not be embarrassed to seek counsel from a mental health professional. It is a sign of strength, not weakness, and it may help you to tolerate your symptoms and treatments better.
7 Do use any methods that aid you in gaining control over your emotions, such as meditation and relaxation.
8 Do find a doctor of whom you can ask questions and with whom you feel mutual respect and trust. Insist on being a partner with him or her in your treatment. Ask what side effects you may expect and be prepared for them. Anticipating problems often makes them easier to handle when they occur.
9 Do not keep your worries a secret from the person closest to you. Ask this person to accompany you to visits to the doctor when treatments are to be discussed. Research shows that you often don't hear or absorb information when you are very anxious; a second person will help you to interpret what was said.
10 Do reexplore spiritual and religious beliefs and practices that may have helped you in the past. They may comfort you and even help you find meaning in the experience of illness.
11 Do not abandon your treatment in favor of an alternative method. Discuss the benefits and risks of any alternative treatments brought to your attention with someone you trust who can assess them more objectively.

patients about their emotional state—perhaps because they feel incompetent to explore this area, or they fear opening up a psychological "Pandora's box," or they think that the patient might be offended.

The result is a "don't ask, don't tell" situation in which psychological distress remains hidden—and therefore untreated. This is especially true of sexual problems, which both patient and doctor are often too embarrassed to mention. Yet patients are entitled to help; they can do themselves a favor by overcoming their reticence and raising their concerns with a doctor who fails to bring up the topic. Physicians can then either counsel patients directly or refer them to someone more qualified. Many hospitals now have psychiatrists or psychologists specializing in the care of cancer patients, and those that do not should be prepared to refer patients to appropriate therapists.

Mind-Body Links

There has been enormous interest lately—on the part of both the medical community and the lay public—in the mind's effect on health. This interest has stemmed in part from intriguing findings linking various psychological states to changes in the endocrine and immune systems. Although no one knows yet to what degree such interactions apply to cancer, the findings have nonetheless led some advisers to promulgate rather simplistic psychological schemes for combating cancer.

Many articles, books and counselors exhort patients to "think positively" and to "fight" the illness. Patients have also been encouraged to visualize their immune cells attacking the cancer cells. The physician and philosopher Lewis Thomas, who died of a rare form of cancer last year, once told me that given the complexity of the immune system, he would not know which of his cells to encourage to fight.

Envisioning oneself as a warrior battling the cancer "dragon" can help those who previously faced life's problems that way. For those whose style is less assertive, the fighting model is not constructive. These individuals are often intimidated by their families and others who suggest, incorrectly, that an insufficiently aggressive attitude may hasten death. In truth, no single style of coping on the part of the patient has proved any better than all the others.

Moreover, large, well-controlled studies do not support the widespread belief that emotional factors—whether grief precipitated by a specific trauma or simply a gloomy or anxious predisposition—lead to cancer or accelerate its spread. This unfounded assertion has led some cancer patients to say they have been victimized twice—once by the disease and again by being blamed for somehow bringing the disease down on themselves through some emotional or psychological personality trait.

In a recent study of several hundred women given the same treatments at the same stage of disease, my colleagues and I found no correlation between levels of psychological distress at the beginning of treatment and survival rates 15 years later [*see graph on opposite page*]. Three other extensive studies—of parents who had lost a child, of spouses who had lost a mate and of people suffering chronic depression—similarly found no increase in cancer mortality over a 10-year span.

On the other hand, depression and other mood disorders obviously diminish quality of life. Numerous studies have shown that cancer can be made more bearable by psychological interventions, irrespective of the particular theoretical approaches or whether they involved group therapy or individual sessions. A meta-analysis of 45 controlled studies of a range of psychosocial interventions showed a positive effect on psychological well-being, though not on survival.

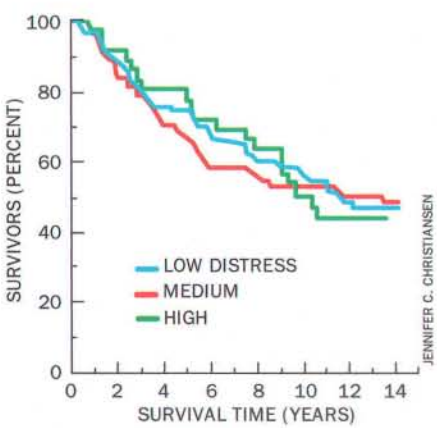
Yet several investigations have shown lower mortality in individuals with sup-

portive social relationships, as compared with those lacking such ties. Two small controlled studies done in 1989 and 1993, one of patients with melanoma (observed just after surgical removal) and one of women with advanced breast cancer, showed a positive effect not only on quality of life but also on length of survival.

Researchers are now trying to replicate these intriguing findings in larger, more tightly controlled studies. In the meantime, investigators have focused on how supportive relationships might improve patients' health. One possibility is that comforting relationships influence the immune or endocrine systems. Another hypothesis is that family members, friends and others may help patients adhere to treatment, switch to a healthier diet and take other steps that prolong life.

Sources of Support

The family is usually the most important source of psychological support for a cancer patient. Having a physician who is knowledgeable, accessible and compassionate is also invaluable.



DISTRESS LEVELS of women treated for early breast cancer show no significant correlation with survival rates in a study by the author and others.

Friends and organizations in the community provide the next level of support, and religious groups and clergy can offer solace as well. Self-help groups and professionally led groups for cancer patients, now common in most communities, help individuals to feel less alone, to share feelings with others who understand and to observe how different people cope with the same problems. Members can also exchange information about treatment, hospitals and other aspects of their care.

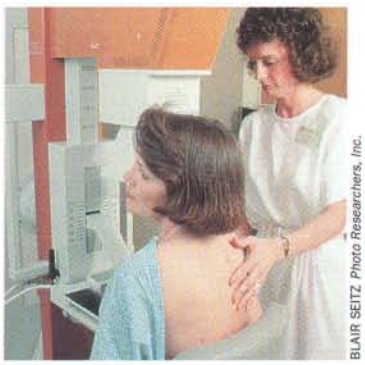
Group therapy is not for everyone. Some people are reluctant to share private feelings or are upset by hearing the problems of others. They may choose individual psychotherapy to deal with illness-related crises. Others may prefer approaches such as relaxation exercises, including meditation, hypnosis or yoga. Learning these techniques can alleviate anxiety, insomnia and pain by reducing muscle tension and promoting a calm, contemplative emotional state.

In advanced stages of cancer, both physical symptoms and psychological distress increase, and the emphasis of caregivers should shift from curative treatments to comfort. Patients may receive this so-called palliative care in hospitals, hospices or at home. At these stages of illness, the patient—and his or her loved ones—is in even greater need of psychological support.

Hard as it may be to believe, not all survivors of cancer view their experience in a negative light. Some have told me, "I know it sounds crazy, but I'm glad I had cancer. The experience changed my life for the better." Confrontation with serious illness leads some people to grow emotionally and thus to attempt to correct long-standing problems or to explore areas of life that they had never had time for previously. For the many others who cannot be so sanguine about their experience, there may still be ways to reduce its devastating psychological impact. The days in which cancer patients had to suffer alone and in silence are over.

The Worried Well

One growing population facing cancer-related psychological challenges are the "worried well," who recognize that their genetic history indicates an increased risk of cancer. Our studies of women at risk for breast cancer found that many were so anxious that they did not take the proper steps for diagnosing the disease early, such as getting regular mammograms (*right*). Others have taken drastic steps, such as having prophylactic mastectomies that were not consonant with their actual risk. The recent development of genetic tests for cancer raises questions about when such tests should be given, how the results should be conveyed to a carrier of a cancer-linked gene and how that person should be counseled thereafter. Public health policies must be carefully crafted to ensure that patients are aided rather than harmed by this emerging technology. —*J.C.H.*


BLAIR SEITZ *Photo Researchers, Inc.*

The Author

JIMMIE C. HOLLAND is chief of the psychiatry service and Wayne E. Chapman Chair of Psychiatric Oncology at the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center in New York City. She is also professor of psychiatry and vice chair of the department of psychiatry at Cornell University Medical College.

Further Reading

HANDBOOK OF PSYCHOONCOLOGY. Edited by Jimmie C. Holland and Julia H. Rowland. Oxford University Press, 1989.

EMOTIONS AND CANCER: WHAT DO WE REALLY KNOW? Jimmie C. Holland and S. Lewis in *Mind Body Medicine: How to Use Your Mind for Better Health.* Edited by Daniel Goleman and Joel Gurin. Consumer Reports Books, 1993.

CHOICES. Second edition. Marion Morra and Eve Potts. Avon Books, 1994.

Alternative Cancer Treatments

Miraculous cures are a myth, but some regimens may well improve the quality of life for patients

by Jean-Jacques Aulas

Conventional therapy for cancer is generally painful and debilitating. Far too often, it is also ineffective or prolongs survival for only a short time. It is not surprising, therefore, that people faced with the prospect of suffering and death are drawn to alternative therapies touted to be more gentle or more effective, or both. Yet whether to choose alternative therapies poses the sharpest of dilemmas for patients, because the unconventional options generally have not been proved effective by standard evaluative procedures and may turn out to be costly, useless or even dangerous—shortening lives rather than extending them.

It is hard to say exactly how many cancer patients turn to alternative medicine. Surveys have come up with numbers between about 15 and 25 percent. Such figures are undoubtedly underestimated; at least 30 percent of patients contacted in the surveys declined interviews. Interestingly, about three quarters of those seeking alternative medicine said they had not informed their physicians, and the vast majority continued to undergo conventional treatment. Malcolm L. Brigden of Metro-McNair Clinical Laboratories in British Columbia has estimated that roughly half of all cancer patients seek such therapy.

French physician Olivier Jallut has documented more than 80 unconventional medical techniques, ranging from acupressure to macrobiotic Zen. These methods can be divided into two major groups: those used for diagnosis and those intended to treat cancers.

None of the alternative diagnostic tools has a rational basis. Many consist of a mixed bag of general laboratory tests and sorcery, and not one has shown the least official value for detecting any form of cancer. I believe these techniques should be banned or that the "institutes" that use them should supply prospective patients with objective information about their effectiveness.

The status of alternative therapies is less clear-cut. Few have been tested in controlled clinical trials—currently the only way of documenting the efficacy and safety of a particular treatment. Laetrile and high-dose vitamin C are among the few that have been tested in this way; neither was found to be more effective than a placebo. Other therapies, such as "antineoplastons" (peptide molecules isolated by the independent cancer researcher Stanislaw R. Burzynski, who asserts that they have a powerful antitumor effect), have been slated for testing, but trials have foundered as conventional and unconventional researchers argue over the proper guidelines for enrolling and treating patients. In short, no alternative treatment has been clearly shown to induce tumor regression or to increase survival.

Many doctors and patients have made claims for so-called complementary ther-

A Look at Some Alternative Treatments

Antineoplastons are peptides (bits of protein) that their discoverer, Stanislaw R. Burzynski of the Burzynski Research Institute in Houston, asserts can slow or reverse tumor growth. The National Cancer Institute (NCI) started a clinical trial of antineoplaston therapy in 1993; the project foundered when Burzynski and NCI investigators disagreed on treatment protocols and criteria for selecting patients.

Gerson therapy, after Max B. Gerson, is based on hourly consumption of crushed fruits and vegetables to correct alleged physiological imbalances. Coffee enemas are given to remove dead cells and toxins, and patients receive nutritional supplements as well. Several independent evaluations of case records have concluded that it has no discernible effectiveness.

Hydrazine sulfate, a compound studied in Leningrad for more than 20 years, may reverse cachexia, the wasting of cancer patients' bodies. Modest improvements in survival (but no remissions) have been documented.

Orthomolecular therapy, originally developed by the late Nobelist Linus Pauling, requires consumption of megadoses of vitamin C in an effort to aid the body's repair systems. NCI-sponsored trials did not demonstrate any superiority to placebos.

Psychological interventions (including Simonton therapy, after O. Carl Simonton, and Bernard S. Siegel's Exceptional Cancer Patients program) use combinations of meditation, visualization, therapy, support groups and other exercises. No definitive studies of their impact on survival have been conducted. Some physicians accept these techniques as adjuncts to conventional cancer therapy because they enhance patients' sense of well-being.

714X is a proprietary injection said to contain compounds that mobilize the immune system against cancer. Samples analyzed by the Food and Drug Administration contained only camphor and water.

SOURCES: Unconventional Cancer Treatments (OTA Report No. OTA-H-405, 1990), Boston University Medical Center alternative cancer treatment Web site: http://web.bu.edu/COHIS/cancer/about/alttx/about.htm

apies—that is, nutritional and psychological treatments that patients undergo in conjunction with conventional treatments. Even if a cancer is not cured, they assert, patients' quality of life may be improved and survival prolonged. It is difficult to conduct randomized trials of psychological interventions or large-scale changes in life patterns, so there are as yet no definitive data that demonstrate advantages in either quality of life or survival. Some preliminary studies have reported that breast cancer patients receiving psychotherapy or enrolled in support groups survived roughly a year longer than those who had no such aids; quality of life was also apparently enhanced. Similar, potentially encouraging results have come from early investigations of dietary regimens that concentrate on reducing or eliminating meat intake and consuming large quantities of fresh vegetables in an attempt to bolster the body's response to cancer.

Mainstream epidemiologic studies have demonstrated correlations between proper nutrition and mortality as well as between social and psychological well-being and health. It would therefore not be surprising if such factors should affect the survival of cancer patients. Yet not all therapies are benign. For example, some macrobiotic diets are deficient enough in nutrients that they have clearly visible adverse effects on frail patients.

Making Decisions

Although no alternative treatment for cancer has a definite influence on the course of the disease, there are nonetheless situations in which complementary methods may be helpful. Indeed, many physicians recommend psychosocial and nutritional interventions. I see no reason to avoid such options, including acupuncture, homeopathy and trace-element supplementation.

If conventional treatments have been exhausted, unconventional ones may increase patients' sense of control and well-being even if they do not lengthen survival. Furthermore, even during the course of a serious disease the placebo effect—essentially a patient's belief in the efficacy of treatment—can relieve pain, anxiety and other functional disorders that accompany cancer. As a result, some patients attracted to these treatments may benefit in some way.

The chosen method must be absolutely safe, however, and it must not replace conventional treatments that have documented efficacy. Cancer is a highly variable disease, and some forms are in fact curable. It would be a tragedy if patients with juvenile leukemia or Hodgkin's lymphoma died because they had picked an alternative medication over a well-tested conventional therapy.

How to Evaluate Alternative Therapies for Cancer

Ideally, prospective patients would be able to tell whether an alternative cancer treatment was likely to help them by looking at the results of randomized clinical trials carried out on people with their particular malignancy. But most unconventional therapies have not been studied in such careful detail.

In 1992 the National Cancer Institute set up a program to evaluate alternative medicines. Its guidelines for patients are heavily weighted toward conventional oncology, but they offer a useful starting point. If the answer is "yes" to any but the first of the following questions, the NCI says, prospective patients should be on their guard:

- Has the treatment been evaluated in clinical trials?
- Do the practitioners of an approach claim that the medical community is trying to keep their cure from the public?
- Does the treatment rely on nutritional or diet therapy as its main focus?
- Do those who endorse the treatment claim that it is harmless and painless and that it produces no unpleasant side effects?
- Does the treatment have a "secret formula" that only a small group of practitioners can use?

Another important step in assessing the possible value of unconventional therapy is making sure that cancer is present in the first place. Doctors reviewing the medical records of patients ostensibly cured by alternative treatments have in some cases been unable to find any solid evidence (such as examination of cells removed in a biopsy) that malignancies had ever existed.

If abnormal cells are present, it is crucial to determine their potential for malignancy and the likely prognosis. Patients whose cancers are treatable by surgery, radiation or chemotherapy should not pursue alternative treatments first.

Many patients undertake alternative courses of treatment in conjunction with mainstream medical care, so it appears that the other options may answer a different need than those addressed by traditional oncology. Studies of some psychological interventions (ranging from support groups to psychotherapy to "visualization") have suggested that patients may experience better quality of life even if their survival time is not definitively increased. Only patients and their families can decide precisely what they want from a particular course of treatment—conventional or alternative. —*J.-J.A.*

The Author

JEAN-JACQUES AULAS has studied the claims of alternative medicine for more than 10 years. He is a psychiatrist and pharmacologist at the Clinical Unit of Biological Psychiatry in CHS "Le Vinatier" de Lyon-Bron and associate editor of *Revue Prescrire*, an independent French monthly medical publication.

Further Reading

UNCONVENTIONAL CANCER TREATMENTS. U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment. OTA-H-405. U.S. Government Printing Office, 1990.

QUESTIONABLE METHODS OF CANCER MANAGEMENT: "NUTRITIONAL" THERAPIES. American Cancer Society in *CA Cancer Journal for Clinicians*, Vol. 43, No. 5, pages 309–319; September–October 1993.

UNPROVEN (QUESTIONABLE) CANCER THERAPIES. Malcolm L. Brigden in *Western Journal of Medicine*, Vol. 163, No. 5, pages 463–469; November 1995.

Controlling the Pain of Cancer

Despite enormous advances in treating pain, many cancer patients still suffer needlessly. Some simple practices can make a difference

by Kathleen M. Foley

Pain is one of the most feared consequences of cancer—and with good reason. Studies in the U.S. have shown that at least one third of all cancer patients undergoing chemotherapy or other antitumor treatments and two thirds of those with advanced cancer suffer significant discomfort. Providing relief is vital not only as an end in itself but also to improve the patient's prospects for survival. Pain can erode a patient's willingness to continue treatment, even to live.

Decades of research and clinical experience have yielded a wide variety of methods for diagnosing and managing the various types of cancer-related pain. Drugs can now be delivered not just orally and intravenously but also through suppositories, skin patches, bedside pumps, implanted pumps and topical creams. Researchers have reached a better understanding of why tumors that have invaded bones or the nervous system generate so much pain, and they have tailored treatments to each process.

Physicians have improved their ability to measure levels of painkilling medications in body fluids and to correlate these levels with patients' reported sense of relief. They have also devised drug-delivery protocols designed to stop pain before it starts. All these advances serve to maximize relief while minimizing drug side effects, such as grogginess, constipation and nausea.

Moreover, investigators have come to understand how a person's state of mind—and perception of his or her own condition—can affect the experience of pain. For example, those who have undergone surgery with a high likelihood of eliminating the disease may regard their acute but transitory pain as more bearable than do patients with chronic pain from more advanced disease. Depression can also exacerbate perception of pain. Prescribing antidepressants can thus alleviate both psychological and physical discomfort.

Clinicians have found innovative ways to help patients describe accurately the ebb and flow of both physical pain and psychological distress. For example, very young children and others who have trouble communicating verbally can indicate their level of distress by pointing to one in a series of cartoon faces whose expressions range from no pain to agonizing pain.

Although some types of pain resist treatment, studies indicate that as many as 95 percent of cancer patients can get relief if properly medicated. Tragically, many continue to suffer needlessly. A 1994 study found that 42 percent of a group of cancer patients received inadequate pain treatment. The elderly, less educated and those with lower incomes were most likely to have been undermedicated. A 1993 survey of 1,177 American physicians found that 85 percent, who had cared for more than 70,000 people with cancer during the previous six months, provided inadequate relief for the majority of those in pain.

What accounts for the astonishing gap between the degree of relief that is possible and the suffering that still persists in reality? Sadly, the effort to improve the management of pain has been enor-

Painkillers for Cancer

Drugs	Benefits	Side Effects*
Nonopioids Acetaminophen, aspirin, ibuprofen	Can control mild to moderate pain; some versions can be bought without prescription	Can cause slow blood clotting and upset stomach, bleeding in the stomach and kidney problems
Opioids Morphine, hydromorphone, oxycodone, codeine, fentanyl, methadone	Can control moderate to severe pain without bleeding	Can cause constipation, sleepiness, nausea and vomiting, itchiness and urinary problems; may also slow breathing when first taken
Antidepressants Amitriptyline, imipramine	Can help control tingling or burning pain from nerve injury; may improve sleep	Can cause dry mouth, sleepiness, constipation and dizziness on standing up suddenly
Anticonvulsants Carbamazepine, phenytoin	Can help control tingling or burning from nerve injury	Can affect liver and blood cell function
Steroids Prednisone, dexamethasone	Can help relieve bone pain and pain caused by spinal cord and brain tumors	May cause confusion, fluid buildup, bleeding and irritation in stomach

*Usually can be minimized

SOURCE: National Cancer Institute

JOHNNY JOHNSON

mously complicated by the so-called war on drugs. The years of antidrug campaigns have left both the public and health care professionals with greatly exaggerated fears about the risks of opioids, which are still the most effective known painkillers.

Many studies have shown that the medical use of analgesic drugs is safe and does not cause psychological addiction in those who had not previously shown such tendencies. Even when patients can administer the drug themselves with bedside pumps, they rarely deliver more than they need to suppress their pain. Those who receive such drugs may become physically dependent—that is, the drug must be withdrawn slowly to prevent symptoms of withdrawal. This state is very different, however, from true addiction, which is characterized by constant craving and compulsive drug-seeking behavior.

Poor communication between physicians and patients is another major obstacle to assessment and treatment of pain. Too often physicians attribute a complaint about pain to psychological factors. Patients' attitudes compound the problem. Like physicians, many patients have exaggerated fears of the risks of painkillers, and they often believe that "good" patients should not complain.

Recent studies of medical students, physicians, nurses and state medical boards have also demonstrated a significant lack of theoretical and practical knowledge about analgesic drug therapy for cancer pain. These deficiencies reflect not caregivers' lack of compassion but rather flaws in the health care education and delivery systems. Obviously, knowledge about managing pain needs to be better integrated into medical education at all levels.

But communication and education are not enough. Hospitals and other medical institutions must integrate pain management into routine practice. One step is to make physicians and nurses accountable for relieving patients' pain. The threat of legal sanctions may provide extra motivation; ethicists have argued that excessive pain, resulting from substandard treatment, constitutes medical negligence. Patients and family members must also learn how to talk to doctors about pain and to insist on treatment. Reading the publications listed at the end of this article may help.

Research has shown that having even one recognized pain expert serving as a role model in a hospital or other institution can help transform knowledge into practice. Another important step, advocated by the American Pain Society, is called "making pain visible." This approach calls for recording pain intensity on a patient's vital-sign sheet as a routine practice. Pain is much more likely to be treated if it is consistently measured and recorded.

Fortunately, the need for better pain control is beginning to be recognized in the U.S. and internationally. The American Pain Society, the American Society of Clinical Oncology and the Oncology Nursing Society have all issued guidelines for the treatment of cancer pain, as well as pain management curricula for medical schools. Almost every state has an initiative to increase awareness about cancer pain among both caregivers and the public. At the federal level, the National Cancer Institute, the American Cancer Society and the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research have all supported efforts to improve pain treatment for cancer. The World Health Organization has created the Cancer Pain Relief Program, the goal of which is summarized by the slogan "Freedom from Cancer Pain." It is an attainable—and morally imperative—goal.

DARTMOUTH-HITCHCOCK MEDICAL CENTER

Getting Doctors to Listen

Recently a group at the Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center created an interactive videodisk to teach medical professionals how to provide pain relief—and to motivate them to do so. The disk, not yet available, makes its case in part with a moving testimonial by Claudia Graves, a 42-year-old woman with recurrent breast cancer.

Graves said the pain caused by both her cancer and her treatments gradually worsened during the course of the illness, affecting her relationships with her friends and four children. Her doctors, while aware that she was in pain, seemed not to understand how it was affecting her. One day when she went to the hospital for radiation treatment "there was another doctor I hadn't seen before, and I was really able to explain the pain to him."

The physician arranged an appointment with a neurologist, who suggested that Graves try morphine. She had feared that she would become addicted or seem "drugged" or that she would lose her ability to think clearly. But the drug eased her pain without these side effects. "I'm not foggy-headed. I can think and enjoy my children and my relationships with friends."

The most important lesson she learned is that patients or family members must "really insist that the medical team stop and listen," Graves said. "Any cancer patient deserves a doctor who will listen, who treats the patient as part of the team." —*K.M.F.*

The Author

KATHLEEN M. FOLEY has dedicated her career to treating pain. She is chief of the Pain Service in the department of neurology at Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center in New York City as well as professor of neurology, neuroscience and clinical pharmacology at the Cornell University Medical College. Foley is director of the Open Society Institute's Project on Death in America and of the World Health Organization's Collaborating Center for Cancer Pain Research and Education.

Further Reading

THE TRAGEDY OF NEEDLESS PAIN. Ronald Melzack in *Scientific American*, Vol. 262, No. 2, pages 19–25; February 1990.

CURRENT AND EMERGING ISSUES IN CANCER PAIN: RESEARCH AND PRACTICE. Edited by C. R. Chapman and K. M. Foley. Raven Press, 1993.

MANAGEMENT OF CANCER PAIN: ADULTS. AHCPR Publication No. 94-0593. Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, March 1994.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS ABOUT PAIN CONTROL. NIH publication No. 95-3264. National Cancer Institute, 1995.

What Are Obstacles to Ideal Care?

Shari R. Kahane was suckling her second child when she first felt an ominous twinge in her breast. Her gynecologist ascribed the abnormal pain to a nursing infection, a common cause. Kahane, a 43-year-old emergency room physician in Calabasas, Calif., was skeptical. But when she saw two other doctors, they agreed; in their palpations and mammograms, neither physician detected anything unusual. "So I believed what they told me," Kahane says.

Her trust was dangerously misplaced, for all three doctors missed a cancer that had taken root in her chest and was spreading. Misdiagnoses were only the start of her ordeal; in Kahane's subsequent struggle to get a lifesaving experimental treatment, she also had to overcome the ignorance of some charged with her care and the bureaucracy and costs of cutting-edge medicine. These obstacles, many oncologists and patient advocates report, often stymie those who are less educated, persistent and lucky than Kahane. As a result, the quality of cancer care can vary dramatically from patient to patient.

Kahane's pain subsided, but nagging doubts returned. One night, after seeing a knowledgeable gynecologist on a PBS television special, Kahane decided to track her down. "She agreed to examine me—and she found a cyst," Kahane recalls. Although a biopsy taken through a needle found no malignancy, Kahane's radiologist insisted the lump be removed anyway. During her surgery, the hospital lab issued a clear report: no cancer. Relieved, Kahane went home, only to learn days later that the lab had made a mistake. She sought a second surgeon, who reopened her chest and discovered cancer not only in her breast but also in 11 lymph nodes.

"We don't really know how often misdiagnosis occurs, but doctors and cancer patients are very concerned," states Allen S. Lichter, who chairs the public issues committee for the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO). Part of the worry, he says, focuses on health maintenance organizations (HMOs), where physicians can refuse to refer patients to specialists. "We are pushing the idea of report cards on HMOs' cancer care that will measure the average stage [of disease] at diagnosis and the delay before seeing a specialist."

Of course, specialists are only as helpful as they are knowledgeable. Cancer treatments evolve quickly; some physicians fall behind. Kahane says her first surgeon—chief of surgery at a large Los Angeles hospital—told her she had no chance of survival: standard chemotherapy would buy her only a few more months. Although Kahane knew such bleak prognoses are often correct, she remained unconvinced. Digging through journals, she found reports on a relatively new treatment, combining high-dose chemotherapy with stem cell transplants, that in one trial had more than doubled the number of patients surviving for three years. Not until Kahane reached her fourth specialist did she find someone who knew about the therapy and would help her get into a trial.

> Many patients do not know that being in a clinical trial is an option.

Many patients do not even know that being in a clinical trial is an option, which is one reason why only 2 to 3 percent of cancer patients in the U.S. participate in clinical studies. "It takes us several years to fill a study, when it should take half or a third of that time," Lichter says. "If we could get 10 percent of cancer patients involved, we could answer more questions and answer them much faster."

But many oncologists complain that insurance companies, especially managed care plans such as HMOs, are trying to cut costs by refusing to reimburse for unproved therapies, clinical trials and even new drugs. In a 1993 survey 856 oncologists reported that more than 3,300 of their patients were kept out of trials because their insurers refused to pay. That is a shame, Lichter says, because although experimental treatments involve unknown risks, "data suggest that patients who participate in clinical trials can have better—sometimes significantly better—outcomes than those who get standard therapy."

Patients may never know what they are missing. "HMOs in most states can have gag rules that prohibit physicians from telling patients about any treatment options that are not covered," Kahane points out.

"It is shortsighted to deny benefits [for experimental therapies]," argues Joseph S. Bailes, who chairs the ASCO's clinical practice committee. "Most advances in oncology come in the form of new drugs, so progress depends on clinical trials." Even more worrisome, he says, is that an increasing number—already more than a third—of insurance plans are refusing to add newly approved cancer drugs to the list of those they cover.

Since March, when the Food and Drug Administration announced that it was lowering its efficacy standards for cancer drugs and clearing the backlog of those awaiting approval, several new agents have made it to market. Yet more than half the medicines used to treat cancer are prescribed "off-label"—that is, to treat a condition for which they have not been approved. The growth factors Kahane needed to support her regenerating bone marrow, for example, were then unapproved for breast cancer. Now they are used off-label to treat ovarian cancer.

Medicare, which covers more than half of all cancer patients, began covering most off-label prescriptions in 1994, but Bailes says fewer than 12 states have laws requiring private insurers to do the same. Several bills now before Congress would rectify that and would allow drug companies to distribute peer-reviewed studies of unapproved uses for their products.

Thanks to Kahane's skepticism, perseverance and good fortune, she is healthy—30 months after her diagnosis. "I recently ran into that chief surgeon at the gym," she recounts. "When he saw me running four miles on the treadmill, his teeth nearly hit the floor. You know, he still didn't know about stem cell therapy. If I'd listened to him, I'd probably be dead now," she says, before dashing off to pick up her children.

—W. Wayt Gibbs, staff writer

ROBERTO OSTI

Finding More Information

Fortunately, access to incisive knowledge about cancer and its treatment is easier to obtain than ever before. The catch is knowing what information can be trusted. This problem is particularly acute on the Internet, where only a fraction of what is on-line is true, accurate, reliable and up-to-date.

The following resources serve as a good starting point for beginning a search for more information. When using the World Wide Web, remember that interlinked sites are not always equally trustworthy. Patients should discuss the information they find with their health care providers. —*The Editors*

Resources available by telephone and on-line

American Cancer Society
1599 Clifton Road NE, Atlanta, GA 30329
by phone: 800-227-2345. Outside the U.S., call 404-320-3333
via the Web: http://www.cancer.org/

The Web site has abundant and authoritative information about the treatment, prevention and detection of cancer. Patients and their families can also learn about a range of other services available to them, including financial assistance, household help, job rehabilitation, dietary advice and hospice services.

CancerGuide: Steve Dunn's Cancer Information Page
via the Web: http://www.cancerguide.org/

Dunn, a cancer survivor, maintains this remarkably helpful page, which offers links to other good resources, as well as advice about how to make the best use of that information.

Cancer Information Service
National Cancer Institute (NCI)
Office of Cancer Communications
31 Center Drive, Building 31, Room 10A07, Bethesda, MD 20892
by phone: 800-4-CANCER (800-422-6237)

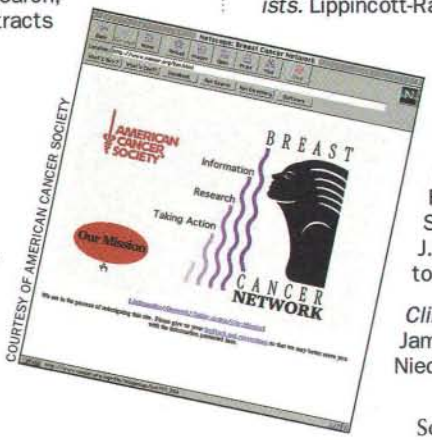
This phone service provides extensive information on treatment options, screening, prevention, supportive care, clinical trials, newly approved anticancer drugs and many drugs under investigation, as well as directories of physicians and care organizations. It draws on excellent resources, including the computerized Physician Data Query (PDQ) database compiled by the NCI's International Cancer Information Center. The content of the PDQ is peer-reviewed regularly by boards of cancer experts and is updated monthly.

CancerNet/CancerLit
National Cancer Institute
by fax-on-demand: 301-402-5874 (call first using the handset of your fax machine, then follow the instructions)
by e-mail: cancernet@icicc.nci.nih.gov (place the word "help" in the body of the message for a reply containing a table of contents and further instructions)
via the Web: CancerNet—http://wwwicic.nci.nih.gov/
CancerLit—http://wwwicic.nci.nih.gov/canlit/canlit.htm

The data in CancerNet, which includes the PDQ database, are conveniently sorted for access by the general public, health care providers and researchers, so users may choose the level most appropriate for them. The page for CancerLit, the NCI's bibliographic database of published research, has compilations of select citations and abstracts on various cancer topics.

CANSearch: A Guide to Cancer Resources on the Internet
National Coalition for Cancer Survivorship
1010 Wayne Avenue, Suite 505
Silver Spring, MD 20910
by phone: 301-650-8868
by fax: 301-565-9670
via the Web: http://www.access.digex.net/~mkragen/cansearch.html

The CANSearch site helps to guide patients and their families to reliable sources of information on-line.



COURTESY OF AMERICAN CANCER SOCIETY

The National Alliance of Breast Cancer Organizations (NABCO)
9 East 37th Street, 10th Floor, New York, NY 10016
by phone: 800-719-9154
via the Web: http://www.nabco.org/

The Alliance is a coalition of more than 370 organizations across the U.S. that offer detection services, treatment and care to breast cancer patients. NABCO also provides information about clinical trials and breast cancer support groups.

OncoLink: The University of Pennsylvania Cancer Center Resource
via the Web: http://cancer.med.upenn.edu/

This well-organized, comprehensive site can be of use to both patients and medical professionals seeking information.

The Prostate Cancer InfoLink
via the Web: http://www.comed.com/prostate/

This resource is a good place to turn for information about prostate cancer screening, diagnosis, treatment and support.

The Skin Cancer Foundation
P.O. Box 561, New York, NY 10156
by phone: 800-SKIN-490 (800-754-6490)

The Foundation offers numerous brochures, books and newsletters on skin cancer.

TeleSCAN: Telematics Services in Cancer
via the Web: http://telescan.nki.nl/

This Europe-based site offers a variety of information services to the general public, physicians and researchers, including bulletin boards where patients can converse and lists of clinical trials in Europe.

Books and Periodicals

Although textbooks and technical journals are aimed at physicians and researchers rather than general readers, some patients still like to consult these sources. The following items can be found in many medical, university or hospital libraries. Keep in mind that journals often present results from early trials; these findings cannot be applied readily or reliably to patients in general.

Periodicals:

Cancer (American Cancer Society). John Wiley & Sons.

The Cancer Journal from Scientific American.

The Journal of Clinical Oncology: Official Journal of the American Society of Clinical Oncology. W. B. Saunders.

Oncology Times: The Independent Newspaper for Cancer Specialists. Lippincott-Raven.

Textbooks:

American Cancer Society Textbook of Clinical Oncology. Second edition. American Cancer Society, 1995.

Cancer: Principles and Practice of Oncology. Fourth edition. Edited by Vincent T. DeVita, Jr., Samuel Hellman and Steven A. Rosenberg. J. B. Lippincott, 1993. (Fifth edition scheduled to be released in December 1996.)

Clinical Oncology. Edited by Martin A. Abeloff, James O. Armitage, Allen S. Lichter and John E. Niederhuber. Churchill Livingstone, 1995.

THE AMATEUR SCIENTIST

by Shawn Carlson

The Pleasures of Exploring Ponds

Of all the students in Mrs. Nickle's first-grade class, none had a more refined appreciation of pollywogs than I. Our teacher kept the school aquarium full of local pond life, and the class delighted in observing the steady metamorphosis of tadpoles to frogs. As the official pollywog monitor (a job I begged for and got, much to my mother's horror), I was responsible for replacing the amphibians that made the leap. I still remember those sunny spring afternoons when, sporting my oversized safari hat and carting a satchel brimming over with empty mayonnaise jars, I trekked to our nearby pond intent on bagging a "gazillion" tadpoles.

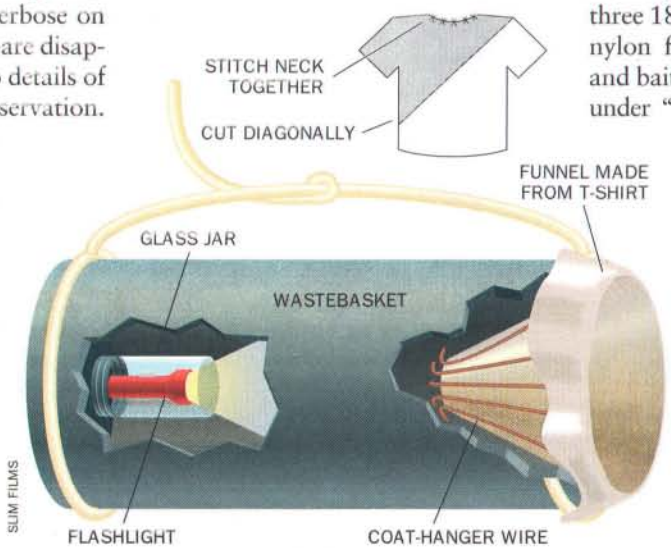
For me, and I suspect for most amateur naturalists, ponds remain a treasure trove of wonders. There are four spheres of life around a country pond: the water itself, the mud beneath the water, the air above it and the soil around it. A myriad of creatures have evolved to exploit these special habitats. Water snails stealthily patrol the bottom. Toads hunt insects and their own smaller brethren in nightly melees along the banks. Dragonflies skim the surface to deposit their payloads of eggs. If you're lucky, you'll spy minnows, newts and diving beetles taking refuge among the aquatic plants.

Most nature books wax verbose on the habits of local species but are disappointingly terse in the how-to details of specimen collection and preservation. The shining exception to this gloomy rule is Gerald Durrell's marvelous practical guide, *The Amateur Naturalist* (David McKay Company, Random House, 1989, $25, ISBN 0-679-72837-6). This book once so invigorated my excitement for ecology that I almost abandoned my graduate studies in physics to become a professional naturalist. Most collection methods I've developed, including those described here, are merely refinements on techniques I first learned in the pages of *The Amateur Naturalist*. Armed with these methods and a good field guide, an ambitious amateur can delight in and advance the study of pond ecology.

(City dwellers, take heart. Although not as diverse as the perennial country pond, any standing pool of water will, if left alone for a month, become home to a surprising number of living things, such as algae and water insects. Natural streams from heavy rains often bubble up in the heart of urban sprawl, and pools along storm drains are regularly replenished with runoff. Perhaps you can let a wading pool go native. And there are almost certainly ponds, lakes and reservoirs within an easy drive.)

Like moths to flame, some inhabitants of the murky depths are attracted to light. You can catch many of these critters using the light-baited trap shown below. A flashlight is safely housed inside a sealed glass jar and placed within a simple trap. The funnel opening guides creatures in. Once inside, they have little chance of finding their way out again.

I've used wastebaskets and large-diameter aluminum pipes for the trap's main chamber. You can fashion the funnel out of an old white T-shirt and coat-hanger wire. Situate the flashlight to illuminate the cloth opening. Put the trap in the pond before sunset and hoist it up later that evening to examine your catch.



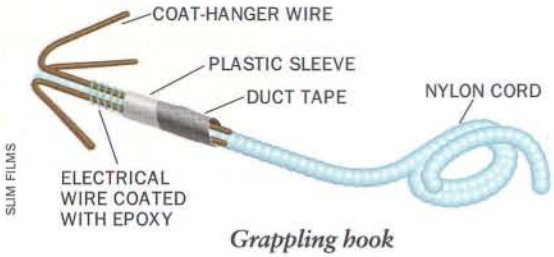
Light-baited trap

As a variation, try building a circuit that flashes the light. Plans appear in *Getting Started in Electronics*, by Forrest M. Mims III (Radio Shack, $4.99). I've always wanted to build such a circuit to see which species come calling when lured by a pulsating invitation, but I haven't managed to get to it. You can also experiment with different pulse frequencies. Let me know what you find.

A homemade grappling hook is invaluable for snagging aquatic plants. The tines can be fashioned from coat-hanger wire. Use insulated electrical wire to lash the tines to the end of some nylon cord. Next, saturate the electrical-wire wrappings with a generous layer of epoxy and let it set. Wrap the assembly with duct tape and slide a narrow piece of plastic pipe over it for protection. Finally, seal out debris by filling the pipe with epoxy. Deploy the grapple by swinging it around your head and letting it fly into a shallow of water plants. Then pull the plants toward you. You might also find some interesting guests on the fronds and stems.

To examine bottom-dwelling life, you'll need a dredge net. Purchase 54 inches of three-quarter-inch diameter plastic polyvinyl chloride (PVC) pipe from a plumbing supplier and cut it into three 18-inch lengths. Next, you'll need nylon fishnetting. Some fabric stores and bait-and-tackle shops carry it (look under "Netting" in the Yellow Pages). The size of the mesh is not critical. I buy three-quarter-inch web (diamond-shaped netting) for 32 cents per square foot. It comes in bolts 20 feet wide by 300 feet long, although you will need only a 60- by 60-inch square. Retailers are usually happy to trim it. From the square, cut out an equilateral triangle 60 inches to each side.

Using an old paintbrush, liberally coat one of the PVC pipes with one-hour epoxy.



Grappling hook

Place the pipe at one base of the triangular netting and carefully draw in the netting along both sides, leaving clear one inch of pipe at either end. Roll the netting around the pipe twice. Stitch the netting in place with a couple of twist ties so the pipe won't unroll. Then hang the pipe over some old newspapers and pour on more of the one-hour epoxy, thoroughly covering the pipe.

Split lengthwise three 14-inch sections of garden hose. These protect the net while it is being dragged. Slip one of the split lengths of hose over the pipe. Hose clamps will clasp the assembly tight while the epoxy sets, but they are a pain to attach. I prefer to smother the assembly under plastic trash bags filled with sand. Repeat the same procedure with the two other pipes, rolling them up on the other sides of the triangular net. You will end up with a dredge net about 28 inches deep and 18 inches to a side. Next, fill one of the pipes with sand and cap the ends with cotton wadding soaked in epoxy. This weighted side drags along the bottom.

Now you need to link the pipes together to form a rigid frame. From a plumbing supply store, purchase a short length of one-half-inch flexible (L soft) copper tubing and six unthreaded bell reducers. They are fittings that join two different size pipes—in this case, they should connect three-quarter-inch pipe to one-half-inch pipe. Cut a two-and-a-half-inch section off the copper tubing and thread two bell reducers over the ends of the cut piece so the fittings are separated by about a half inch. Epoxy the bell reducers into place with low-viscosity aluminized epoxy—available from Devcon in Danvers, Mass.; call (508) 777-1100 for the nearest distributor. Before gluing, be sure to roughen the ends of the tube and the inside surfaces of the bell reducers with coarse sandpaper.

Once secured, bend the tubing to form a 60-degree angle. You can make the bent tube rigid by filling it completely with epoxy and letting it set. Use a knife to score the ends of two adjacent sections of pipe and epoxy the bell reducers over the ends (again, use aluminized epoxy). Repeat the entire procedure twice to finish the rest of the frame. Paint the copper tubings to prevent corrosion.

The dragline completes the assembly. Tie eight inches of nylon cord to each point where a bell reducer meets a PVC pipe, then tie the opposite ends to form three pairs. Melt these ends together with a soldering iron. Tie these three points with nylon cord so they come together about two and a half feet in front of the assembly. Finally, tie this point off to at least 100 feet of nylon line. Make sure to adjust the cords so that the opening of the net tips backward about 10 degrees when dragged.

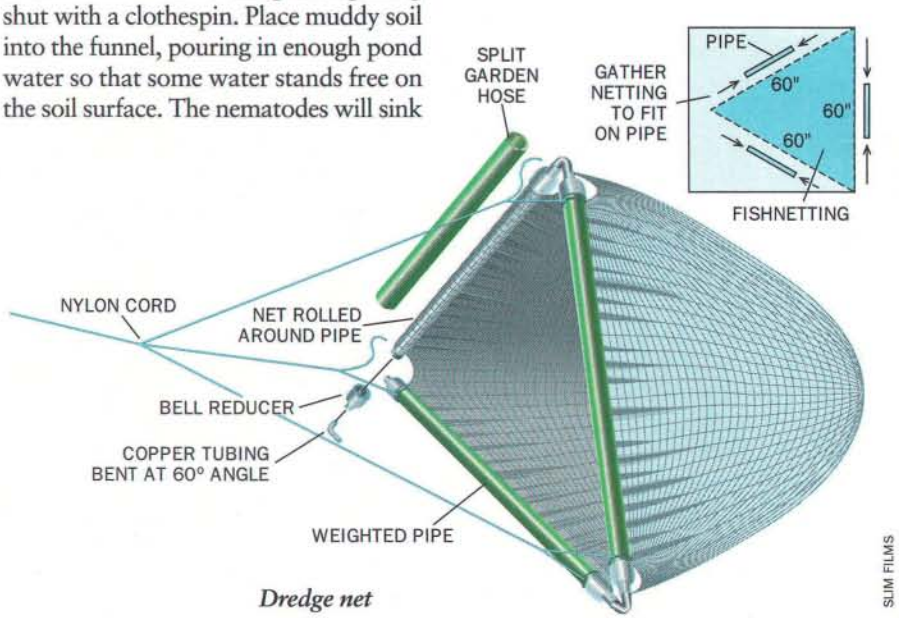
The soil around a pond is host to millions of tiny roundworms called nematodes. Only about one millimeter long, these nearly microscopic organisms are second only to protozoans as the most abundant creatures on the earth. A cubic meter of soil can harbor 12 million of them. A vital part of pond ecology, they can be especially interesting to study. Just make sure you observe strict sanitary practices—ingested, a few species are parasitic. Wear rubber gloves and wash thoroughly after field trips.

To collect nematodes, slip a small piece of rubber surgical tubing over the end of a funnel and clamp the opening shut with a clothespin. Place muddy soil into the funnel, pouring in enough pond water so that some water stands free on the soil surface. The nematodes will sink into the funnel's neck. Wait five minutes before disgorging your booty into a container with a few gentle shakes and a momentary release of the clothespin.

A similar technique enables you to collect insects from most soils. Carpet the bottom of a glass jar with blotting paper. Insert a funnel, neck downward, into the jar's mouth and loosely fill the funnel with collected soil. Place a bright, incandescent desk lamp directly over the soil. To escape the light and heat, the insects will tunnel deeper into the soil until they fall onto the blotting paper. Try conducting an insect and nematode census around a pond at different times of the year.

There are a few rules that all naturalists must follow. Never enter private property without permission. Never disturb protected or endangered marshlands. Never collect specimens in excess of your immediate needs. Clear your activities with whatever authority may be responsible for the area. If you study more than one pond, wash your equipment thoroughly with soap and water to prevent transplanting microscopic organisms. Remember, violating these rules will not only make things hard on you. Landowners and park authorities may begin forbidding access to all amateur naturalists, even those whose only wish is to study the ecology responsibly.

For more information about amateur science projects, check the Society for Amateur Scientists' World Wide Web site at http://www.thesphere.com/SAS/



Dredge net

by Ian Stewart

The Interrogator's Fallacy

Mathematics is invading the courtroom. Juries are routinely instructed to convict the accused of a crime provided they are sure "beyond a reasonable doubt" of guilt. This instruction is qualitative—it depends on what a juror considers to be reasonable. A future civilization might attempt to quantify guilt by replacing the jury with a court computer that weighs the evidence and calculates a probability of guilt. But today we do not have court computers, so juries are forced to grapple with probability theory.

One reason is the increasing use of DNA evidence. The science of DNA profiling is relatively new, so the interpretation of DNA evidence relies on assessing probabilities. Similar problems could have arisen when conventional fingerprinting was first introduced, but lawyers were presumably less sophisticated in those days; at any rate, fingerprint evidence is no longer contested on probabilistic grounds.

Robert A. J. Matthews, whose work on the "anthropomurphic principle" was featured in this column in December 1995, has pointed out that a far more traditional source of evidence in court cases ought to be analyzed using probability theory—namely, confessions. To Tomás de Torquemada, the first Spanish grand inquisitor, a confession was complete proof of guilt—even if the confession was extracted under duress, as it generally was. One of Matthews's most surprising conclusions, which he calls the "interrogator's fallacy," is that there are circumstances under which a confession adds weight to the view that the accused is innocent rather than guilty.

Matthews's ideas offer a reason for distrusting confessions in trials of terrorists—who are fortified against interrogation—unless corroborated by other evidence. Modern legal practice is quite skeptical about confessions known to have been obtained under duress. In the U.K. a series of high-profile terrorism convictions, hinging on confessional evidence, have been overturned because of doubts that the confessions were genuine.

The main mathematical idea required to explain Matthews's conclusion is that of conditional probability. Suppose Mr. and Mrs. Smith tell you they have two children, one of whom is a girl. What is the probability that the other is a girl?

The reflex response is that the other child is either a boy or a girl, with a probability of 1/2 for either. There are, however, four possible gender distributions: BB, BG, GB and GG, where B and G denote "boy" and "girl," respectively, and the letters are arranged in order of birth. Each combination is equally likely and so has a probability of 1/4. In exactly three cases, BG, GB and GG, the family includes a girl; in just one of this group, GG, the other child is also a girl. So the probability of two girls, given that there is at least one girl, is actually 1/3.

Suppose that instead the Smiths tell you that their eldest child is a girl. What is the probability that the youngest is a girl, too? This time the possible gender distributions are GB and GG, and the youngest is a girl only for GG. So the probability becomes 1/2.

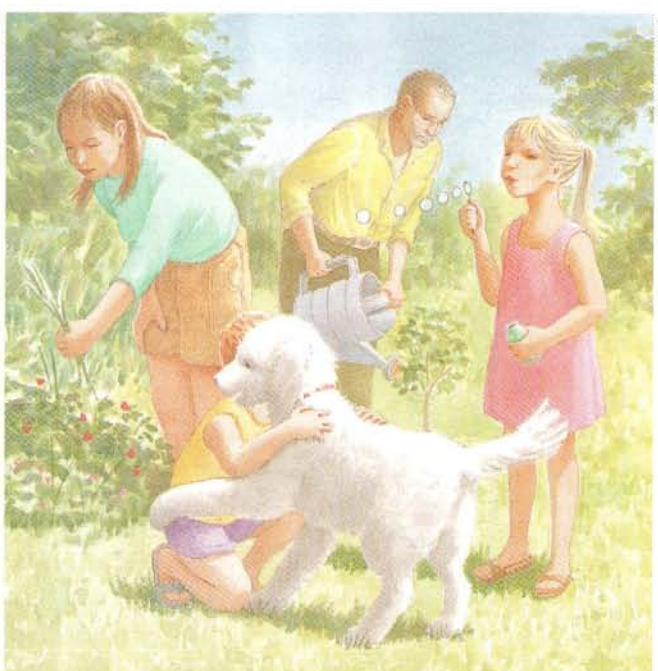
Probabilities of this type are said to be conditional, the probability of some event occurring given that some other event has definitely occurred. As the Smiths' children show, the use of conditional probabilities involves specifying a context—which can have a strong effect on the computed probability.

To see how subtle such issues are, suppose that one day you see the Smiths in their garden. One child is clearly a girl; the other is partially hidden by the family dog, so its gender is uncertain. What is the probability that the Smiths have two girls?

You could argue that the question is just like the first scenario above, giving a probability of 1/3. Or you could argue that the information presented to you is "the child not playing with the dog is a girl." Like the second scenario, this statement distinguishes one child from the other, so the answer is 1/2. Mr. and Mrs. Smith, who know that the child playing with the dog is William, would say that the probability of two girls is 0. So who is right?

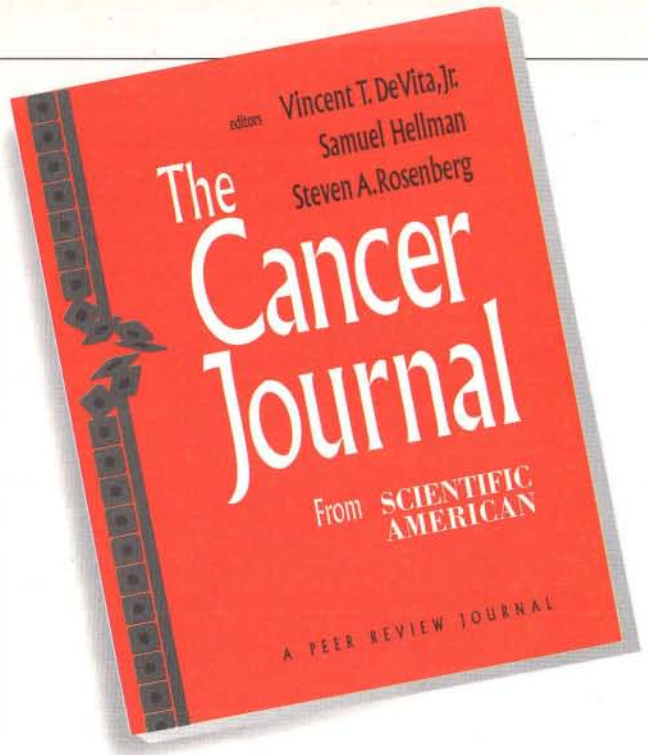
The answer depends on a choice of context. Have you sampled randomly from situations in which there are many different families in which either child plays with the dog? Or from families in which only one child ever plays with the dog? Or are you looking only at a specific family, in which case probabilities are the wrong model altogether?

The interpretation of statistical data requires an understanding of the mathematics of probability and the context



SUSAN BONNER

THE SMITH FAMILY
What is the probability that the kneeling child is a girl?



A Dynamic, Peer-Reviewed Journal In Oncology

For Health Professionals

Edited by **Vincent T. DeVita, Jr., M.D.,** *Director, Yale Cancer Center, Professor of Medicine, Yale University School of Medicine;* **Samuel Hellman, M.D.,** *A.N. Pritzker Distinguished Service Professor, Department of Radiation and Cellular Oncology, University of Chicago;* **Steven A. Rosenberg, M.D., Ph.D.,** *Chief of Surgery, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda*

Three principles guide this journal: it affords an integrated view of modern oncology across all disciplines; it provides a forum that encourages research and reporting of new modalities; and it is a place where translational research — the interface between laboratory and clinic — is explored and furthered. It is a forum to all who are interested in cancer in the laboratory, at the bedside, or for those trying to bridge the two domains.

The journal highlights clinical studies evaluating state of the art applications of medical, surgical, and radiation oncology, alone or in combination. It will emphasize studies that may have implications for other disciplines; for example, medical and surgical treatment of metastases, modification of the metastatic process, conformal radiotherapy, drug–dose intensity, cancer vaccines, and manipulation of the cell–cycle checkpoint genes.

Each bi–monthly issue contains six original articles as well as a column by the Editors, commentaries, and a feature titled "A New Perspective" that enriches the discussion and provides an interactive quality to the journal. Further enhancing this interactive quality is the journal's availability through Scientific American On–Line, available through the America Online Information utility.

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN
415 Madison Avenue, New York, NY 10017

CALL 800-545-0554; FORWARD ORDERS TO ADDRESS BELOW or FAX 1-212-980-3062

☐ YES, enter my one year subscription to The Cancer Journal From Scientific American
☐ Individuals @ US$129.00 ☐ Institutions @ US$179.00

Name_____

Address _____

_____

City _____ State _____ Zip_____

☐ Enclosed is my check made payable to Scientific American, Inc.
☐ Bill me — attached is PO #_____
Charge my credit card: ☐ VISA ☐ MasterCard ☐ AMEX ☐ Access ☐ Eurocard

Account #_____ Exp. Date_____

Signature _____

Outside the United States and Canada call 212-754-0550 or FAX 212-980-3062.

Add US$10.00 for orders to Canada and add US$15.00 for orders outside the U.S. and Canada. Add US$60.00 for airmail delivery outside the U.S. and Canada. Orders from outside the U.S. and Canada must be prepaid and paid with U.S. funds drawn on a U.S. bank. Canadian residents price includes 7% GST. GST # R127387652. Quebec residents please add QST. QST # Q1015332537.

V7241

Derivation of Matthews's Formula

By Bayes's theorem we have

$$P(A|C) = P(A\&C)/P(C)$$

and similarly

$$P(C|A) = P(C\&A)/P(A).$$

But $C\&A = A\&C$, so we can combine the two equations to get

$$P(A|C) = P(C|A)P(A)/P(C).$$

Moreover,

$$P(C) = P(C|A)P(A) + P(C|A')P(A')$$

because either A or A' must happen, but not both. Finally, $P(A') = 1 - P(A)$. Putting all this together, we get

$$P(A|C) = P(A)/[P(A) + P(C|A')P(A')/P(C|A)].$$

If we replace $P(A)$ by p and

$$P(C|A')/P(C|A) \text{ by } r,$$

we get

$$P(A|C) = p/[p + r(1 - p)].$$

in which it is being applied. Throughout the ages lawyers have shamelessly abused jurors' lack of mathematical sophistication. One example in DNA profiling—now well understood by the courts—is the "prosecutor's fallacy." DNA profiling was invented in 1985 by Alec J. Jeffreys of the University of Leicester and draws on a so-called variable number of tandem repeat (VNTR) regions in the human genome. In each such region a particular DNA sequence is repeated many times. VNTR sequences are widely believed to identify individuals uniquely.

For use in courts, scientists use standard techniques from molecular biology to look for matches between several different VNTR regions in two samples of DNA—one related to the crime, the other taken from the suspect. Sufficiently many matches should provide overwhelming statistical evidence that both samples came from the same person.

The prosecutor's fallacy refers to a confusion of two different probabilities. The "match probability" answers the question "What is the probability that an individual's DNA will match the crime sample, given that he or she is innocent?" But the question that should concern the court is "What is the probability that the suspect is innocent, given a DNA match?" The two queries can have wildly different answers.

The source of the difference is, again, context. In the first case, the individual is conceptually being placed in a large population chosen for scientific convenience. In the second case, he or she is being placed in a less well defined but more relevant population—those people who might reasonably have committed the crime.

The use of conditional probabilities in such circumstances is governed by a theorem credited to the Englishman Thomas Bayes. Let A and C be events, with probabilities $P(A)$ and $P(C)$, respectively. Write $P(A|C)$ for the probability that A happens, given that C has definitely occurred. Let $A\&C$ denote the event "both A and C have happened." Then Bayes's theorem tells us that $P(A|C) = P(A\&C) / P(C)$.

For example, in the case of the Smith children (first scenario), we have

C = at least one child is a girl
A = the other child is a girl
$P(C) = 3/4$
$P(A\&C) = 1/4$

because $A\&C$ is also the event "both children are girls," or GG. Then Bayes's theorem says the probability that the other child is a girl, given that one of them is a girl, is $(1/4)/(3/4) = 1/3$, the value we arrived at earlier. Similarly, with the second scenario, Bayes's theorem gives the answer 1/2, also as before.

For the application to confessional evidence, Matthews designates

A = the accused is guilty
C = he or she has confessed

As is normal in Bayesian reasoning, he takes $P(A)$ to be the "prior probability" that the accused is guilty—that is, the probability of guilt as assessed from evidence obtained before the confession. Let A' denote the negation of event A, namely, "the accused is innocent."

Then (by a calculation outlined in the above box) Matthews derives the formula $P(A|C) = p/[p + r(1 - p)]$, where to keep the algebra simple we write $p = P(A)$ and $r = P(C|A')/P(C|A)$, which we call the confession ratio. Here $P(C|A')$ is the probability of an innocent person confessing, and $P(C|A)$ is that of a guilty person confessing. Therefore, the confession ratio is less than 1 if an innocent person is less likely to confess than a guilty person.

If the confession is to increase the probability of guilt, then we want $P(A|C)$ to be larger than $P(A)$, which equals p. Thus, we need $p/[p + r(1 - p)] > p$, which some simple algebra boils down to $r < 1$. That is, the existence of a confession increases the probability of guilt if and only if an innocent person is less likely to confess than a guilty one.

The implication is that sometimes the existence of a confession may reduce the probability of guilt. In fact, this will occur whenever an innocent person is more likely to confess than a guilty one. Such a situation might arise in terrorist cases. Psychological profiles indicate that individuals who are more suggestible, or more compliant, are more likely to confess under interrogation. These descrip-

FEEDBACK

The March column described Quad, a board game invented by G. Keith Still. (He tells me that he favors the spelling "Quod" as in *quod erat demonstrandum*, meaning "which was to be proved.") The game has acquired quite a following. David Weiblen of Reston, Va., set a computer to playing it, employing a strategy based on weighting the positions according to rules that reflect their apparent strength.

In Weiblen's simulations, the first player always won. This observation leads him to question how interesting the game really is; it leads me to ask whether his weighting rules actually lead to the best play. He also points out that there are exactly 1,173 possible squares, a figure confirmed by Les Reid of Southwest Missouri State University, who says the problem was put on the mathematics department's World Wide Web site (http://science.smsu.edu/math/index.html). Solutions were posted by Michael Kennedy of the University of Kansas, Ken Duisenberg of Hewlett-Packard and Denis Borris of Ottawa, Ontario, Canada. Borris generalized the result to the $n \times n$ case, the answer being $(n^4 - n^2 - 48n + 84)/12$; Duisenberg did the $m \times n$ case. —*I.S.*

tions seldom apply to a hardened terrorist, who will be trained to resist interrogation techniques. It is plausible that this is what happened when securing the convictions that have now been reversed in U.K. courts.

Bayesian analysis also demonstrates some other counterintuitive features of evidence. For example, suppose that initial evidence of guilt (X) is followed by supplementary evidence of guilt (Y). A jury will almost always assume that the probability of guilt has now gone up. But probabilities of guilt do not just accumulate in this manner. In fact, the new evidence increases the probability of guilt only if the probability of the new evidence given the old evidence and the accused being guilty exceeds the probability of the new evidence given the old evidence and the accused being innocent.

When the prosecution case depends on a confession, two quite different things may happen. In the first, take X to be the confession and Y the evidence found as a result of the confession—for example, discovery of the body where the accused said it would be. Because an innocent person is unlikely to provide such information, Bayesian considerations show that the probability of guilt is increased. So corroborative evidence that depends on the confession being genuine increases the likelihood of guilt.

On the other hand, X might be the discovery of the body and Y a subsequent confession. In this case, the evidence provided by the body does not depend on the confession and so cannot corroborate it. Nevertheless, there is no "body-finder's fallacy" like the interrogator's fallacy, because it is hard to argue that an innocent person is more likely to confess than a guilty one just because they know that a body has been discovered.

Of course, it would be silly to suggest that every potential juror should take (and pass) a course in Bayesian inference, but it seems entirely feasible that a judge could direct them on some simple principles. Moreover, the same ideas apply to DNA profiling but in circumstances that are much more intuitive for jurors. A quick review of the interrogator's fallacy could be an excellent way to discourage lawyers from making fallacious claims about DNA evidence.

Visit the Web sites of companies whose advertisements appear in Scientific American.

electronic directory

ACADEMIC PRESS http://www.apnet.com/oncology/

AMERICA'S PHARMACEUTICAL RESEARCH COMPANIES http://www.phrma.org

APPLE COMPUTER, INC. http://www.apple.com

AWARE ELECTRONICS http://www.aw-el.com

CADILLAC http://www.cadillac.com

CHEVRON CORPORATION http://www.chevron.com

CHRYSLER http://www.chryslercars.com

COMPAQ http://www.compaq.com

COMPUSERVE http://www.compuserve.com/

DEAN BOOKS COMPANY http://www.mribook.com

GTE CORPORATION http://www.gte4wcn.com

IBM http://www.ibm.com

IMMUNEX CORPORATION http://www.immunex.com

INTEL CORPORATION http://www.intel.com

JACK DANIELS http://www.infi.net/jackdaniels/

JOURNAL OF CONSCIOUSNESS STUDIES http://www.zynet.co.uk/imprint

LANDS' END http://www.landsend.com/

LEXUS http://www.lexususa.com

LIBRARY OF SCIENCE BOOK CLUB http://booksonline.com

LINCOLN CONTINENTAL http://www.Lincolnvehicles.com

LSI LOGIC http://www.lsilogic.com

MICROMATH SOFTWARE http://www.micromath.com

MICROSOFT WINDOWS '95 http://www.windows.microsoft.com

NATIONAL CHILDHOOD CANCER FOUNDATION http://www.nccf.org/

NOKIA http://www.nokia.com/

NORTEL http://www.nt.com/

PFIZER http://www.pfizer.com/

SAAB CARS USA http://www.saabusa.com

SATURN CORPORATION http://www.saturncars.com

SCIENCE CONNECTION http://www.inforamp.net/~sciconn/

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN http://www.sciam.com/

SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. http://www.sgi.com

STATE FARM http://www.statefarm.com/

STOLICHNAYA VODKA http://www.stoli.com

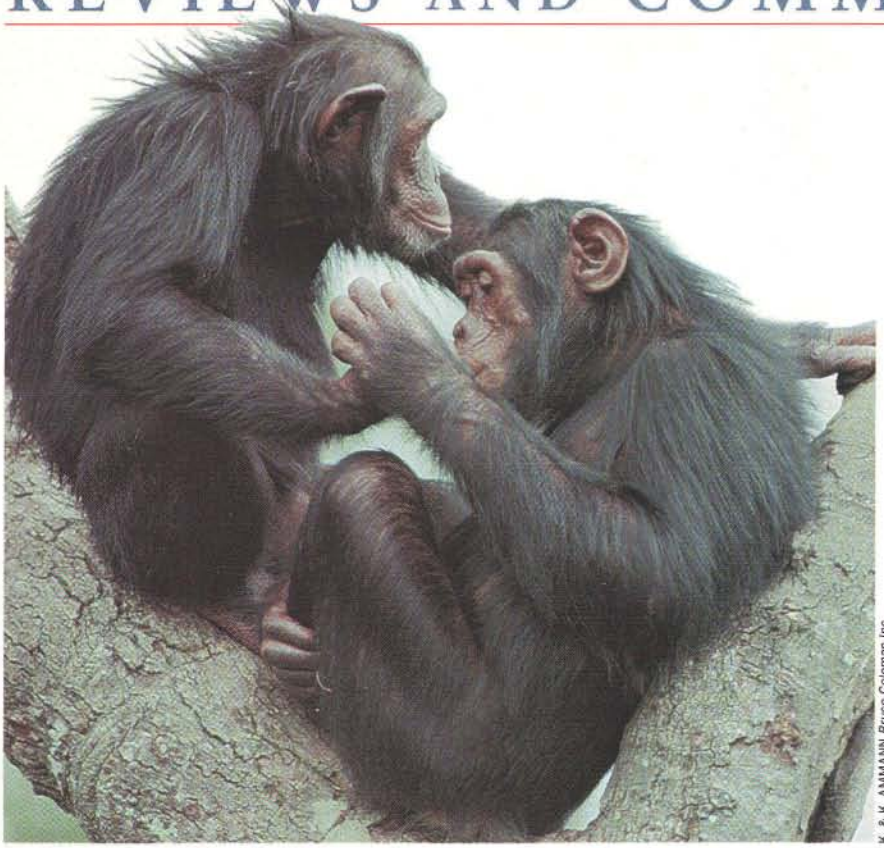
TIAA-CREF http://www.tiaa-cref.org

TOYOTA MOTOR SALES OF AMERICA http://www.toyota.com

UNITED AIRLINES http://www.ual.com/

WOLFRAM RESEARCH http://sa.wolfram.com/

SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN



K. & K. AMMANN *Bruce Coleman Inc.*

MORAL KIN?

Review by William C. McGrew

Good Natured: The Origins of Right and Wrong in Humans and Other Animals
BY FRANS DE WAAL
Harvard University Press, 1996 ($24.95)

Morality puts individuals into conflict with the community: collective needs, set out as rules of right and wrong, constrain the options of individuals striving for their own best advantage. Yet modern Darwinian evolutionary theory is based on individual reproduction, on "selfish" genes that have been selected at the expense of others that might act for the greater good. How then could survival of the fittest lead to empathy? Despite the insights of sociobiologists, this profound paradox has led some scholars in the past to assume that the emergence of morals must be a transcendent process beyond the bounds of scientific explanation.

Frans de Waal, one of the world's best-known primatologists, has set out to prove that assumption wrong. On the final page of his startling new book, he asserts that "we seem to be reaching a point at which science can wrest morality from the hands of philosophers." How the author, a Dutch-born zoologist now at Emory University and the Yerkes Regional Primate Research Center in Atlanta, Ga., came to this conclusion makes for compelling reading.

De Waal starts by examining the apparent universality of moral systems across humanity; given that all societies have ethics, ethics must be integral to human nature. Any phenomenon that is part of human nature must be a product of both nature (evolution) and nurture (culture). Therefore, if morality has an evolutionary component, he argues, it must have its roots in prehuman species, in which the precursors of morality provided the raw material that natural selection acted on in the process of human origins. These ancestral life-forms are extinct, but closely related species are available for study.

In *Good Natured,* de Waal looks to other primates in particular to model the emergence of morality, to "investigate the extent to which aspects of morality are recognizable in other animals, and try to illuminate how we may have moved from societies in which things were as they were to societies with a vision of how things ought to be." He sets out not only to compare nonhuman beings with humans but also to explain how the former evolved into the latter.

De Waal likens the question of morals in other species to similar inquiries about culture, politics, language, intelligence and so on. Of course, other species do not have human morals, culture or language, any more than a cat has the same view of life as a dog. Yet animals do behave in ways that, if seen in humans, would be automatically credited as having a moral basis: they appear to express altruism, empathy, righteous indignation, retribution, community concern and tolerance.

But are the acts of other animals motivated by something resembling moral concerns, or is any such belief just a replay of romantic 19th-century anthropomorphism? De Waal argues that modern ethological methods of observation, combined with evolutionary theory focusing on the proximate causes of behavior (rather than its ultimate functions), allow us to understand much more than previous generations of animal behaviorists. By limiting the scope of inquiry, researchers can attain greater certainty about the questions they do answer.

The key to this certainty lies in explicit and precise definition of terms, so that investigators can make testable predictions instead of adding multiple layers of interpretation to everything they watch. For example, de Waal carefully defines an "expectation": "familiarity with a particular outcome to the degree that a different outcome has an unsettling effect, as reflected in confusion, surprise, or distress." The mental state is inferred on the basis of observable acts, and almost anyone who sees a primate's be-

havior in a particular situation will be able to tell whether its expectations were met. This ingenuity emerges again and again in de Waal's arguments, lending them crucial credibility.

So what are the basic conditions necessary for the evolution of morals? De Waal postulates two: an organism must live in groups on which it depends for subsistence and defense, and these group members must cooperate even though they also have disparate individual interests. A school of fish will satisfy the first condition, but only a few species of social mammals (among them carnivores, cetaceans and primates) meet the second one. It is from the resolution of conflicts that morality emerges.

De Waal adduces a strong body of evidence that humans and other animals share the following tendencies and capacities: sympathy as expressed in succor, special treatment of the disadvantaged, and cognitive empathy; norms exemplified in both prescriptive and proscriptive social rules; reciprocity embodied positively in the exchange of services and balanced negatively by the punishment of violators; and concern for community, which finds its expression in peacemaking and negotiation. Summed up in this way, the above suite of demonstrated qualities sounds moral indeed.

Lest the reader begin to perceive stereotyped visions of the "noble ape" from the pages of Edgar Rice Burroughs, I should point out that *Good Natured* is not without its limitations. De Waal himself studies only monkeys and apes confined in zoos or laboratories—animals whose existence is different in almost all respects from that of their free-living counterparts. By definition, such experimental subjects do not escape from predators, hunt for prey or search for food. Most important, they do not have the chance to be alone, whether temporarily on any given day or more enduringly over their lifetime.

Take chimpanzees, de Waal's favored species of study and humankind's nearest living relations. In nature, they are actually among the least social species of primates. At Gombe (Jane Goodall's famous site in Tanzania), Stewart Halperin found that adult males spent an average 30 percent of their waking hours alone, and mothers and their offspring spent 65 percent on their own.

Captive groups—animals living at best in large enclosures, and often in confined cages—are constantly in one another's presence. Any immigration or emigration is under the control of their human caretakers, and there are no intermediate states—the ape is either in or out. This social hothouse presents a real challenge, and the chimpanzees respond with ingenious social adaptations that are unknown in the wild. For example, adult females may form coalitions that can put even the most dominant male to flight. As de Waal notes, such behavior is unnatural, but it demonstrates the latent reserves of adaptive complexity and capacity that these apes possess.

This kind of social situation, and the moral choices that the apes make when confronted with it, probably sheds little light on the evolutionary past of either humans or chimpanzees. Our ancestors and theirs never faced such crowded conditions. Nevertheless, it can provide information that confirms and refines models drawn from behavior in the wild. De Waal is in the same position as an anthropologist trying to make deductions about *Homo sapiens* from observations of travelers suffering from jet lag: however relevant the condition is today, it cannot be of evolutionary significance, because our ancestors never faced rapid global travel as a selection pressure. Even so, responses to jet lag can yield insight into adaptational limits—as well as unexpected knowledge, such as a better understanding of the function of melatonin in modulating patterns of sleep and waking.

The most important implication of the book is the one with which de Waal concludes: if we must now add morality to the list of capacities shown by monkeys and apes, then questions about the morality of our own behavior toward them become even more pointed. Nonhuman moral creatures should be preserved in nature and treated better in captivity. For apes, de Waal calls for special consideration—either phase out experimentation on them altogether or at least enrich their lives and reduce their suffering. It is the moral thing to do.

WILLIAM C. MCGREW is professor of anthropology and zoology at Miami University. He has studied apes and monkeys for 25 years. His most recent book is Great Ape Societies *(Cambridge University Press, 1996).*

THE MISMEASURE OF RISK

Review by Michael A. Kamrin

Our Stolen Future
BY THEO COLBORN, DIANNE DUMANOSKI AND JOHN PETERSON MYERS
Dutton, 1996 ($24.95)

Our Stolen Future hit the bookshelves accompanied by a whirlwind of publicity about the putative health impacts of environmental contaminants—specifically, a class of compounds that may mimic the chemical activities of estrogen. These hormonal mimics are being blamed for declining fertility and behavioral changes in species as disparate as humans, polar bears, beluga whales and alligators. Although the book bills itself as a "scientific detective story," a careful examination shows that it falls short of the scientific ideal in a number of ways. Its logical shortcomings are all too familiar from the many recent attempts to explain risks to public health from environmental contaminants.

The book is not scientific in the most fundamental sense, because it aims to convince readers about what ought to be rather than to explain what is or what is likely to be. Although *Our Stolen Future* includes results and interpretations of scientific studies, its goal is to arouse public outrage and change public policy in a manner that the authors believe is correct.

The authors present a very selective segment of the data that have been gathered about chemicals that might affect hormonal functions. They carefully avoid evidence and interpretations that are not in accord with their thinking. For example, they cite articles that document falling sperm counts and rising rates of prostate cancers, but they do not mention equally reputable work that casts doubt on these supposed trends. Yet nature's puzzles can be solved only by looking at all the pieces.

The book is not unique in providing information that simulates the qualities of science yet does not adhere to its rules of rigor. Other environmental risks have also been presented in misleading or incomplete ways—consider the scare about Alar, a pesticide formerly used on fruit. The Natural Resources Defense Council

(NRDC) claimed that 6,000 preschoolers might get cancer from exposure to pesticides (mainly Alar) on fruits and vegetables, an assertion that later proved to be unwarranted.

The NRDC estimate was in part based on government approaches to estimating cancer potency, so it is worth closely examining the risk assessment process used by the federal government in deciding how to regulate chemicals. It appears that this process has some characteristics that resemble those found in the book. Like the authors of *Our Stolen Future*, risk assessors are selective in the data they use. Maximum allowable levels of chemicals in drinking water rely on tests conducted on the most sensitive animal species. Similarly, government classification of chemicals as probable human carcinogens inevitably gives far greater weight to studies that find excess cancers than to those that do not.

During the past decade, many environmental groups have made claims in which policy masquerades as science. The National Wildlife Federation asserted that the PCBs and other compounds in one meal a month of large lake trout from the Great Lakes carried about a one-in-100 risk of cancer, showing how risk assessment techniques can be manipulated to produce shocking values that are misleadingly represented as scientific estimates. (The authors of *Our Stolen Future* purvey similar scaremongering about Great Lakes fish.) Both the public and policymakers reacted to many of these claims as if they were accurate, although later reflection has led to a scientific consensus that they were greatly overstated.

Such manipulations of perceived risk are very dangerous. Although this nonscientific behavior is supposedly in defense of human and environmental health, it obscures the line between science and policy to the detriment of both. Misuse of science can lead to either too little regulation or too much; worse yet, it disregards real differences among chemicals and so leads to expenditures of large resources to reduce exposures that may have little health impact while ignoring others that may pose a real danger.

For example, emphasis on chemical contaminants of questionable health significance has taken attention away from microbial contaminants that pose a far more immediate threat, including bacteria in hamburger meat and parasites in the water supply, which have killed and continue to cause illness in hundreds of people across the U.S. every year. Likewise, the authors' warning

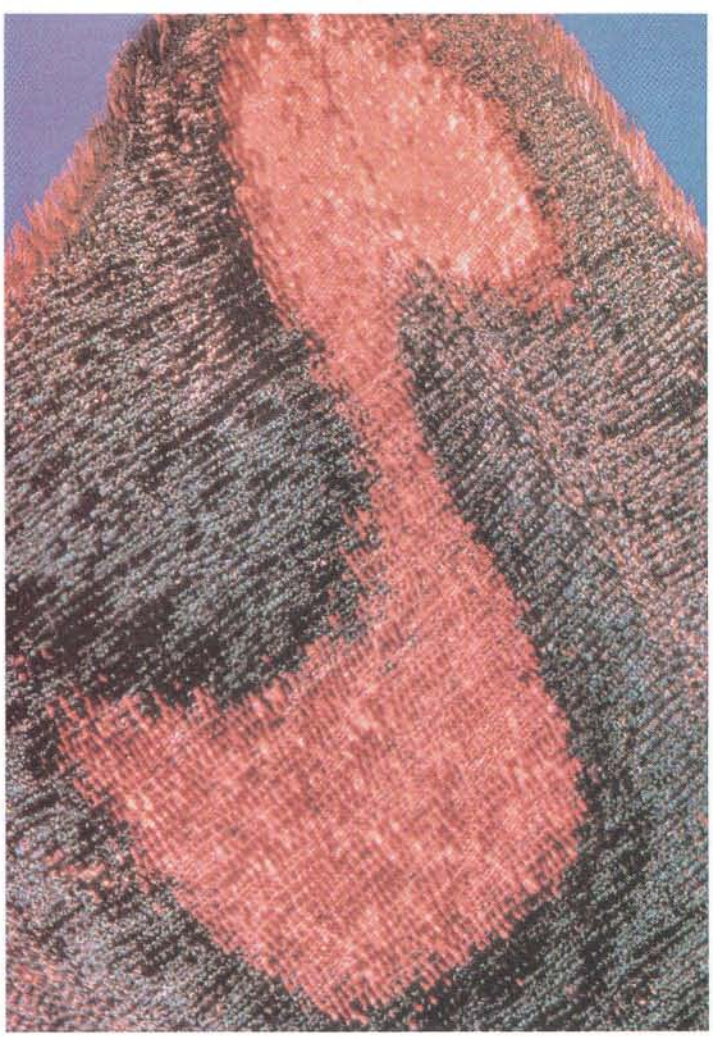
THE ILLUSTRATED PAGE

The Butterfly Alphabet
BY KJELL B. SANDVED
Scholastic, 1996 ($15.95)

The human eye is expert at finding patterns in natural objects, whether dream images in clouds or a "face" composed of mountain shadows on Mars. In this bright, playful book, Kjell B. Sandved, a Norwegian-born nature photographer, manages to discern the 26 letters of the English alphabet in the markings on butterfly wings. Each letter merits a full page; the facing side features lines of poetry, a photograph revealing the butterfly's overall appearance and the species name (the "S" seen at the right comes, fittingly enough, from a swallowtail). The sheer beauty of the delicate wingscapes makes it hard to resist the anthropocentric impulse to think these insects were created for our own aesthetic pleasure.

—Corey S. Powell

"Nature's message is clear for all to see... it is written on the wings of butterflies!"



KJELL B. SANDVED

BRIEFLY NOTED

ENDEAVOUR VIEWS THE EARTH. *Edited by Robert A. Brown. Photographic selections and descriptions by Jay Apt. Cambridge University Press, 1996 ($11.95).*
Some people's travel pictures are more interesting than others. In 1992 Jay Apt and his fellow astronauts on board the space shuttle *Endeavour* snapped roughly one exposure every two and a half minutes during their eight-day mission. This slim volume contains some of their favorite images, accompanied by short descriptions by Apt and a diagram of the shuttle's orbital track. A reference section lists locations where readers can view shuttle pictures firsthand at NASA centers or obtain them in digital form on-line.

SYNTHETIC PLEASURES, *directed by Iara Lee. Distributed by Caipirinha Productions, 1996 (Theater dates and other information are available at http://www.caipirinha.com).*
This film buys wholesale into the proposition that the power of science and technology knows no bounds. A series of talking heads argue that genetic engineering, machine intelligence and the like will enable us to fabricate custom-tailored environments that are completely cut off from nature. Iara Lee's breezy, fast-cut style keeps the story entertaining and helps to gloss over the lightweight speculations offered by some of her subjects (the performance artist Orlan says she uses cosmetic surgery to achieve a "total change of identity"). Only at fleeting moments, however, does the film's thesis seem believable enough to feel truly chilling.

THE END OF SCIENCE, *by John Horgan. Addison-Wesley, 1996 ($24).*
At the opposite extreme is this book by the senior writer at *Scientific American*, which examines the impulse to seek ultimate answers and ponders whether attaining them will leave science with nowhere to go. Notwithstanding the title, the book is as much an exploration of epistemology as it is an exercise in millennialism: Horgan interviews some of the foremost researchers (many of whom he has profiled in this magazine) to show how the growth of knowledge is both driven and limited by the quirky creativity of the human mind.

of threats to fertility distract from more serious, documented environmental problems. Furthermore, when "scientific" claims are later shown to be false, people become less likely to react when a true threat is uncovered.

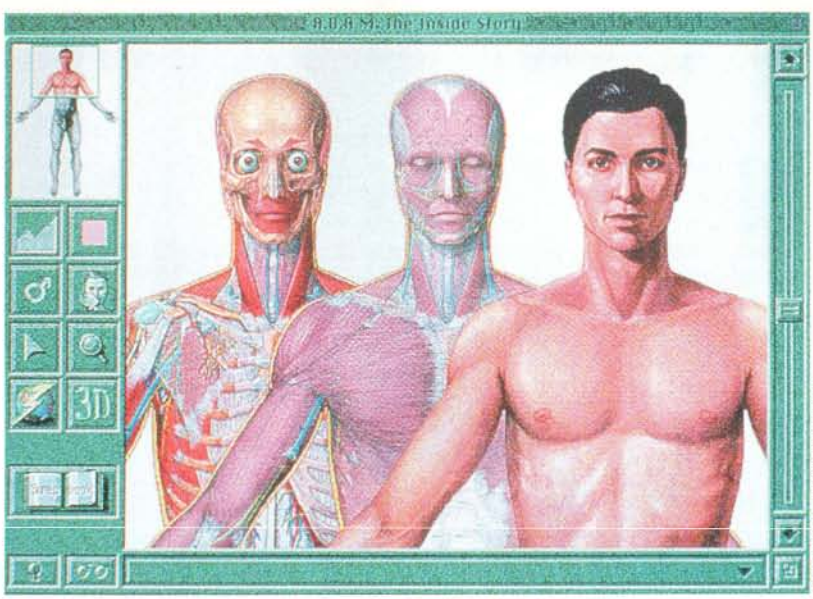
Recent indications suggest that the situation is improving. It appears that the public has become more wary of "scientific" claims of health hazards of environmental contaminants. New reports of the dangers of pesticides on fruits and vegetables and about the risks of cancer from common household products such as toothpaste aroused only minor public reaction. Indeed, the public response to *Our Stolen Future* has been quite subdued. Parents have not run after their children to retrieve sandwiches in plastic wrap that is claimed to contain endocrine disrupters, as they reportedly did to retrieve apples believed to be contaminated with Alar.

There are also indications that the federal response may be changing. A draft report from the national Commission on Risk Assessment and Risk Management proposes that the assumption that cancer in rats is always indicative of cancer in humans be scrapped and that data about the mechanism of action of a chemical be considered in deciding whether the results of rodent studies are applicable to human risk.

The authors of *Our Stolen Future* portray their work as a new *Silent Spring*—a call to action to protect people and their environment from an insidious chemical scourge. In fact, it appears that the book may serve quite a different purpose: it may stimulate deeper discussion about how to improve the way that science is used in evaluating environmental risks.

MICHAEL A. KAMRIN is a professor in the department of environmental toxicology at Michigan State University.

THE CD EXAMINED



A.D.A.M. The Inside Story
A.D.A.M. Software, 1996 (CD-ROM for Windows or Macintosh, $39.95)

The publisher's background in medical education shows in this CD-ROM's unusual level of visual and factual detail. The most impressive feature of *The Inside Story* is an interactive function that permits the user to view the body layer by layer. A linked "Family Scrapbook" provides reasonably sophisticated discussions about how various bodily systems work—marred, alas, by coy narration. There is also a small but innovative set of three-dimensional animations based on data from the Visible Human Project. Comprehensive indexing and a connection to on-line updates bolster the disk's value as a serious educational tool.
—Corey S. Powell

JESSICA BOYATT

WONDERS

by Owen Gingerich

Neptune, Velikovsky and the Name of the Game

Then felt I like some watcher of the skies
When a new planet swims into his ken.
—*On First Looking into Chapman's Homer,* John Keats

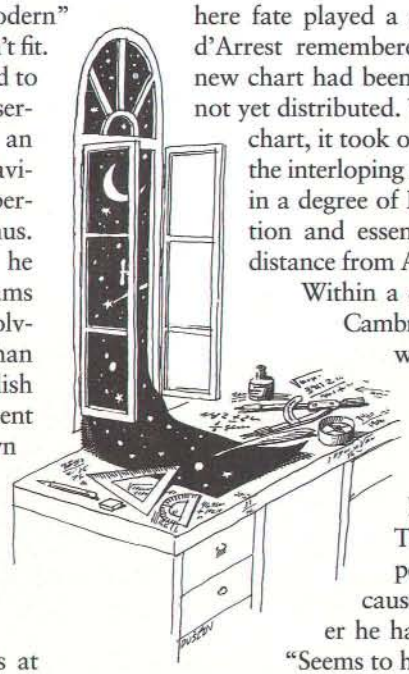
For young John Couch Adams, a new planet figuratively swam into view when, as a University of Cambridge undergraduate, he wrote, "Formed a design of investigating... the irregularities in the motion of Uranus which are yet unaccounted for; in order to find out whether they may be attributed to the action of an undiscovered planet beyond it...."

Uranus had been discovered 62 years earlier, in 1781, by William Herschel. In 1843, with its period of 84 years, Uranus had not quite made a complete cycle around the sun since its detection. But a few "prediscovery" observations had turned up, whereby astronomers had recorded its position under the assumption that it was a star. By the early 1800s those positions obtained before 1781 had become a problem—an orbit that could represent the "modern" observations simply didn't fit.

Adams was challenged to make sense of all the observations by postulating an unseen planet whose gravitational influence was perturbing the path of Uranus. And solve the puzzle he did. Unfortunately, Adams had more success in resolving the discrepancies than in persuading the English astronomical establishment to look for the unknown perturber. He sent his solution to the Astronomer Royal George Biddell Airy, who eventually worked out a search plan with his colleague James Challis at Cambridge. The idea was to map all the stars in a rather large area around Adams's predicted path and then to remap them later to see if any had moved.

The same sort of mathematical attack on the recalcitrant motion of Uranus had been undertaken by Urbain Jean Joseph Le Verrier of the École Polytechnique in Paris. In 1845 D. François Jean Arago, director of the Paris Observatory, had suggested the problem to him, and by August 1846, Le Verrier had also predicted a position for the unknown perturber.

Like Adams, Le Verrier apparently had trouble convincing his countrymen to make a swift and decisive search for his predicted planet. Consequently, in September 1846 he sent his prediction to several observers who had large telescopes. J. G. Galle of the Berlin Observatory had some difficulty securing the permission of his director to search for the planet. A younger astronomer, H. L. d'Arrest, overheard the discussion, and here fate played a serendipitous role: d'Arrest remembered that a relevant new chart had been drawn up though not yet distributed. With the aid of the chart, it took only minutes to find the interloping object. It was within a degree of Le Verrier's prediction and essentially at the same distance from Adams's.



DUSAN PETRICIC

Within a day, word reached Cambridge, where chagrin was rampant. Challis searched his logbook and beside one entry wrote, "This must have been the planet." The situation was especially poignant because a few nights earlier he had already written, "Seems to have a disk," which indeed marked the sought-after quarry.

In the end the honors were shared, although naval Britain won out with the name "Neptune," after the mythological god of the sea, as opposed to the more modern appellation "Le Verrier," espoused by the French (who were also disposed to rename Uranus "Herschel").

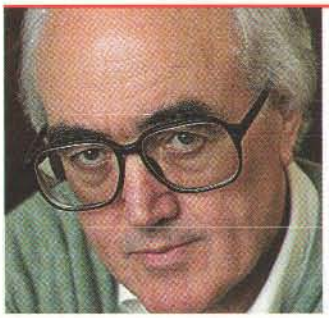
More significant than assigning priorities is to examine the almost iconic importance the discovery achieved as a successful prediction of Newtonian theory. To be sure, skeptics argued that there were insufficient data for a genuine prediction and that the whole business was a fantastic coincidence. Later, doubters pointed to a garbled telegram about a comet discovery, and—voilà—another comet was found in the location specified by the erroneous telegram!

The idea became firmly entrenched that the hallmark of a satisfactory theory was successful prediction.

Nevertheless, the idea became firmly entrenched that the hallmark of a satisfactory theory was successful prediction. But to hold foresight, as opposed to understanding, as the touchstone of genuine science is to miss half the game: the wonderful connective fiber that constitutes our contemporary scientific fabric.

An illuminating example comes in the case of the late Immanuel Velikovsky, whose 1950 *Worlds in Collision* created massive consternation in the scientific community. His book argued that many miraculous events described in the Bible were literally true and could be explained by catastrophic events in the solar system. Velikovsky sent the German translation of his work to his fellow Prince-

Continued on page 143



CONNECTIONS

by James Burke

Impressions

DUSAN PETRICIC

Fortunately for me, at a recent reception to mark the opening of an exhibition, there was a woman drinking a glass of champagne, and I got the impression she was scrutinizing one of those paintings you can only truly appreciate from a distance. I say "fortunately" because the event provided me with the gist of this column (and several glasses of champagne).

Early in the 19th century, in the middle of a number of battles against everyone else in Europe, Napoleon must have got fed up with the fact that the massive levels of industrial output by the enemy Brits meant that he was fighting them armed with British-built cannon manned by troops wearing uniforms made in England! *Zut!*

So he set up a Society to Encourage French Inventors (very rough translation), and in 1810 a total nobody called Nicolas Appert stepped forward to collect the society's prize of 12,000 francs for a crazy idea he'd tried out on the French navy a year or so earlier. Appert had come up with a scheme for preserving food. All you had to do was seal the food in a champagne bottle (Appert was a cook and champagne bottler), then immerse the bottle in water brought to a boil for long enough to kill the germs that caused putrefaction. As is so often the case with these major advances in science and technology, Appert didn't know that bactericide was what he was actually doing, germs not having been named yet. But never mind.

A French chemist changed the nature of the sandwich with a mixture of animal fat churned with milk and salt.

Poetic ravings about how M. Appert's bottled veggies "brought spring and summer to winter" appeared in the French press, so the Brits heard about it. In 1811 an Anglo-French go-between named John Gamble, one of the British prisoner-of-war exchange team in Paris—Gamble was also married to a Frenchwoman—managed to get hold of Appert's patent. One year later, with partners Bryan Donkin and John Hall, Gamble set up a business in Bermondsey, South London, repeating the food-preservation trick, but this time in tin cans (one of his buddies had experience in iron making). Well, after the British royal family had sampled some of the new products and pronounced them delicious, how could the business fail?

In 1818 canning got another boost when the exploratory captain John Ross sailed off in a blaze of publicity to find the Northwest Passage, carrying a large supply of cans of carrots and gravy, soup, roast veal and peas. In 1829 the intrepid captain's next, similarly provisioned expedition (funded by Felix Booth, distiller of the eponymous gin) discovered the North Magnetic Pole. And Ross named the northernmost tip of North America the "Boothia" Peninsula. If truth be told, the magnetic discovery was made by Ross's nephew and co-leader of the expedition, James, who was so bitten by the polar bug that in 1839 he shot off in the opposite direction, on the HMS *Erebus,* to spend four years finding and mapping large bits of Antarctica, as well as other spots en route.

On this occasion, one member of his crew was a Joseph Hooker, who later became famous by writing up the botanical finds from the trip and then doing the same on assorted sorties to Nepal and to Sikkim and Assam (now part of India). As a result of these Himalayan ramblings, Hooker became known to gardeners all over when he introduced to the West most varieties of rhododendron, then, patiently, over years, catalogued more than 300 types of impatiens. For such persistence, in 1865 Hooker was made director of the British Royal Botanical Gardens at Kew (following his father in the job) and proceeded to whip the place into the international center for botanical research it is today. He also saved many a latter-day tourist (and me) from the rigors of frequently bone-chilling London afternoons when he commissioned the tropically warm splendors of Kew's beautiful Palm House.

Speaking of which, Hooker contributed at least two other things that matter to the 20th century. He helped to organize the smuggling of rubber tree seedlings out of Brazil (not at all British) so they could be nurtured and transplanted to the Malay Archipelago (mostly British at the time), thus laying the foundations of the entire rubber industry and making possible the invention of the raincoat (see the June column).

Hooker went on to do the same trick for the African oil palm. Palm oil really came into its own thanks to Napoleon's nephew (Napoleon III) and *his* problems with feeding the troops (and a rapidly rising population). In response to yet another imperial call to the flag (and the offer of another fat prize), a French chemist called Hyppolyte Mège-Mouriès changed the nature of the sandwich with what was, in its final form, a mixture of animal fat churned with milk and salt, which was then chilled, knead-

ed and packaged. But poor old Hyppolyte never got his hands on the prize money. To add insult to injury, certain others, recognizing on which side their financial bread was buttered, promptly took advantage of patent law loopholes to mass-produce their own versions of his new food substitute (known as margarine) and to become modern industrial giants (in later years using palm oil in preference to animal fat).

Mège-Mouriès had derived all he knew about fats (and probably also the name he gave his invention) from the esteemed Michel-Eugène Chevreul. In 1889, when Chevreul died at the age of 103, France declared a day of national mourning, because Chevreul's research into fats and oils had made the world a brighter, sweeter place. He'd turned soap making into an exact science, and he'd invented a better candle.

Chevreul had also improved on French tapestry making. In 1824 he was the director of dyeworks at the great Gobelins factory (the way organic dyes act on fabric has a lot to do with plant oils). As part of his work on color (his word "margarine" comes from the Greek for "pearl colored"), Chevreul produced his "Law of Simultaneous Contrast," which postulated that the way a color is seen has to do with whatever colors are placed next to it. So might the Gobelins weavers have observed with their very first throw of the shuttle, but, as far as I know, nobody had yet looked at the matter scientifically.

One final step—and if you recall the way I started this column, you'll already be ahead of me. Because there was only one bunch (apart from the weavers) who cared deeply about this color-juxtaposition thing: Georges Seurat and his painter pals, bowled over by what you could do with a lot of little dabs of different color placed in proximity. Which is, I suppose, an offensively oversimple way to describe what the art world recognizes as Pointillism. Demonstrated brilliantly in 1886 by Seurat in his *Un Dimanche à la Grande Jatte,* one of the more impressive works of the so-called Neo-Impressionist school he founded.

Another example of which was being examined by that woman I mentioned (remember?), who was sipping champagne at the exhibition reception.

One last little touch. Guess where Seurat's family came from? Champagne.

Wonders, continued from page 141

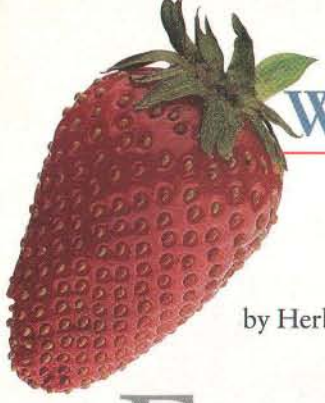
ton resident, Albert Einstein. Einstein, with his well-known sympathy for proponents of unorthodox ideas, examined the materials but soon lost patience, making marginal notes such as "wilde Phantasie" and "Unsinn" ("nonsense"). "It would be better," Einstein reputedly informed Velikovsky, "if your theory could predict something."

Velikovsky began to look for predictions his theory had made. Now, Velikovsky's incredible scenario called for Venus to have been born out of Jupiter within historical times, which suggested that Venus should be hot and Jupiter should show signs of its recent trauma, such as giving off radio noise. At the time, there was division about the temperature of the Venusian surface. In 1962 the *Mariner 2* spacecraft found evidence of a high surface temperature; meanwhile radio astronomers detected radio static from Jupiter. Velikovsky was elated. Now would not the scientists take his theory seriously? After all, it had passed the test of successful predictions.

Yet scientists were no more prepared than before to accept Velikovsky's proposal after these predictions. Even Einstein wrote to him, "Katastrophen *ja,* Venus *nein.*" The problem was that Velikovsky's ideas about Venus seemed, within the larger fabric of science, as preposterous as some of the creationists' current claims that the strata of the Grand Canyon were laid down by Noah's flood. The notion that Venus could, at the time of the Exodus, come so near the earth as to drip manna from its fiery tail defied all canons of celestial mechanics. It was the fabric of science, its overall coherence of understanding, that held the day.

What is important about the discovery of Neptune 150 years ago this month is not so much that it was a glorious prediction but rather that it remains a particularly colorful strand in the rich tapestry of science, the magnificent pattern that holds it all together. Coherence, the power of the grand explanation, not isolated proofs and predictions, gives science its strength and cogency. Understanding is the name of the game.

OWEN GINGERICH is a lapsed astrophysicist and a historian of astronomy at the Harvard-Smithsonian Center for Astrophysics. (Philip Morrison returns to "Wonders" next month.)



WORKING KNOWLEDGE

FREEZE-DRYING

by Herbert Aschkenasy

HUNDREDS OF FOODS can be freeze-dried; after the water is removed, some fruits, such as oranges, can then be ground into a powder for use in candy.

Freeze-drying is possible because under the right conditions, a solid material such as ice can change directly into a gas without first passing through a liquid phase. This process, called sublimation, gradually removes all ice from food and other biological matter or even from inorganic substances such as ceramics.

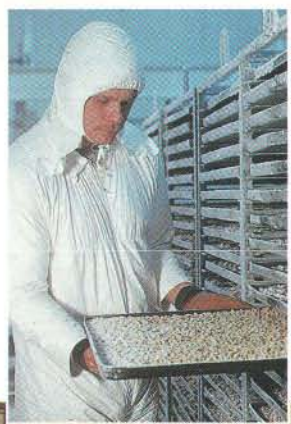
As a method of preserving many organic materials, freeze-drying is ideal. The freezing immobilizes the object, allowing it to retain its original shape. The absence of water discourages the growth of microorganisms and prevents other chemical changes associated with spoilage. Also, because water sublimates so readily, the conditions needed to freeze-dry a food will not eliminate most other constituents, such as the acetaldehyde molecules that give citrus fruits some of their flavor.

The rudiments of freeze-drying were known to the Peruvian Incas of the Andes, who stored their potatoes and other foodstuffs on the heights above Machu Picchu. There the cold temperatures froze the tubers, and the water inside slowly vaporized under the low air pressure. Wide use of the process commercially only began during World War II, to preserve blood plasma needed at the front lines.

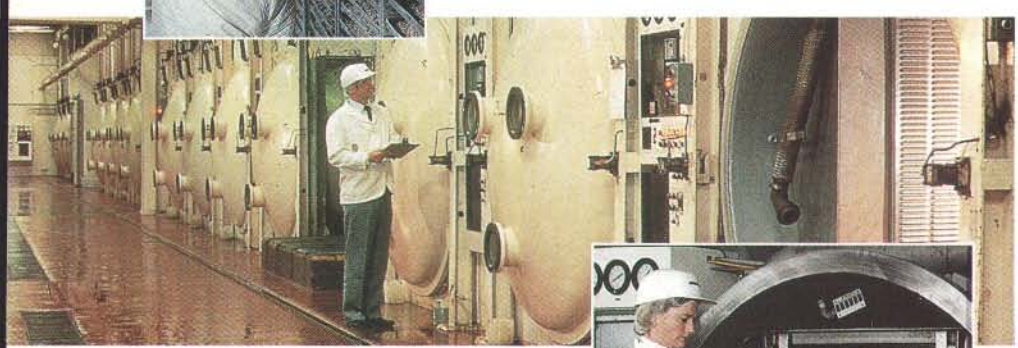
Since the 1960s, it has been applied to upward of 400 foods, from meat to fruits and vegetables. A few foods, such as lettuce and watermelon, are not good candidates for freeze-drying; consisting almost entirely of water, they disintegrate when frozen and dried. The process does preserve desirable microorganisms such as cheese cultures. It can even be used as a form of taxidermy and for the preservation of flowers.

Freeze-drying is more costly than simply chilling food to preserve it. But freeze-dried food in an airtight container may last for decades without spoilage; it only needs to be exposed to water to reconstitute it. We once rehydrated a 23-year-old beef stew military ration for a group of military officers, all of whom found the meat to be palatable.

HERBERT ASCHKENASY is the president of Oregon Freeze Dry in Albany, Ore.



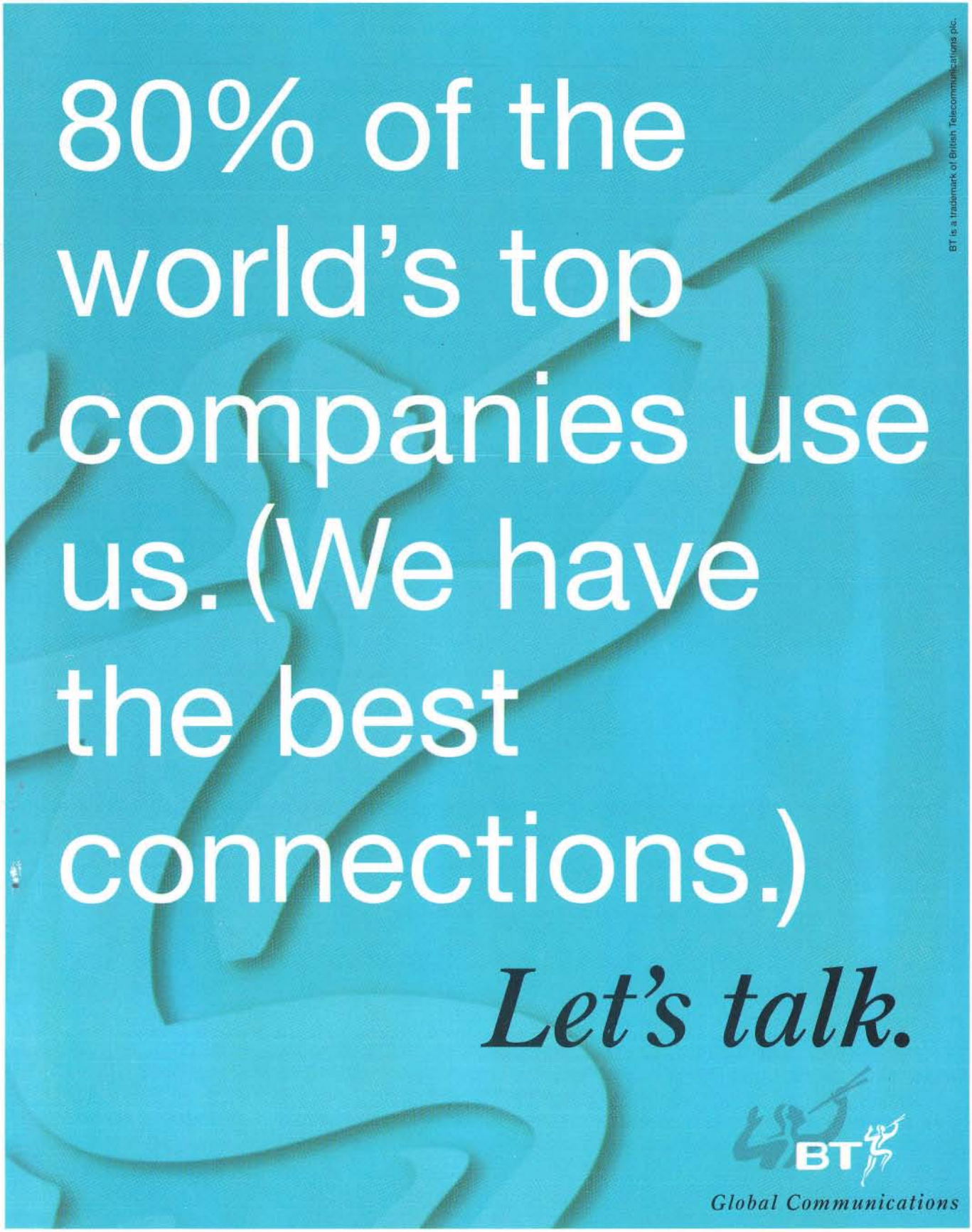
INDUSTRIAL FREEZE-DRYING involves putting food or other materials in a cold room (*top*) at temperatures as low as 50 degrees below zero Fahrenheit (about –46 Celsius). The items are then moved to vacuum chambers (*middle*).



WATER in materials subjected to this process vaporizes onto cold condenser plates (*shown at sides of chamber in bottom photograph*). The dried products are taken from the chamber and stored in containers that seal off oxygen and water.

FRUIT DUST that can be used as fillings for chocolate candies is made from freeze-dried strawberries that have been ground into a powder (*right*).

PHOTOGRAPHS COURTESY OF OREGON FREEZE DRY



BT (British Telecommunications plc) can connect you to over 1,300 cities in more than 110 countries. That's because we have one of the largest global networks for data, voice and image in the world. Small wonder 80% of the Fortune top 500 companies choose BT as their partner. In business, it's not what you know, but who you know. If you'd like to know us better, let's talk.

Call us on: Europe +44 117 921 7721, Asia Pacific +61 2 269 1745.